Guidelines and Standards for Tactile Graphics, 2022

Braille Authority of North America

Developed Under the Sponsorship of the
Braille Authority of North America

Published by
The Braille Authority of North America

ISBN for print version: 979-8-9883302-0-2
ISBN for braille version: 979-8-9883302-1-9

Print copies may be purchased from:

American Printing House for the Blind
1839 Frankfort Avenue
Louisville, KY 40206-3148
502-895-2405 • 1-800-223-1839
www.aph.org

**Mission and Purpose of the
Braille Authority of North America**

The mission and purpose of the Braille Authority of North America (BANA) are to assure literacy for tactile readers through the standardization of braille and/or tactile graphics. BANA promotes and facilitates the use, teaching, and production of braille. It publishes rules, interprets, and renders opinions pertaining to braille in all existing codes. It deals with codes now in existence or to be developed in the future, in collaboration with other countries using English braille. In exercising its function and authority, BANA considers the effects of its decisions on other existing braille codes and formats; the ease of production by various methods; and acceptability to readers.

For more information and resources, visit www.brailleauthority.org.

Members of Braille Authority of North America (BANA)

Full Members of BANA

Alternate Text Production Center of the California Community Colleges (ATPC)

American Council of the Blind, Inc. (ACB)

American Foundation for the Blind (AFB)

American Printing House for the Blind (APH)

Association for Education and Rehabilitation of the Blind and Visually Impaired (AER)

California Transcribers and Educators for the Blind and Visually Impaired (CTEBVI)

Center for Inclusive Design and Innovation (CIDI)

Clovernook Center for the Blind and Visually Impaired

CNIB (Canadian National Institute for the Blind)

Hadley

Horizons for the Blind

National Braille Association, Inc. (NBA)

National Braille Press (NBP)

National Federation of the Blind (NFB)

National Library Service for the Blind and Print Disabled (NLS)

Perkins School for the Blind

Associate Members of BANA

Allyant

Council of Schools and Services for the Blind (COSB)

Crawford Technologies

2022 BANA Tactile Graphics Committee

Aquinas Pather, Chairman
Transcription/Tactile Graphics Design Specialist
Allyant
Ottawa, Ontario, CA

Betty Marshall
Certified Braille Transcriber and Tactile Graphic Specialist
Sherwood Park, Alberta, CA

Allison O'Day
Certified Braille Proofreader
Minnesota State Services for the Blind
St. Paul, Minnesota, US

Susan Osterhaus
Certified Teacher of the Blind and Visually Impaired
Texas School for the Blind and Visually Impaired
Austin, Texas, US

Diane Spence
Retired Director of Braille Solutions, Region 4 Education Service Center
BANA Board Liaison
Houston, Texas, US

Other Contributors

Janet Milbury, BANA Tactile Graphics Committee Consultant

2010 Joint BANA/CBA Tactile Graphics Committee

Canadian Braille Authority (CBA)

Irene Miller, Co-Chairperson
Braille & Large Print Services Supervisor
Alberta Education
Edmonton, Alberta, CA

Aquinas Pather
Quality Assurance, Tactile Design Specialist
T-Base Communications Inc.
Ottawa, Ontario, CA

Janet Milbury
Tactile Graphics Designer
Atlantic Provinces Special Education Authority
Halifax, Nova Scotia, CA

Braille Authority of North America (BANA)

Lucia Hasty, Co-Chairperson
Chief Executive Officer
Rocky Mountain Braille Associates
Colorado Springs, Colorado, US

Allison O'Day
Certified Braille Proofreader
Minnesota State Services for the Blind
St. Paul, Minnesota, US

Diane Spence
Director Braille Services
Region 4 Education Service Center
Houston, Texas, US

Other Contributors

Mary Nelle McLennan, BANA Board Liaison

John McConnell, BANA Tactile Graphics Committee Consultant

Constance Craig, BANA Tactile Graphics Committee

Susan Osterhaus, BANA Tactile Graphics Committee Consultant

Table of Contents

Tactile Graphics Contents

Acknowledgements 2022 *Guidelines*

The Tactile Graphics Committee would like to thank the Braille Authority of North America (BANA) for their continued support in the preparation of this updated document. The committee has spent countless hours on conference calls reviewing all codes that have been updated to incorporate Unified English Braille (UEB) into these *Guidelines*. This revision also includes information on best practices currently in use since the 2010 version of the *Guidelines.*

The Committee would also like to acknowledge and thank Braille Solutions at Region 4 Education Service Center for revising and reproducing graphics for the *Supplement* of examples. Region 4 also hosted various face-to-face meetings throughout the process. Allyant assisted the committee with the preparation of the BANA Review Panel graphic supplements.

Allyant, Ottawa, Ontario, Canada

Region 4 Education Service Center (ESC), Braille Services, Houston, Texas, United States of America

Acknowledgements 2010 *Guidelines*

The Braille Authority of North America and Canadian Braille Authority jointly supported and funded the development of these guidelines and standards through the joint committee on tactile graphics. The committee wishes to express its appreciation to the BANA and CBA boards for their encouragement and financial support.

Other funding agencies that supported the initial surveys and research include the National Literacy Secretariat of the Government of Canada, Canadian National Institute for the Blind, and Canadian Braille Literacy Foundation.

There are many individuals, professionals, and volunteers, as well as organizations and private companies that generously donated their time, expertise, and materials to the development of these guidelines and standards. The joint BANA/CBA tactile graphics committee wishes to thank them for their commitment to the investigation and production of tactile graphics for the research conducted and the production of this manual.

Atlantic Provinces Special Education Authority (APSEA), Halifax, Nova Scotia, Canada

Canadian National Institute for the Blind (CNIB), Toronto, Ontario, Canada

Institut Nazareth et Louis Braille (INLB), Longueuiel, Québec, Canada

Learning Resources Centre (LRC), Alberta Education, Edmonton, Alberta, Canada

Region 4 Education Service Center (ESC), Braille Services, Houston, Texas, United States of America

Rocky Mountain Braille Associates, Colorado Springs, Colorado, United States of America

State Services for the Blind (SSB), St. Paul, Minnesota, United States of America

T-Base Communications, Inc., Ottawa, Ontario, Canada

Preface to 2022 *Guidelines*

When technical content is presented in this book, the tactile graphic material is transcribed in UEB according to the rules in *Unified English Braille, Second Edition 2013* and *Guidelines for Technical Material, 2008,* OR *The Nemeth Braille Code for Mathematics and Science Notation, 1972 Revision,* and *Guidance for Transcription Using the Nemeth Code within UEB Contexts* and relevant updates.

When a difference in transcription method exists between the preparation of a tactile graphic in UEB and the preparation of a tactile graphic in Nemeth within UEB Contexts, the guidelines for preparing the UEB graphic are presented first, followed by guidelines for preparing the Nemeth graphic. This presentation method is used throughout the *Guidelines* document and the *Supplement* of Tactile Graphic Examples.

Preface to 2010 *Guidelines*

Tactile graphics are not mere transcriptions of print illustrations or raised versions of a print graphic; they are the transformed representations of images that are adapted for the sense of touch. It is well known that the eye can take in enormously more information at a glance than can be perceived through the sense of touch. The process of enhancing print images for better tactile perception involves many aspects that these guidelines and standards address.

Introduction

Tactile graphics may represent a variety of print illustrations that contain information conveyed in graphic formats. For the purposes of this publication, terms used to describe print images that provide content or data to the reader are used interchangeably, including diagram, illustration, graphic, figure, and drawing. These images may be produced by a variety of methods using different materials. They accompany textual information to give a tactile representation of diagrams and information presented in print.

Tactile graphics are essential components of braille materials transcribed for use in educational and professional fields. Guidelines and standards for the inclusion, design, and presentation of tactile graphics are all the more necessary today with the advent of electronic text production and the proliferation of diagrams, illustrations, and graphs in educational texts.

The purpose of these guidelines and standards is to provide transcribers, educators, and producers with information about best practices, current methods, and design principles for the production of readable tactile graphics. It is not the purpose of these guidelines and standards, however, to teach the transcriber/tactile graphics producer how to prepare tactile graphics. The best method for learning how to prepare a tactile graphic comes from hands-on training, from critical feedback from other tactile producers and tactile graphics readers, and from experience.

To best facilitate the use of these guidelines and standards, it is suggested that the reader review the sections of the manual that apply to his/her intended purposes and use the variety of examples that accompany this manual. The *Supplement to the Guidelines and Standards for Tactile Graphics* includes thirty-five tactile graphic examples produced by a variety of production methods and includes examples from the mathematics, science, and social studies disciplines. Further examples are provided in simulated braille and are found within the text of the manual.

All tactile graphic examples, whether in the supplement or in the manual itself, are accompanied by a list of points and the print illustration from which the tactile graphic was produced. The points that accompany each example in the supplement inform the reader of the production method used to prepare the tactile graphic, the braille code used when transcribing the text in which the tactile graphic appeared, and a list of rules used and decisions made when preparing the tactile graphic. The tactile graphic examples found in the supplement volume are referenced in this manual as "(See Supplement Example #: *Title*)." Further examples appear in this manual as illustrations of tactile graphics showing simulated braille and are referenced as "(See Example #: *Title*)." Shadow dots for unused portions of the braille cell shown in the illustrations should never be used on a real tactile graphic.

Background and Mandate

The Canadian Braille Authority and the Braille Authority of North America formed a joint committee to gather current information about tactile graphics and to write guidelines to standardize best practices for design and production of tactile graphics. These guidelines and standards provide detailed information and standards to guide individuals who produce tactile graphics at all levels. Tactile illustrators, transcribers, teachers of students with visual impairment, parents of children who are blind, teaching assistants, educational resource centers, braille production houses, and test agencies all need information about standard presentation formats to produce readily usable and understandable tactile representations of illustrations, maps, diagrams, and graphs that appear in print. Suggestions for use of specific and varied materials and different methods of production are included for diagrams, figures, and graphs that appear in print.

These guidelines and standards evolved from information gathered in surveys and research investigations into methods and current practices in use, including the Canadian Braille Authority Report of Tactile Graphics Sub-Committee Part 1 (1996): Research Findings and Recommendations; Part 2: Interim Measures (1996); and Canadian Braille Authority Report of Tactile Graphics Sub-Committee Part 3 Recommendations from GRASP: Graphic Research And Standards Project compiled in July 2003. The findings from this research and the methods and practices are incorporated throughout the document and referenced in the relevant sections. The Report of Tactile Graphics Sub-Committee Part 3 is posted on the CBA web site under "CBA Publications."

Graphic Research and Standards Project (GRASP) studied the characteristics of design that offered the best discrimination among components within a graphic. The findings can be found at

PDF:
https://www.brailleliteracycanada.ca/storage/standards/Report_Tactile_Graphics_part3.pdf

BRF:
https://www.brailleliteracycanada.ca/storage/standards/Report_Tactile_Graphics_part3.brf

The *Guidelines for Mathematical Diagrams*, developed, field-tested, and revised under the auspices of and published by the Braille Authority of North America, have been incorporated into this document.

These guidelines and standards generally conform to practices set out in BANA guidelines for braille. They also incorporate information and are based upon recommendations and best practices issued by many agencies and producers that prepare tactile graphics.

Unit 1
Criteria for Including a Tactile Graphic

1.1 Tactile graphics, in combination with 3-dimensional models, need to be introduced early in the process of learning braille. The ability to read graphics will be required for the understanding of concepts such as diagrams, graphs, and maps, and to be able to participate in standardized testing.

1.2 The transcription of a text is not considered complete until the required graphics have been included.

1.3 No diagram should be routinely omitted if a viable method can be found to render it tactually comprehensible. On the other hand, diagrams that do not add additional necessary information other than what is stated in the surrounding text may be omitted. Sometimes the information in a caption is sufficient without including the graphic.

1.4 A decision must be made about which would be more clearly understood by the reader—a well-stated transcriber's note, a tactile graphic, a simplified tactile graphic with a transcriber's note, or a 3-dimensional model. Some complex diagrams will never provide meaningful tactile information.

1.5 A Teacher's Guide or other course material may provide additional information on the purpose of the graphic and could be a factor in determining what can be eliminated from the graphic or if the graphic needs to be included at all.

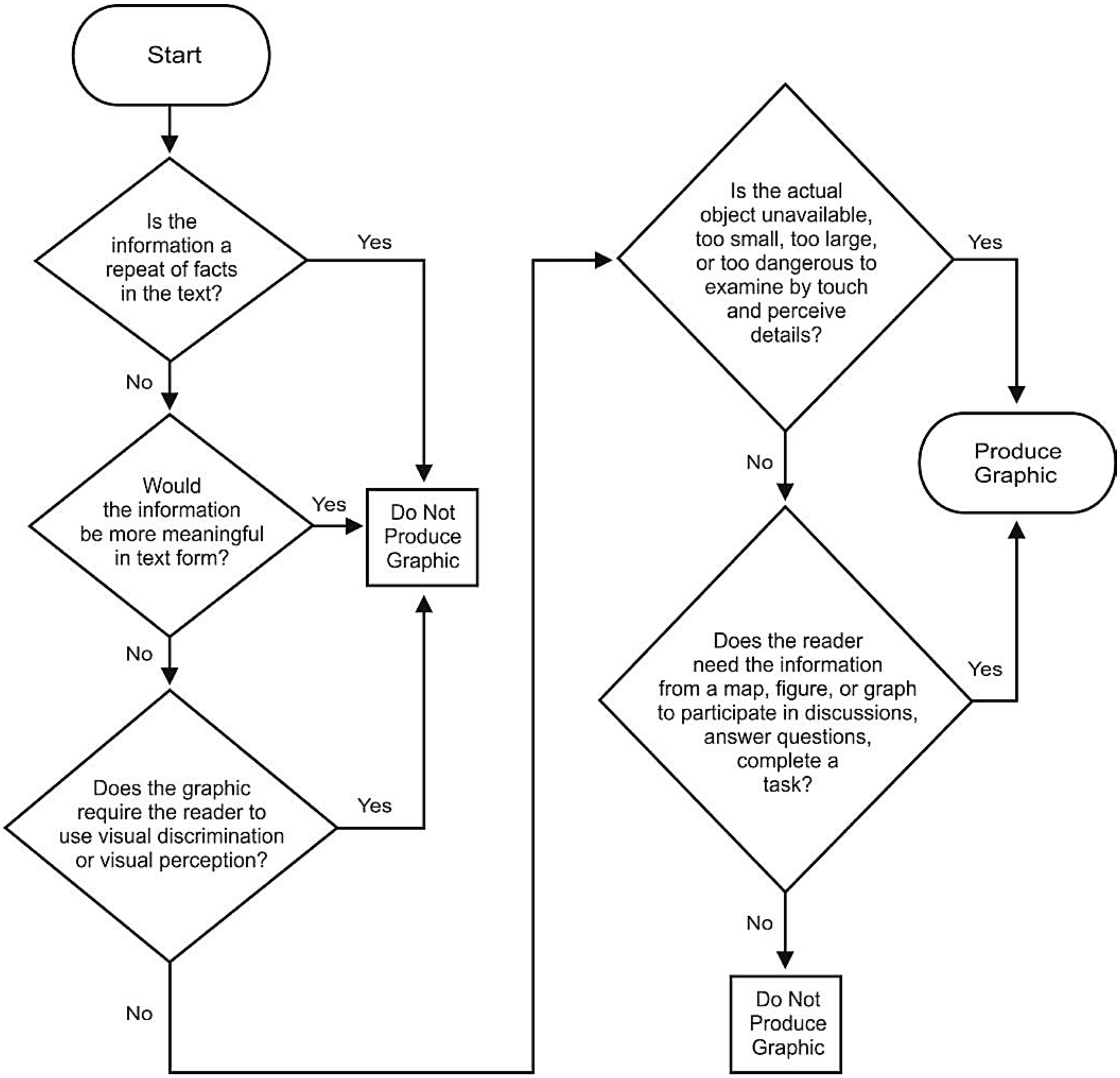
1.6 If there are questions asked about an image that cannot be described without giving away the answer, a tactile graphic should be included.

1.7 Graphs should be presented as a tactile graphic rather than presenting the data as a list. Tactile representations provide a clearer comparison of information, as in a pie chart or a plotted line graph, rather than comparing only numbers.

On the following page, the Decision Tree illustrates the process for determining if a graphic should be produced.

1.8 Decision Tree

Is this appropriate for a tactile graphic?



Considerations in the Planning Process

Would the information be more meaningful in text form?

- When a graphic is complex or has many details that cannot be shown in a tactile graphic, a well written description may provide better information for the reader.
- A print graphic may be most useful to the reader when produced as a tactile graphic and a description.
- Excellent guidelines to assist in writing the description are available from the National Center for Accessible Media at http://diagramcenter.org/table-of-contents-2.html#toc.

What information will be conveyed?

- Identify the content that needs to be included.
  - Determine if the graphic requires an operation of measurement or scale.
  - Determine if it is necessary to show size relationship between objects.
- Simplify the drawing.
  - Eliminate unnecessary parts.
  - Determine if the objects or shapes presented in the print need to be retained, exactly reproduced, or can be replaced with simpler symbols.
  - Separate the graphic with too many components into sections.
- Identify the components included in your graphic.
  - Areas, Lines, Points, Labels, Keys/Legends.

Which production method will be used?

- Is there a specific production method or “format” being requested?
- What resources or equipment are available to create the graphic for that production method?
- Which production method will provide the best readable graphic?
  - Vacuum-form copy from collage/tooling or embossed plus collage
  - Embossed
  - Microcapsule
  - Customized (designed for one-time use by a reader)
- Is this graphic for production of multiple copies or customized for a reader?

This page is intentionally blank.

Unit 2
Design Principles

2.1 A tactile graphic is a representation of a print graphic designed in a manner that is the most meaningful to the reader. It is not an exact reproduction.

2.2 Cost and time must not be the primary considerations when determining the method of production. Choose the most effective production medium for each graphic.

2.3 The braille code and format used in preparation of the tactile graphic must be consistent with the transcription of the main body of text. Tactile graphics in technical material prepared according to Nemeth within UEB contexts must be evaluated on an individual basis to determine if and when a switch to Nemeth is warranted.

2.4 The dimensions of the braille text page(s) and any inserted tactile graphic page(s) should be the same. Tactile graphics produced using various media may be combined in the same volume.

2.5 Some eye-catching design techniques used in print, such as decorative borders, are irrelevant to the concept being taught and should be omitted.

2.6 Many frames or image outlines found around print diagrams should also be omitted if they would add extra lines without purpose. At times, image outlines are required to indicate containment such as water or land areas on a map. (See Example 3-7: *U.S.A.*)

2.7 The tactile graphic should be positioned at the left margin of the page, rather than centered. If there is a numbered or lettered exercise identifier associated with a graphic, the graphic may be placed on the same line as the identifier. If there is insufficient space on a line to accommodate the exercise identifier and the diagram, the tactile graphic should be placed at the left margin and below the identifier. A blank line is required before and after the tactile graphic.

(See Example 6-4: *Open- and Solid-Circle Number Line.*)

If space does not permit the inclusion of a blank line, the opening and closing indicators (e.g., grade 1 passage, numeric passage, Nemeth code switching) can be inserted on a line by themselves and replace the blank line. (See Example 6-27: *Nemeth: Box-and-Whisker Plot (Vertical).*)

2.8 A print graphic may be simplified as long as the original intent is not compromised.

2.9 If the task does not involve measurement, modifications to size, position, or layout may be made to an illustration to clarify presentation.

2.10 If the concept of depth is not required, a 3-dimensional view should be changed to a 2-dimensional view. (See Example 3-2: *Cross-Section of Skin*; Supplement Example 26: *Cross-section of Skin*.) Identify the view, such as front or cross-section. (See Supplement Example 25a: *Gastrointestinal Tract*; Supplement Example 25b: *Gastrointestinal Tract*.)

2.11 Clutter occurs when components of the graphic are too close together or are so similar that they become hard to distinguish tactually. Clarity of components is improved by creating a break (blank space) between adjacent textures or where lines cross other lines or textures. (See Example 3-2: *Cross-Section of Skin*.)

A break is not required where the contrast in texture and strength of lines is clear. (See Supplement Example 24: *Phase Diagram*.)

2.12 If the reader is required to measure a line or an object, the line or object should not be lengthened or enlarged and must be raised and designed in a way that permits measurement with a braille ruler. If the reader is required to measure an angle, the rays should be drawn long enough for ease of measurement with a braille protractor.

2.13 If the reader is required to measure distance, the scale and graphic must be revised proportionately.

2.14 Use transcriber's notes to explain changes made to the print format.

2.15 When writing transcriber's notes, use vocabulary appropriate to the grade level and subject matter of the text. Use terminology from surrounding text. If needed to clarify the content in the graphic, further description may be added in the transcriber's notes.

Example: If the surrounding text calls the graphic a circle graph, do not refer to it using another term, such as pie chart, in a transcriber's note.

2.16 The use of transcriber's notes for kindergarten and first grade should be limited. (See Unit 11, Graphics for Early Grades.)

2.17 A combination of symbols, keys, and words may be used to convey information. Since the use of a key involves an extra step for the reader to interpret the graphic, use a braille label (word) instead of a keyed symbol when the label itself will fit in the available space.

2.18 Maintain consistency throughout a transcription when assigning alphabetic keys or textures to a particular item.

Example: Use of standard keys listed in Appendix C: Standard Key for Maps; use of same texture for repeating features such as water listed in Appendix E: Texture Palette for Microcapsule, Appendix H: Texture Palette for Tiger Embossing.

2.19 The age and experience of the reader must be considered when designing a tactile graphic. Based on the student's skill level, it may be necessary to limit the number of key symbols when assigning areas, lines, and points.

2.20 Facing pages should be used when the key and graphic will not fit on one page. Facing pages allow the reader to see both the graphic and the key without turning pages. (See Example 3-7: *U.S.A.*)

2.21 Consider placing tactile graphics on separate pages with limited text so that the graphics may be used with electronic text (e-text), as a tactile graphic supplement, or added to a collection for future use.

2.22 Readability is improved when a variety of heights and textures are used to create areas, lines, and points within a graphic.

2.23 The orientation of freestanding or unbound tactile graphic pages, without braille text, is necessary to assist the reader to quickly determine the top of the page and thus more readily identify the content of the graphic. A tactile graphic should not be handed to a reader without some method of identifying or orienting the top of the page. A tactile cue to assist the reader with proper and efficient orientation of the graphic is recommended. The preferred technique is to cut off the top right-hand corner of the page. Flash cards found on Paths to Literacy, some APH products, and MathWindow tiles are good examples of the use of this technique.

Unit 3
Planning and Editing

Planning the tactile graphic is a critical step in producing a meaningful representation of a print graphic or illustration. This step may require as much time as the actual production, yet it is critical to ensuring that the final product conveys the information intended for the reader.

3.1 Definition of Primary Components

All information in the print graphic that is to be included in the tactile graphic may be categorized into one of the following primary components.

3.1.1 **Area**. An area represents a region that has specific significance in the graphic, such as states or provinces in a map, stripes of different colors in the drawing of a flag, or the layers of soil and rock classifications in a geological diagram. Areas are usually concrete portions of a diagram.

3.1.2 **Line**. A line is linear information such as rivers, important geographic boundaries, historical routes (the Oregon Trail), or pathways (a circulatory system or an electrical circuit). In mathematical drawings, the line may be used to present the outline of a shape or indicate division, angles, or a length to be measured. Lines may represent either concrete (real) or imaginary (hidden) information. In chemical diagrams, lines may be used to represent bonds and chemical arrows.

(See Unit 3, Planning and Editing, §3.4.3.4, for information about locational [secondary] lines, such as tick marks, lead lines, number lines, and rulers.)

3.1.3 **Point**. A point symbol indicates a specific place within the graphic. It is usually placed in an area or on a line and represents specific data, such as a city, a bus stop, an oil well, a point in a line graph, or a gland in an anatomy diagram.

3.1.4 **Label**. A label may be words or an alphabetic or numeric key used to identify an area, line, or point symbol. A reader can discern information more efficiently when words are used rather than when symbols or keys are added; however, the use of whole words may sometimes add too much clutter or require too much space.

Transcriber-added word labels or keys (on the diagram itself) should not be enclosed in transcriber's note indicators, and a note stating this fact should be added to the Transcriber's Notes page. (See Example 3-7: *U.S.A*.)

(See Unit 5, Braille Formats for Tactile Graphics, §5.8, for the format of keyed abbreviations in labels.)

3.2 Editing Content

Facts or data included in a tactile graphic should be selected based on the purpose of the graphic and what the reader is expected to gain from the graphic. The tactile producer should not change the content or its meaning and should seek additional help in interpreting content if the material in the print diagram is not fully understood.

3.2.1 When determining the content of a tactile graphic, the producer must carefully read the text surrounding the graphic as well as other information, such as the end of chapter questions. When possible, consult the Teacher's Guide or other course information.

3.2.2 In general, a single graphic should contain no more than five different area textures, five different line styles, and five different types of point symbols. If more than five are needed to represent the information required, consider using an alphabetic key.

3.3 Planning Process

The use of a planning sheet is recommended to document the planning process. Listing the content, textures, symbols, and labels helps track pertinent information and provides consistency in the graphics presented throughout the transcription. Documenting the information assists the transcriber or tactile producer in planning similar graphics.

Tactile Graphic Planning Sheets

TACTILE GRAPHIC PLANNING SHEET	
Title:	Method:
Transcriber:	Graphics Designer:
Due Date:	Proofreader:
Include (derived from surrounding text):	
Simplification and/or elimination:	
Re-sizing:	
Consolidation and/or distortion:	
Separation (list titles or headings for each part of the diagram):	
Transcriber's notes (explaining change in format or description to support graphic):	
Comments:	

AREAS

Information	Texture/Material/Fill

LINES

Information	Texture/Material

POINTS

Information	Texture/Material

ALPHABETIC KEY

NUMERIC KEY

Tactile Graphic Planning Sheets (Completed)

<table>
<tr><td colspan="2">TACTILE GRAPHIC PLANNING SHEET</td></tr>
<tr><td>Title: Australia: Avg. Annual Rainfall</td><td>Method: CorelDRAW/microcapsule paper</td></tr>
<tr><td>Transcriber:</td><td>Graphics Designer:</td></tr>
<tr><td>Due Date:</td><td>Proofreader:</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Include (derived from surrounding text): regions of rainfall, ocean/sea</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Simplification and/or elimination: small islands, coastline</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Re-sizing: enlarge to full page size. Transcriber’s note and key on facing page</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Consolidation and/or distortion: consolidate 12 ranges of rainfall into 5, smoothing outlines as necessary</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Separation (list titles or headings for each part of the diagram):</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Transcriber’s notes (explaining change in format or description to support graphic):
The twelve ranges on the print legend are combined to show only five ranges of average annual rainfall. The political boundaries are omitted.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Comments: Verify from text that by consolidating regions, the reader is able to determine details needed for questions, discussion, etc.
- incorporation of print legend into key listing
- non-texturing of water</td></tr>
</table>

AREAS

Information	Texture/Material/Fill
over 1200 mm	*solid fill*
600-1200 mm	*large dot pattern*
200-600 mm	*diagonal lines*
50-200 mm	*small dot pattern*
0-50 mm	*smooth—no fill*

LINES

Information	Texture/Material
none	

POINTS

Information	Texture/Material
none	

ALPHABETIC KEY

none—all labels spelled fully	

NUMERIC KEY

none	

3.4 Planning Size and Layout

When planning a graphic, consider the amount of space available within the size of the page on which the graphic will be produced. Prepare a template that incorporates the space requirements for each page size and production method that will be used. (See Appendix G: Example of Tactile Graphic Template for Microcapsule; Appendix J: Example of Tactile Graphic Template for Tiger Embossing.)

3.4.1 **Braille Cell Measurements**

A braille cell may vary slightly in size and shape when produced using different brands of braille embossers, computer-generated braille fonts, a braillewriter, or a slate and stylus. (See Appendix B: Sample Braille Fonts.) An embossed page of full braille cells (40 cells wide by 25 rows) may be vacuum formed onto a clear plastic sheet to aid in planning the layout of the graphic. A transparent sheet with a braille grid of SimBraille dots is available commercially.

Refer to the BANA website for the size and spacing of braille characters at www.brailleauthority.org/sizespacingofbraille/sizespacingofbraille.pdf.

3.4.2 Overall Size of a Graphic on 11.5 by 11-Inch Paper (29 by 28 centimeters)

3.4.2.1 Maximum overall width of tactile graphic: 40 cells

3.4.2.2 Maximum overall length of tactile graphic: 25 lines

This includes the lines required for page numbers, running head, figure number and/or caption, transcriber's note, key, title of graphic. (See Appendix G: Example of Tactile Graphic Template for Microcapsule; Appendix J: Example of Tactile Graphic Template for Tiger Embossing.)

3.4.3 **Component Measurements**

3.4.3.1 **Areas**. Minimum size 1/4 square inch (6 square millimeters). Very small areas are more easily read if raised above other areas to increase the tactual contrast, or shown below another area that is raised.

Example: Bodies of water where land is raised.

3.4.3.2 **Lines**. Primary lines must be a minimum of 1/2 inch (1.25 centimeters) in length.

3.4.3.3 **Dashed Primary Lines**. The length of each dash should be 1/4 to 3/8 inch (6 millimeters to 1 centimeter), separated by spaces approximately half the length of the dash.

3.4.3.4 **Locational (Secondary) Lines**. For tick marks on number lines and graphs, the length must be 1/2 inch (1.25 centimeters) or 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) on each side of the line and shown as less significant than primary lines on the tactile graphic. For clocks, the tick marks should straddle the circumference line and extend no less than 3/16 inch (4.5 millimeters) and no more than 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) on either side of the circumference. (See Supplement Example 2: *Twenty-four Hour Analog Clock*.)

3.4.3.5 Lead lines (from component to label) must be the least significant line in the graphic, with a preferred minimum length of 3/4 inch (2 centimeters) and a preferred maximum length of 1-1/2 inches (3.75 centimeters), with no arrowhead at the end. If at all possible, a lead line should be straight. GRASP research indicates that lead lines that are curved or change direction are harder to follow. Lead lines can either be solid or textured. (See Supplement Example 5: *Energy Pie Chart*.)

3.4.3.6 One end of the lead line should touch the component it identifies and the other end should be at least 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) from the beginning or end of the braille label. (See Example 3-1: *Parts of a Flower*; Supplement Example 25b: *Gastrointestinal Tract*.)

3.4.3.7 **Arrows**. An arrow should be comprised of a shaft and either an elongated solid triangle or an open arrowhead. The shaft may be a solid or broken line, but the shaft and arrowhead should be approximately the same weight.

If a solid triangle is used as an arrowhead, the triangle should be isosceles (two sides of the same length) with the angle between the two longer sides between 30º and 45º to best indicate direction. The shaft of the arrow should be unspaced from (attached to) the arrowhead. (See

Supplement Example 11: *Transformation*.)

If an open arrowhead is used, the two sides of the arrowhead should form two sides of an equilateral triangle with the two sides being the same length as the undrawn third side. The shaft of the arrow should be spaced (detached) 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) from the apex. (See Supplement Example 2: *Twenty-four Hour Analog Clock*.)

3.4.3.8 Grid lines must be less significant than other information shown on the graph so they do not interfere with reading the graph’s content.

3.4.3.9 In order to keep the grid from looking like an area texture, it is recommended that grid lines be no closer than 3/8 inch (1 centimeter).

3.4.3.10 Axis lines should be stronger than grid lines and include an arrowhead at the outer ends if shown in print.

3.4.3.11 **Point Symbols**. For discrimination between two or more different-shaped symbols, the minimum diameter must be at least 1/4 inch (6 millimeters). The space between a point symbol and any other component must be a minimum of 1/8 inch (3 millimeters).

3.4.3.12 **Labels**. Labels should be placed a minimum of 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) to a maximum of 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) from any other component. If the label cannot be placed within the minimum and maximum distance, the label must be placed far enough away to allow a 3/4-inch (2 centimeter) lead line.

3.4.3.13 A minimum of 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) “blank space” should be allowed on all sides of the label when embedded in an area texture.

3.4.3.14 The measurements of the area texture sample for the key are 1/2 inch (1.25 centimeters) high (vertical measurement) and 1 inch (2.5 centimeters) wide (horizontal measurement).

This page is intentionally blank.

Example 3-1: Parts of a Flower

Sexual Reproduction in Plants

As in animals, sexual reproduction in plants requires the joining of a male gamete with a female gamete to produce a zygote and an embryo. Most plants produce both male and female gametes. However, some produce only female gametes and others only male.

Figure 2.11 shows the parts of a flower that are involved in reproduction. Most flowers have all of these parts, although the shapes and sizes of each flower vary. Some flowers are large and showy. Others are hardly noticeable (Figure 2.12). **Pollen** contains the male gametes of a plant. Pollen is found on the **stamen,** or male part, of the plant. **Ovules** contain the female gametes of a plant. Ovules are found in the **pistil,** or female part of the plant.

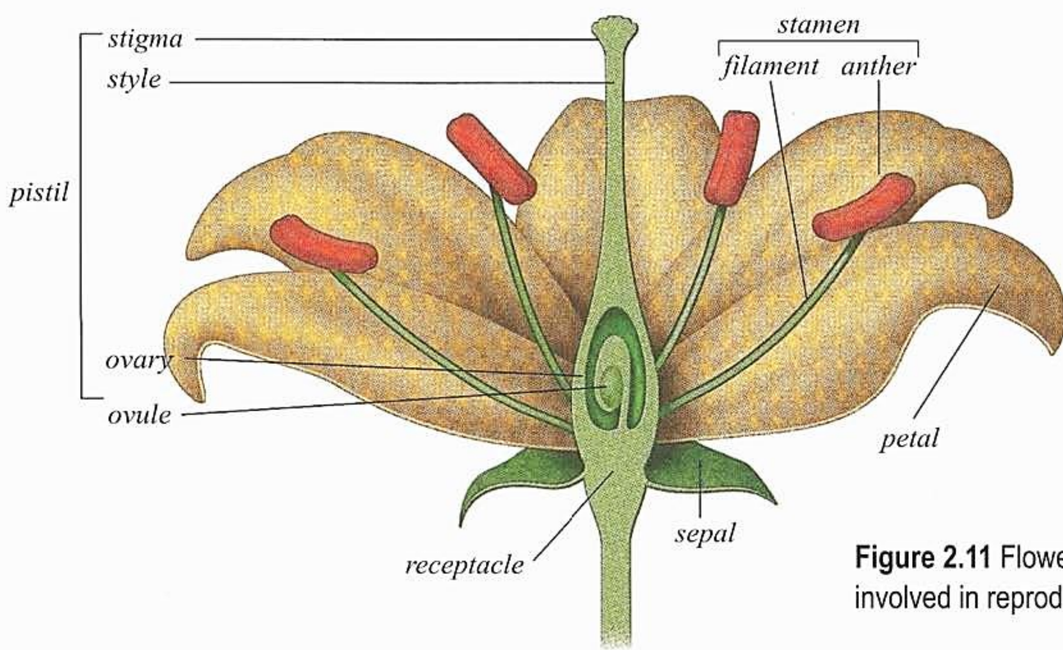


Figure 2.11 Flower parts involved in reproduction

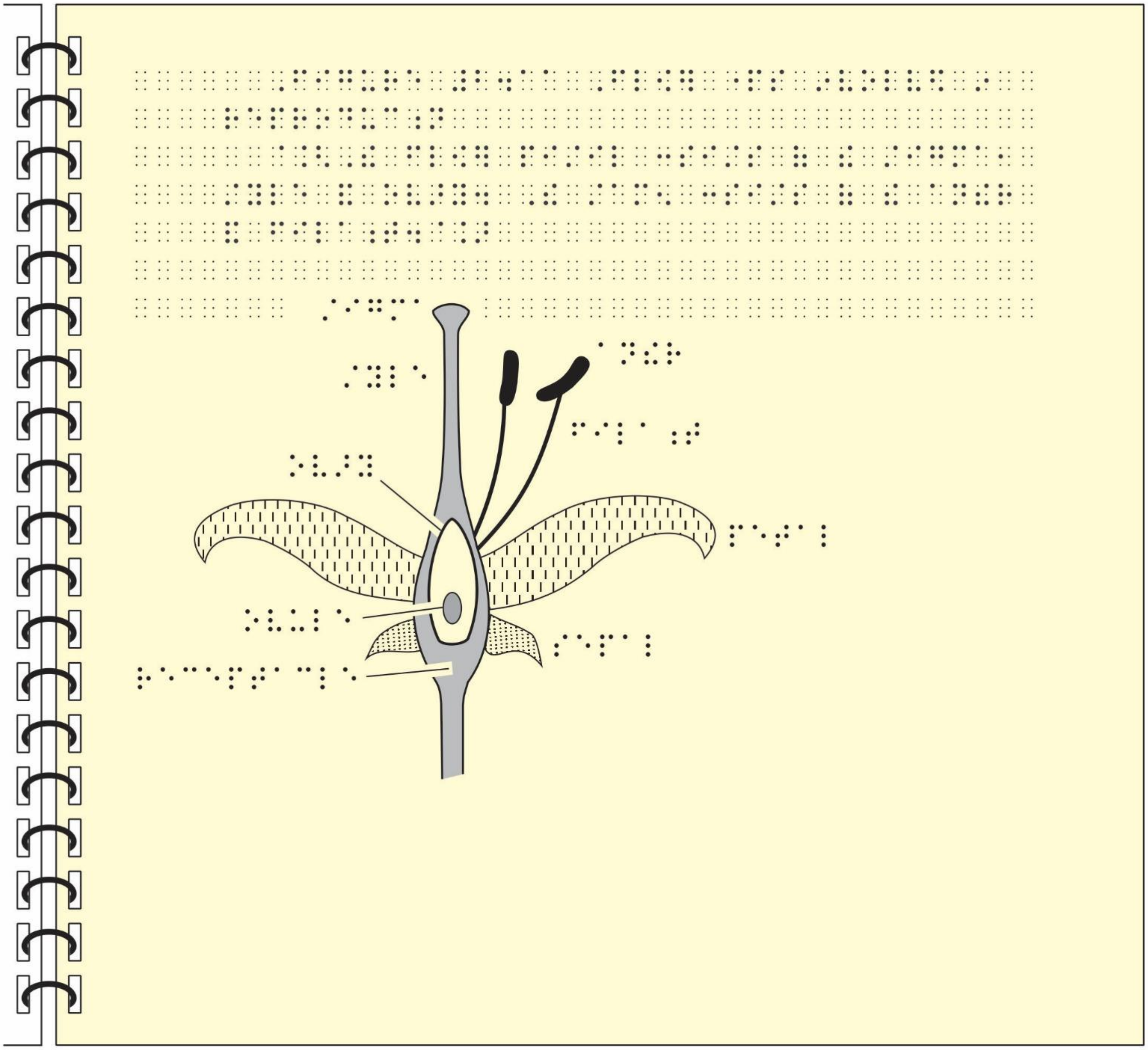
> **Transcriber's Note:**
> The flower pistil consists of the stigma, style and ovary. The stamen consists of the anther and filament.

Example 3-1 UEB: Tactile Graphic Design Points

NOTE: All tactile graphic examples, whether in the supplement or in the manual itself, are accompanied by a list of design points and the print illustration from which the tactile graphic was produced. The points that accompany each example in the supplement inform the reader of the production method used to prepare the tactile graphic, the braille code used when transcribing the text in which the tactile graphic appeared, and a list of guidelines used and decisions made when preparing the tactile graphic.

- UEB code
- use of blank space around lead lines going through textures (2.11)
- use of a variety of textures without a key to show print shading and to separate parts (2.11, 2.22)
- use of lead lines, 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) from label and touching specific part leading up to item and leading across areas (3.4.3.5, 3.4.3.12)
- simplification of flower (petals, filaments, and anthers) to allow room for braille labeling with lead lines (3.6)
- slight distortion of ovary to allow for clearer labeling, no effect on content (3.8)
- order of information on page: figure caption with number, transcriber's note, tactile graphic (5.2)
- omission of line 25 identifier (5.3.7)
- use of transcriber's note to include information shown in square brackets in print (7.2.2)

Example 3-1 UEB: Parts of a Flower



3.4.4 Size of Paper

Graphics produced on different sizes of paper or plastic, but included in the same volume or binder can be more difficult to locate and confusing to the reader.

3.4.4.1 The presentation and use of the graphic will dictate the size of paper or plastic on which the graphic is produced. For example, an orientation and mobility map that is to be portable and carried with the reader may be produced on 11 by 17-inch size (28 by 43 centimeters) or as a fold-out.

3.4.4.2 Tactile graphics included in a textbook must be produced in the same overall paper size as the text of the book, usually 11.5 by 11-inches (29 by 28 centimeters).

3.4.4.3 A tactile graphic produced for direct use by a reader may be any size needed for clarity of the image.

3.4.4.4 When a tactile graphic is too large to fit on a standard 11.5 by 11-inch braille page (29 by 28 centimeters) and/or when it is not conducive to split the tactile into a multiple-page presentation, a foldable flap may be added to increase the width of the page. The tactile graphic is designed to fit over the width of the extended pages and to be read with the foldable section opened. (See Example 3-5: *Prince Andrew High School Floor Plan*.)

3.5 Re-sizing the Original Print Graphic

3.5.1 To provide clarity, a print graphic often should be enlarged. Such enlargement should be only as much as is needed to convey information clearly.

Example: A graphic of a clock face included in a first-grade textbook should not be enlarged to such an extent that the reader must search large areas of empty space to find features.

3.5.2 When diagrams require the reader to use a ruler to measure or to use a distance scale to compare areas, it must be produced at exactly the same size as shown in print. (See Supplement Example 19: *Measuring*.)

When the diagram must be enlarged to provide tactual discrimination, a transcriber's note must precede the graphic explaining the amount of enlargement. The graphic must be large enough and of sufficient line strength that braille measuring tools (i.e., braille ruler, braille protractor) can be used to accomplish the task.

When a diagram such as a map contains a scale and requires enlargement, the scale and the map must be enlarged proportionally. (See Example 3-7: *U.S.A*.)

3.5.3 Complex diagrams may need to be produced in sections or layers. (See Example 3-4: *Circulatory System*; Example 3-6: *Southwest Asia*; Example 3-7: *U.S.A.*)

3.6 Simplification

3.6.1 Many print illustrations are too complex (i.e., they contain too much information) to show tactually without simplification. Care should be taken not to over-simplify because it may detract from or interfere with the comprehension and intended purpose of the diagram. (See Unit 7, Complex Diagrams; See Example 3-2 and Supplement Example 26: *Cross-section of Skin*.)

3.6.2 Three-dimensional images are especially difficult to decode. When possible, simplify them to two dimensions. In some cases you may need to show more than one view to include all of the content in the print graphic. (See Supplement Example 25a: *Gastrointestinal Tract* and Supplement Example 25b: *Gastrointestinal Tract*.)

This page is intentionally blank.

Example 3-2: Cross-Section of Skin

reSEARCH

Glands

An organ system that has not been mentioned is the endocrine system. Find out what the endocrine system does. What is the role of each of its organs?

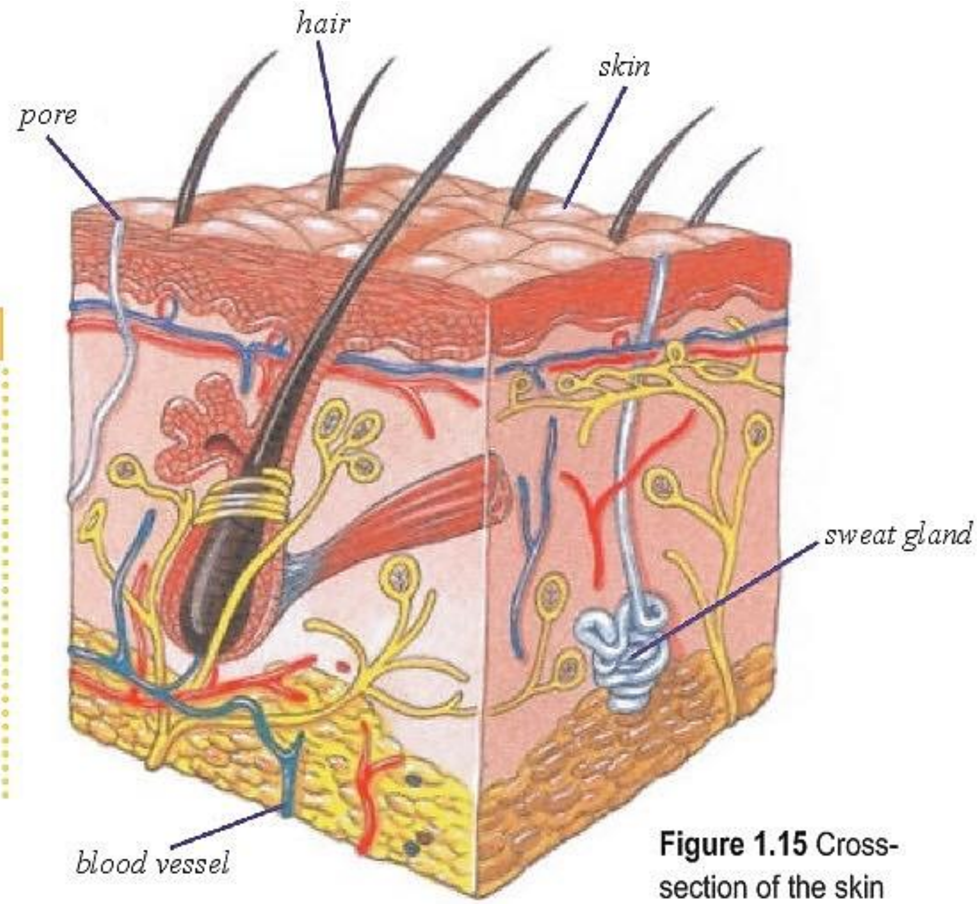


Figure 1.15 Cross-section of the skin

Transcriber's Note:

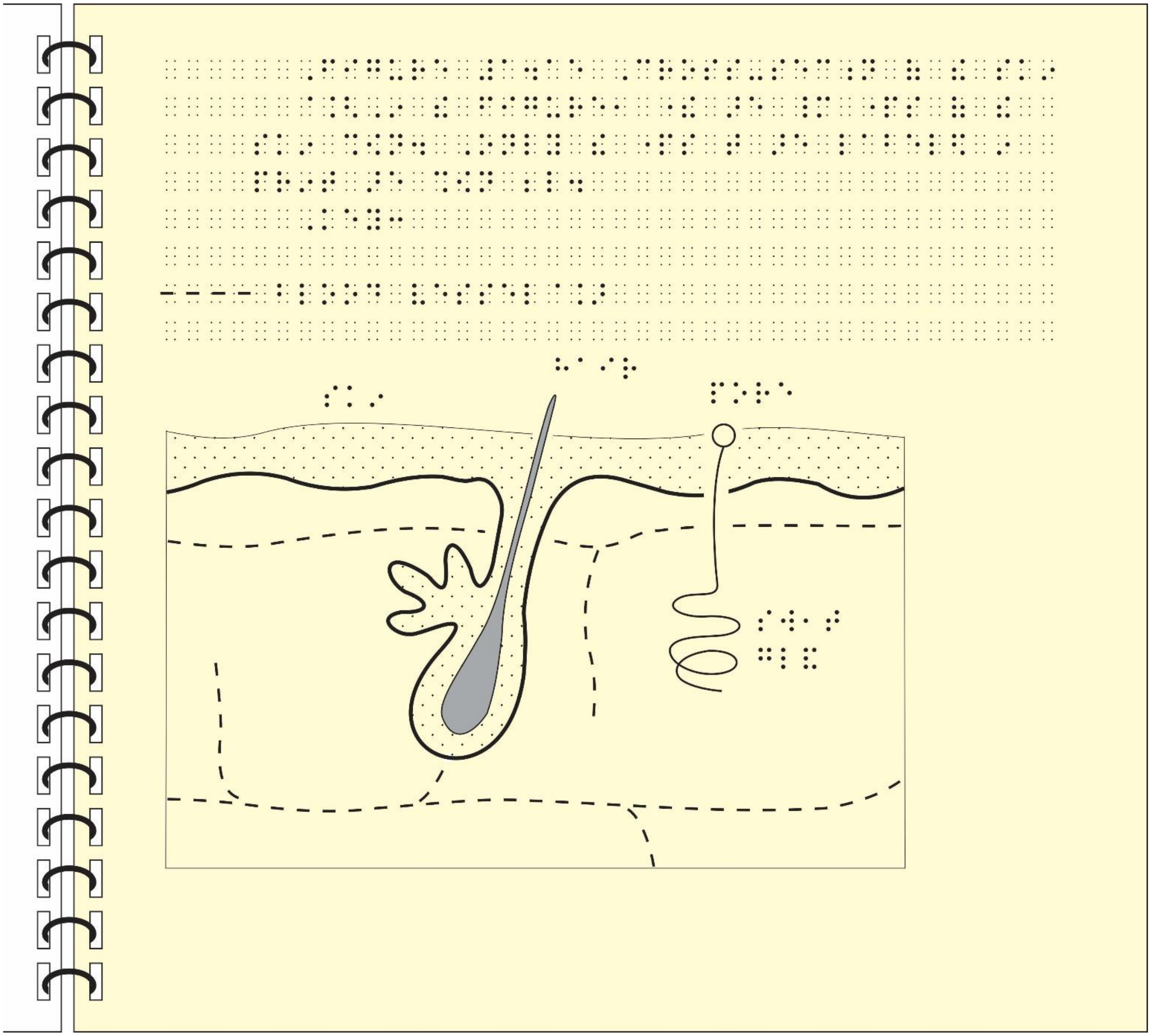
In the figure, there are many parts of the skin shown. Only the parts that are labeled in print are shown below.

Example 3-2 UEB: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example.

- UEB code
- outline image used to contain skin (2.6)
- changed perspective from three-dimensional to two-dimensional (2.10, 3.6.2, 6.11.2.7)
- identification of view in figure caption so no need to add in transcriber's note (2.10)
- omission of line 25 identifier (5.3.7)
- placement of figure caption in cell 7 with runovers in cell 5 (5.5)
- use of line texture in key listing (5.7.2, 5.8.4.3, 5.8.4.4)
- placement of transcriber's note indicator, before the transcriber's note starts and after the last symbol in the key (5.8.4.1)
- use of whole word labels without lead lines (5.10.2.1, 7.3.6)
- runover of label on graphic – left justified (5.10.7)
- alignment of dots 25 of the explanation with key line symbol (5.8.4.4)
- key line symbol is 1 inch (2.5 centimeters) long 5.9.2)
- example of information included in a transcriber's note, explanation of the graphic in addition to the tactile drawing (7.2.2)

Example 3-2 UEB: Cross-Section of Skin



3.7 Elimination

3.7.1 Print information may be eliminated if it will not hinder the purpose of the diagram.

Example: Small islands, rivers, mountains, lines of longitude and latitude, etc., may be left off many maps. Minor cities could be eliminated if only major cities are essential.

3.7.2 Frames or borders found around many print diagrams should be eliminated unless it provides a frame of reference.

3.7.3 Secondary information may be included as a note or description in a transcriber's note or included in a key instead of on the tactile graphic. Sample transcriber's note.

> The Camarasaurus had chisel-like teeth (not shown) all along its jaws.

3.8 Consolidation and Distortion

NOTE: This type of combination may be done if, and only if, the original purpose of the diagram is not hindered or made impossible.

3.8.1 Small islands may be combined and shown as a larger area or linear features if they are important but too small to depict accurately.

Example: The islands of the West Indies can be shown as a single unit that would represent the chain of islands but would not indicate the actual size or number.

3.8.2 If numerous print symbols are used to indicate the location of demographic information or physical features, such as mountains, fewer symbols may be shown on the tactile graphic.

3.8.3 When there are too many area textures or patterns required by the original print illustration to be tactually discriminable, the diagram can be separated or the number of areas can be reduced by combining similar areas. (See Example 3-3 and Supplement Example 30: *Australia: Average Annual Rainfall*.)

3.8.4 A very small or narrow area or linear feature may be proportionally distorted if it will assist in detection or labeling.

3.9 Separation

3.9.1 To reduce clutter, many complex diagrams should be divided into sections or separated into layers of information. A diagram showing the whole image (overview) must appear first to provide the reader with a concept of the whole picture. (See Example 3-4: *Circulatory System*.)

3.9.2 When a diagram is separated into sections or layers of information, a transcriber’s note must indicate what type of division is made and the number of parts into which the illustration is divided. Sample transcriber’s note.

> The map is divided along the Mississippi River into Western and Eastern United States as indicated on the overview map.

3.9.3 Where a complex graphic has been separated into sections, a few points of reference in the overview diagram will allow the reader to understand how the separate parts fit back together.

Example: A print diagram of the human body might be separated into three tactile graphics: an overview including a point of reference, followed by a graphic showing the upper body, and the next graphic showing the lower portion of the body.

3.9.4 A logical division should be selected and a title (enclosed in transcriber's notes indicators) designated to reflect the position of the divided parts in the whole. The diagram can be divided in half (either horizontally or vertically), divided into quarters (when additional room for enlargement is needed to include details), or divided by a natural landmark (the United States divided into two sections along the Mississippi River). The lines used to indicate the division should be a distinctly different texture than any other lines used in that graphic and should be shown on each section. (See Example 3-4: *Circulatory System*; Example 3-7: *U.S.A*.)

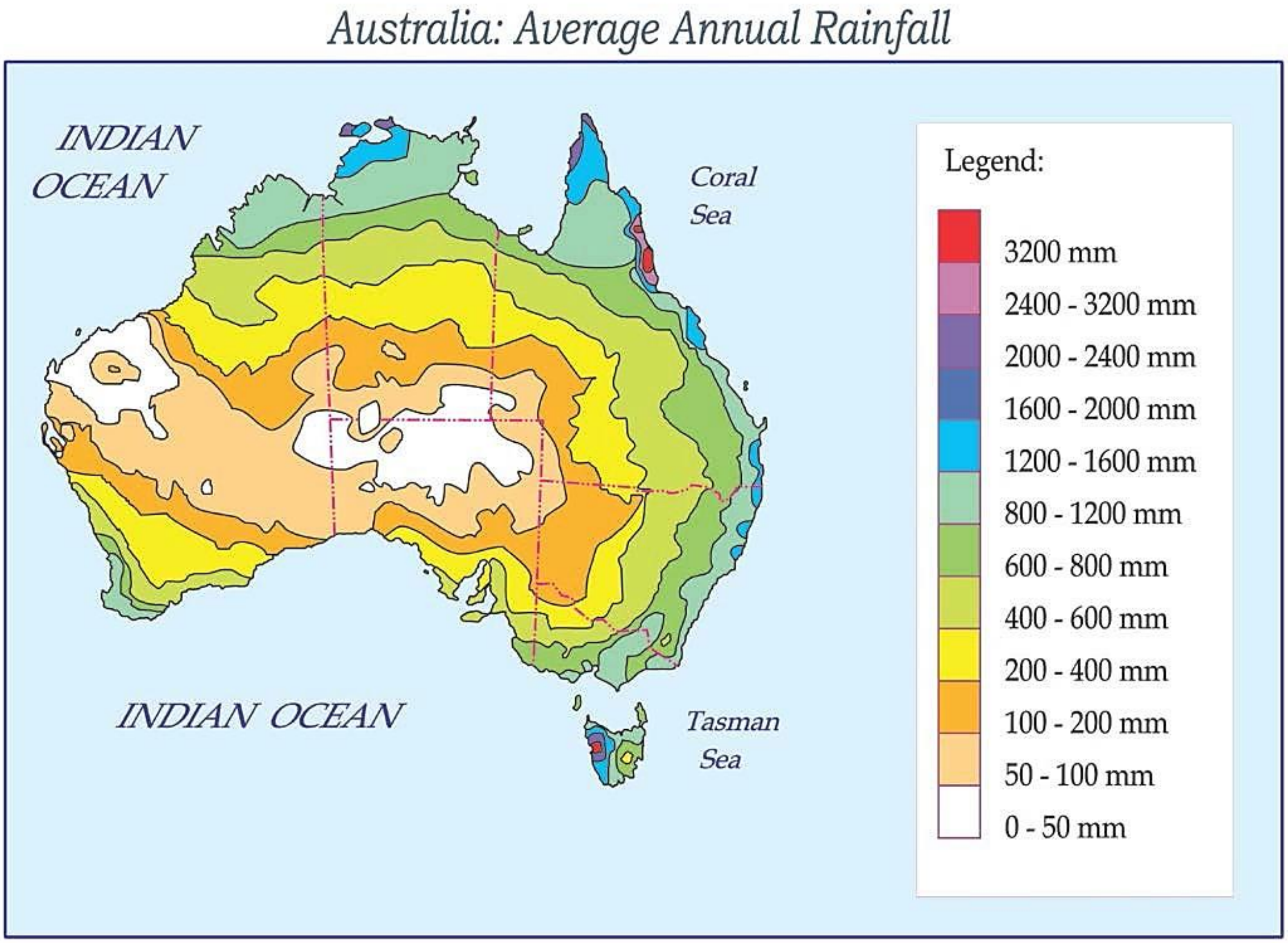
3.9.5 A logical division should be selected based on categories of information and a title designated to reflect the content.

For instance, a complex map may be shown first as an overview, followed by separate layers within the whole:

cities and states or provinces; bodies of water (i.e., seas, lakes, rivers); resources (i.e., minerals, industry); land regions; etc. (See Example 3-6: *Southwest Asia*.) Sample transcriber's note.

> This map is divided into three parts (political, land use, and resources) and shown over six maps. The first part is a political map of Southwest Asia. The second part, land use, is divided into two maps, and the third part, which shows the distribution of resources, is divided into three maps. Countries that are too small to key are: ISRAEL (west of JORDAN), LEBANON (west of SYRIA), KUWAIT (southeast of IRAQ), and in the Persian Gulf is QATAR and the island state of BAHRAIN. Each map is shown on a left-hand page followed by its key on the right-hand page(s).

Example 3-3: Australia Average Annual Rainfall



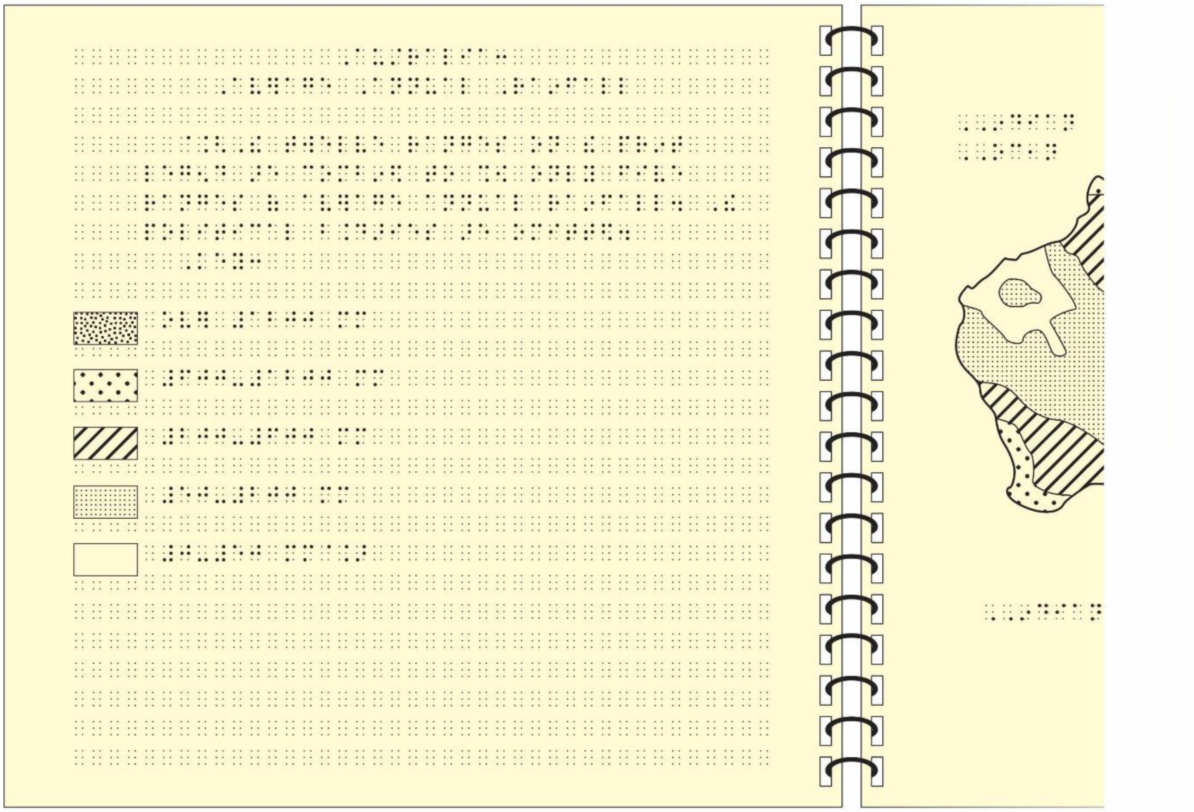
Transcriber's Note:
The twelve ranges on the print legend are combined to show only five ranges of average annual rainfall. The political boundaries are omitted.

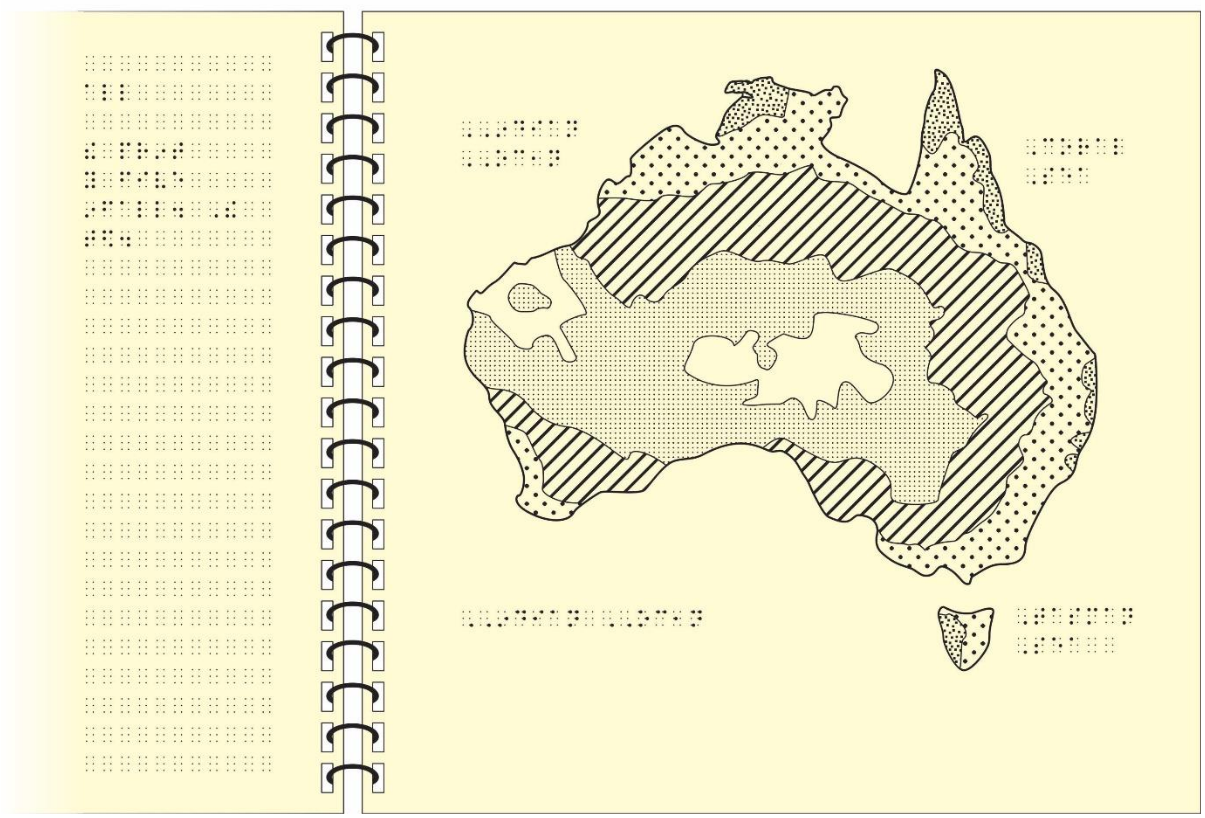
Example 3-3 UEB: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example.

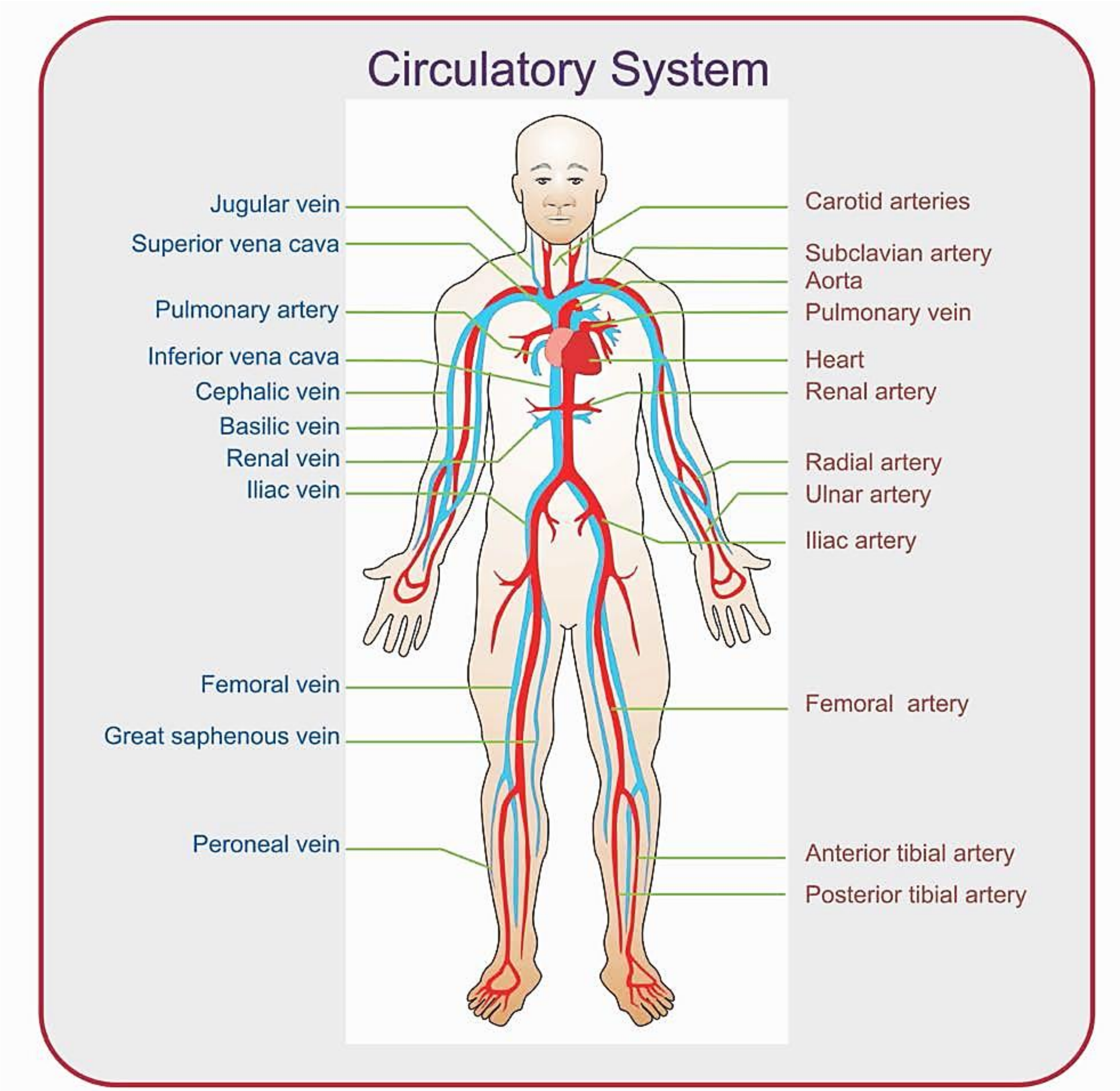
- UEB code
- additional blank space is not necessary between distinct adjacent area textures (2.11)
- implementation of key on facing page (2.20, 5.8.3.2, 7.3.10)
- non-texturing of bodies of water, limiting number of area textures to five; main focus of map is on levels of rainfall, not surrounding water (3.2.2)
- use of blank space behind and around labels (3.4.3.13)
- complex graphic simplified (3.8.3, 7.1.1.1)
- simplification of shorelines (3.6.1)
- omission of political boundaries explained in transcriber's note (3.7, 5.6.1, 5.6.2)
- consolidation of information in key: twelve print ranges combined into five textured areas (3.8.3)
- placement of title on key page (5.3.5, 5.8.3.2)
- incorporation of print legend into key listing (5.7.5, 5.8.4.2)
- placement of transcriber's note indicator before the transcriber's note starts and after the last symbol in the key (5.8.4.1)
- key explanation starts in cell 6 (5.8.4.3)
- runover of labeled information on the graphic left justified and not indented (5.10.7)

Example 3-3 UEB: Australia Average Annual Rainfall





Example 3-4: Circulatory System



Transcriber's Note:

The following three diagrams show the main blood vessels of the human circulatory system. The first diagram is an overview. A dashed line indicates the point of separation in diagrams two and three. The second diagram is the upper body and the third diagram is the lower limbs.

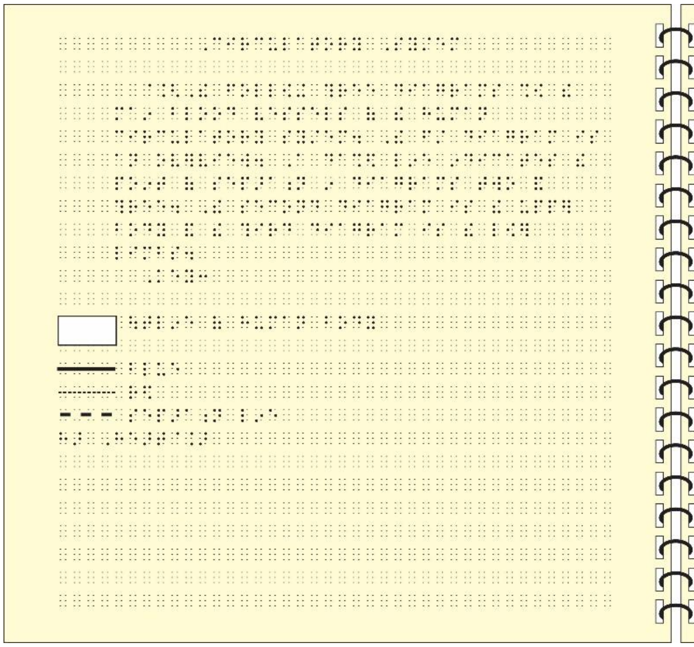
Example 3-4 UEB: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example.

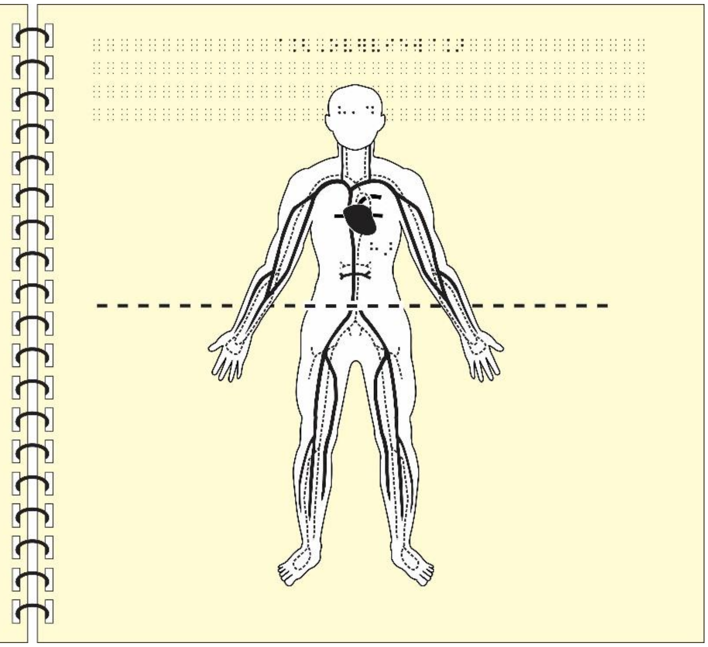
- UEB code
- implementation of key on facing page (2.20, 5.8.3.2, 7.3.10)
- placement of labels without lead lines (3.4.3.12)
- implementation of overview technique (3.9.1)
- explanation of presentation in transcriber's note (3.9.2)
- division of print graphic into two sections, shown by added dashed line, repeated in each section (3.9.3)
- addition of centered headings to clarify section presentation (Overview, Upper Body, Lower Limbs) (3.9.3)
- use of dashed line as point of reference on all tactile graphics (3.9.4)
- use of alphabetic key listing (5.7.3)
- placement of transcriber's note indicator before the transcriber's note starts and after the last symbol in the key (5.8.4.1)
- placement and dimensions of area and line symbols in key listing (5.8.4.3, 5.9.1, 5.9.2)
- addition of label to clarify presentation (head) (7.3.7)

Example 3-4 UEB: Circulatory System

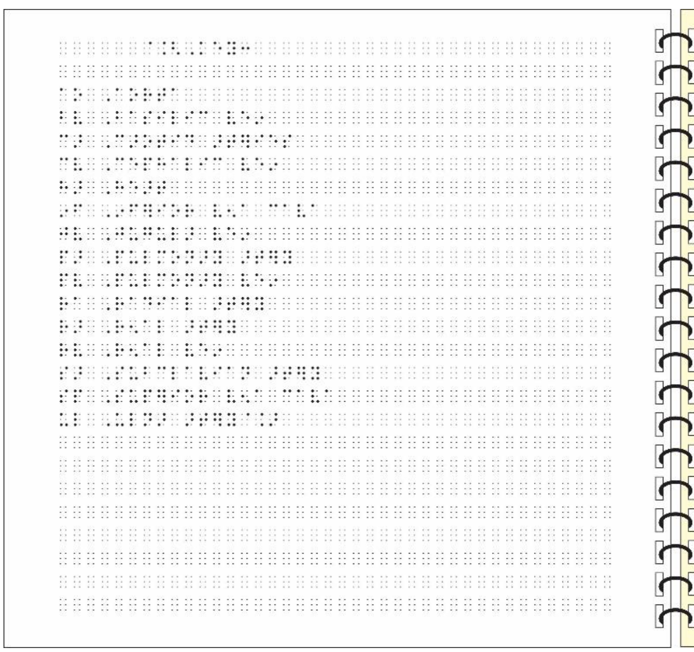
Key page with Transcriber's Note



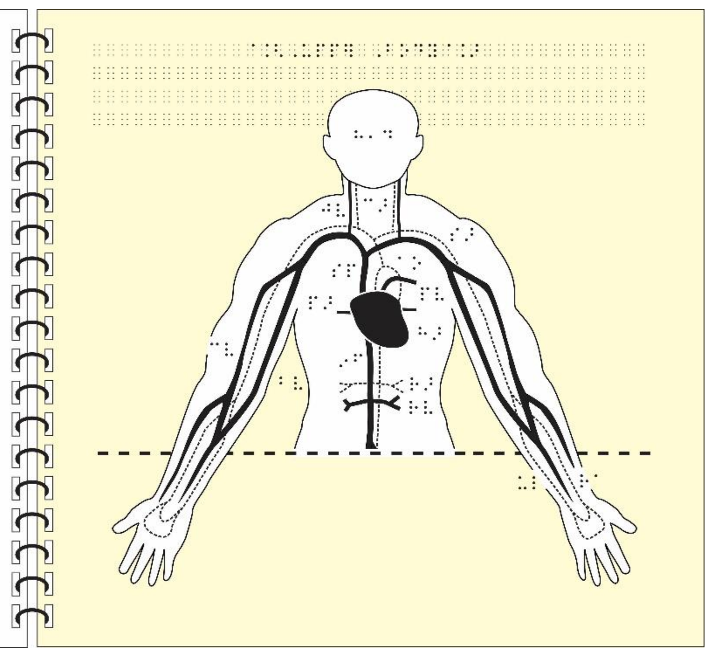
Overview on facing page



Key page for upper body diagram



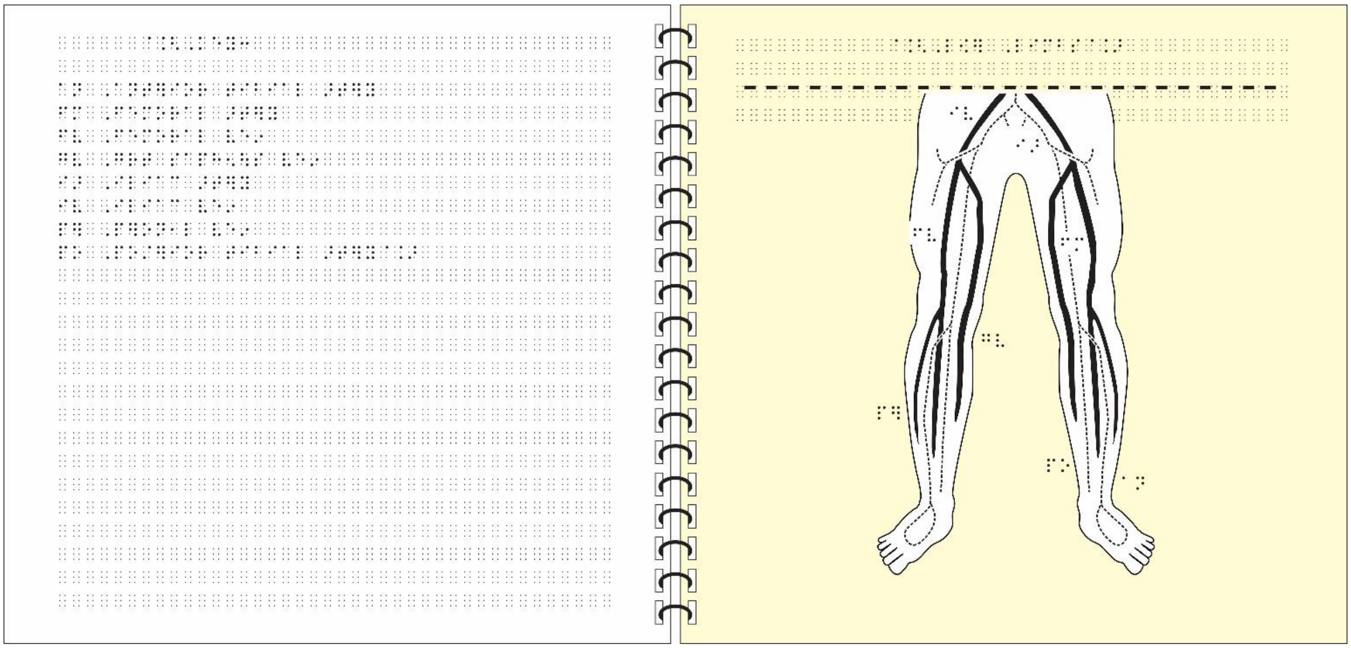
Upper body diagram on facing page



Example 3-4 UEB: Circulatory System (cont.)

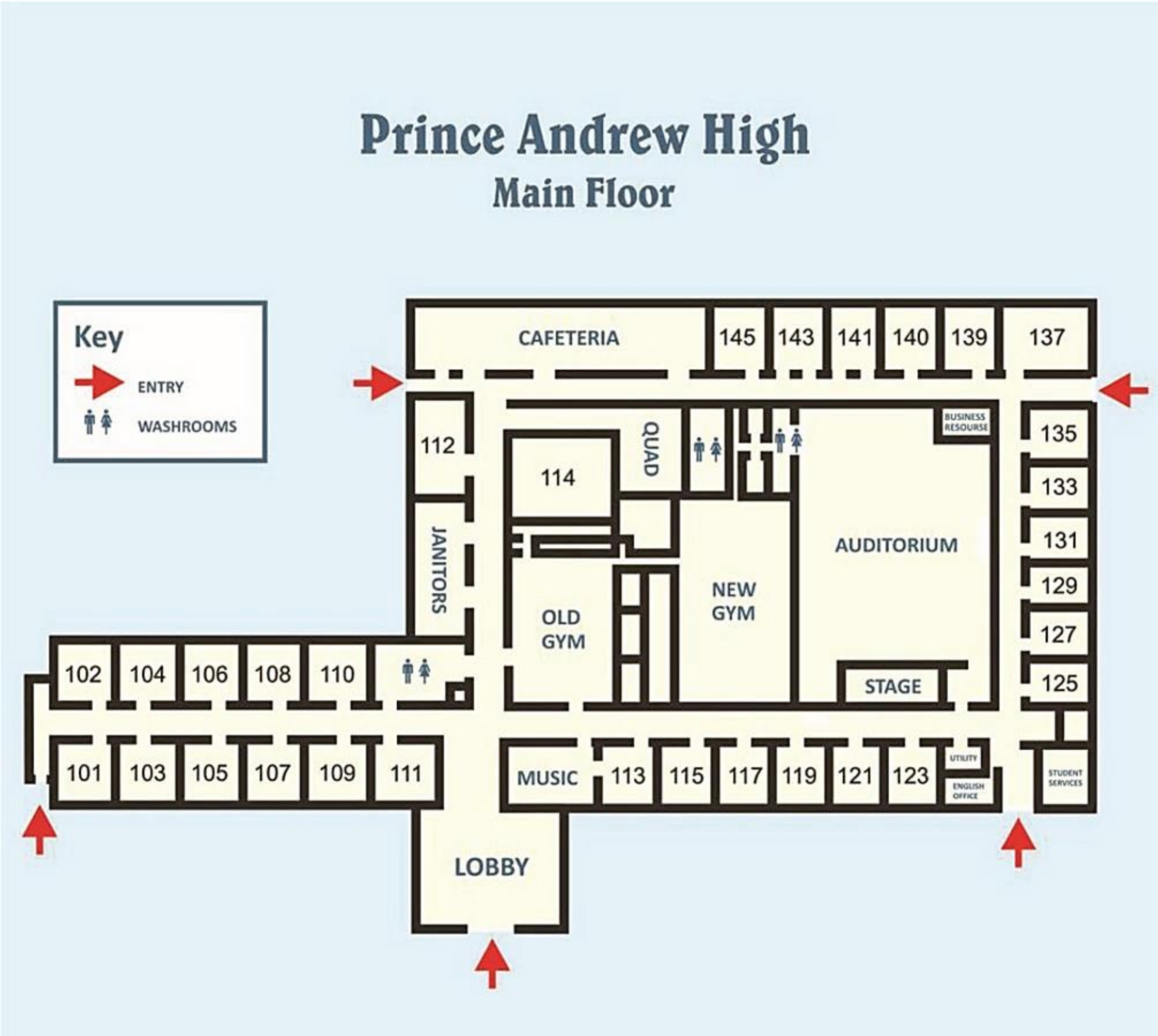
Key page for lower limbs diagram

Lower limbs diagram on facing page



This page is intentionally blank.

Example 3-5: Prince Andrew High School Floor Plan



> **Transcriber's Note:**
> Room numbers are shown in 3-cell symbols without the numeric indicator. Room names are shown in 2-cell symbols.

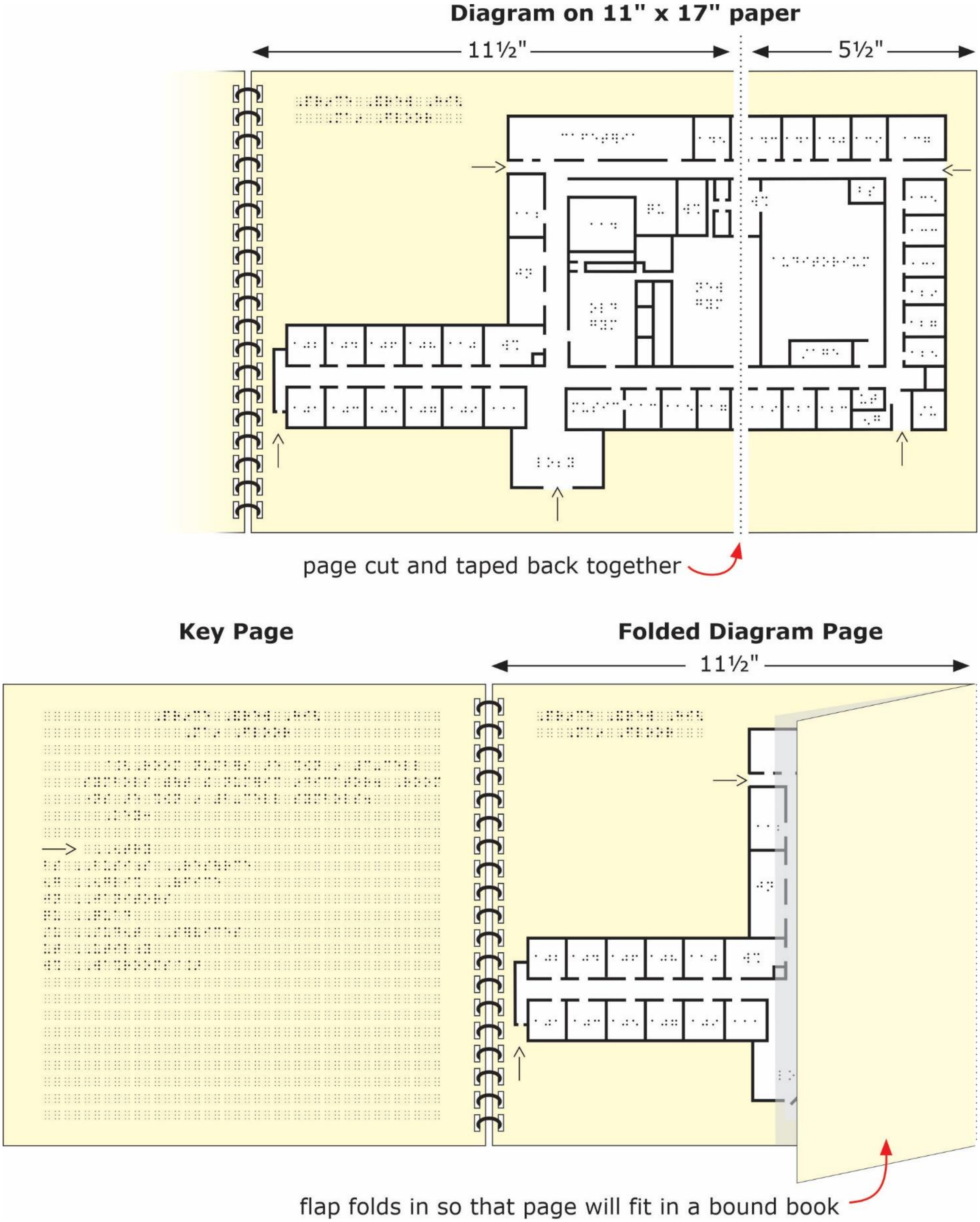
Example 3-5 UEB: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example.

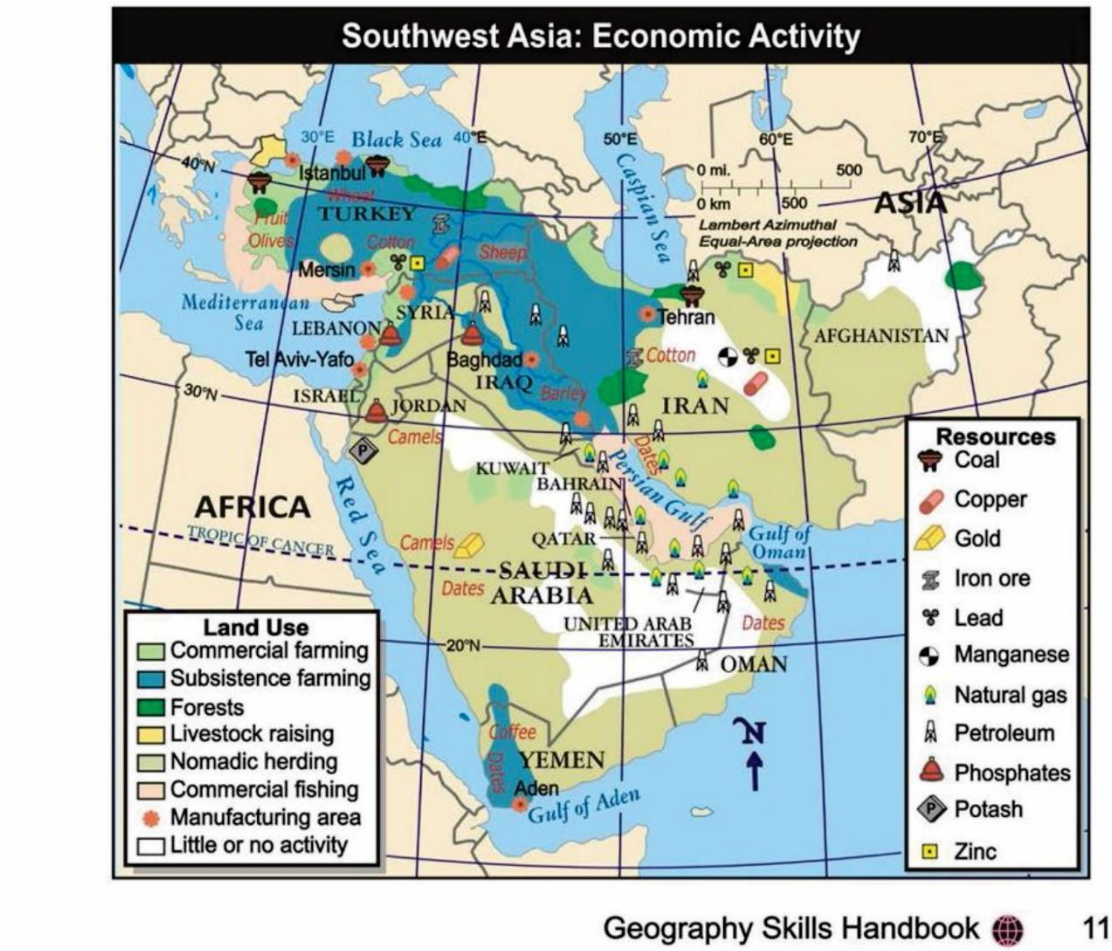
- UEB code
- placement of centered heading moved to accommodate map on one page (2.1)
- use of repeated headings on multi-page orientation and mobility maps (5.3.3)
- combination of labeling styles used, spelled-out names and alphabetic key (2.17, 7.3.6)
- implementation of fold-out page technique (3.4.4.4)
- non-use of numeric indicator on room numbers, explained in a transcriber's note (5.6.1)
- use of alphabetic key listing where capitalization in the explanation follows print (5.7.4)
- omission of capitalization on tactile graphic labels allows use of spelled-out whole names for some labels rather than using a key (5.10.3)
- orientation and mobility map (8.5)

Example 3-5 UEB: Prince Andrew High School Floor Plan

Facing key and fold-out diagram pages



Example 3-6: Southwest Asia



Transcriber's Note:

This map is divided into three parts (political, land use, and resources) and shown over six maps. The first part is a political map of Southwest Asia. The second part, land use, is divided into two maps, and the third part, which shows the distribution of resources, is divided into three maps. Countries that are too small to key are: ISRAEL (west of JORDAN), LEBANON (west of SYRIA), KUWAIT (southeast of IRAQ), and in the Persian Gulf is QATAR and the island state of BAHRAIN. Each map is shown on a left-hand page followed by its key on the right-hand page(s).

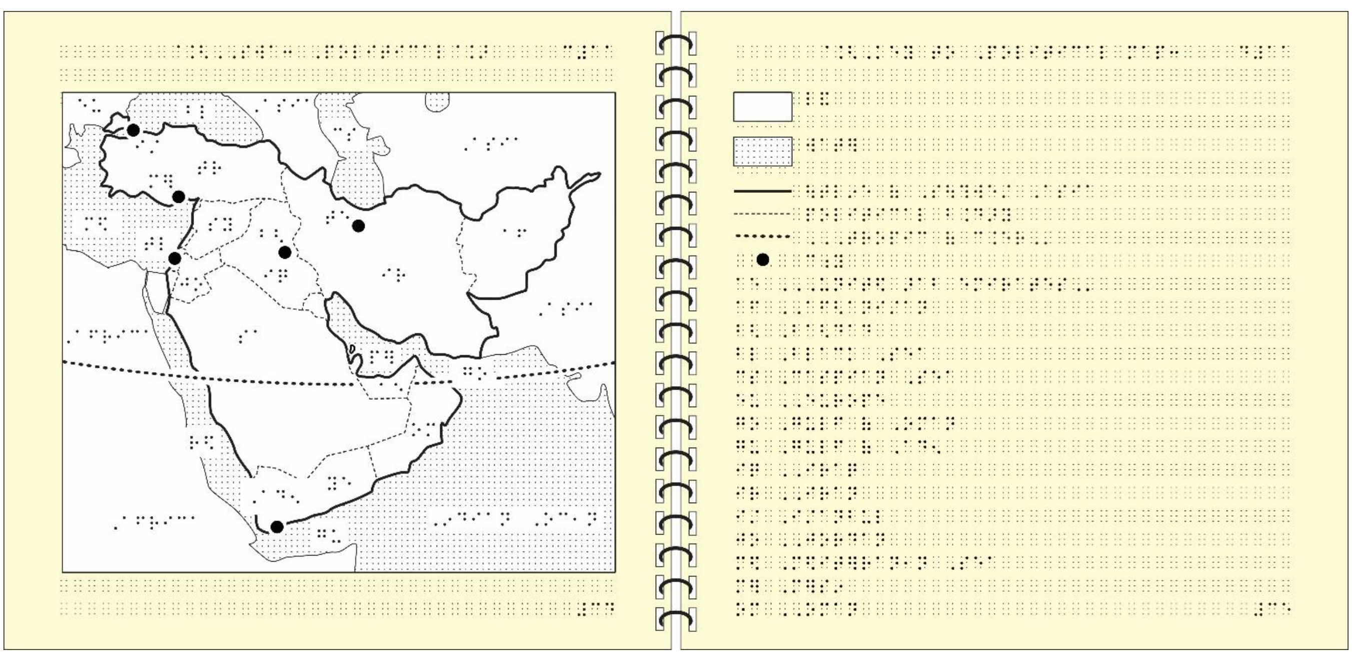
Example 3-6 UEB: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example.

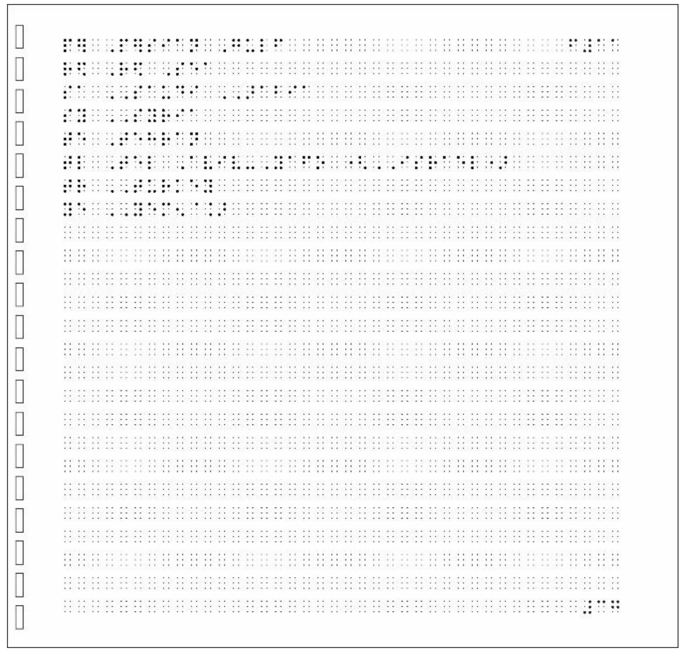
- UEB code
- use of blank space and distinctness of side-by-side area textures (2.11)
- use of blank space behind and around labels and line textures (2.11)
- use of varying heights and textures of lines (political boundaries, Tropic of Cancer) (2.22, 3.4.3.2, 3.4.3.3)
- placement of labels without lead lines (3.4.3.12)
- omission of material: extended areas of surrounding countries, projection information, scale, longitudinal lines, latitudinal lines (3.7)
- consolidation of information in key: small countries omitted on map listed with closest neighboring country (3.8.3, 7.3.8)
- separation of complex map into layers: political, land use, resources (3.9)
- use of point of reference (Tropic of Cancer) (3.9.3)
- placement of indented headings above two columns of key listings (5.3.2)
- Identify the part of the map to which the key applies in the key heading (Key to Political map:) (5.3.3)
- incorporation of print legend into key listing (5.7.5)
- use of area, line, and point symbols in key listing, starting position of explanations (5.8.4.3, 5.8.4.4, 5.8.4.5)
- order of key listing (5.7.1)
- use of alphabetic key listing, International Organization for Standardization abbreviations for country names (5.8.1.2)
- use of two columns for key listing (5.8.4.9, 7.3.11)
- designation of print and braille page numbering on every page, including the ones that are blank (5.12.1)
- order of pages for multiple key pages and tactile graphic (5.12.3)
- omission of directional north arrow (7.6.3.3)

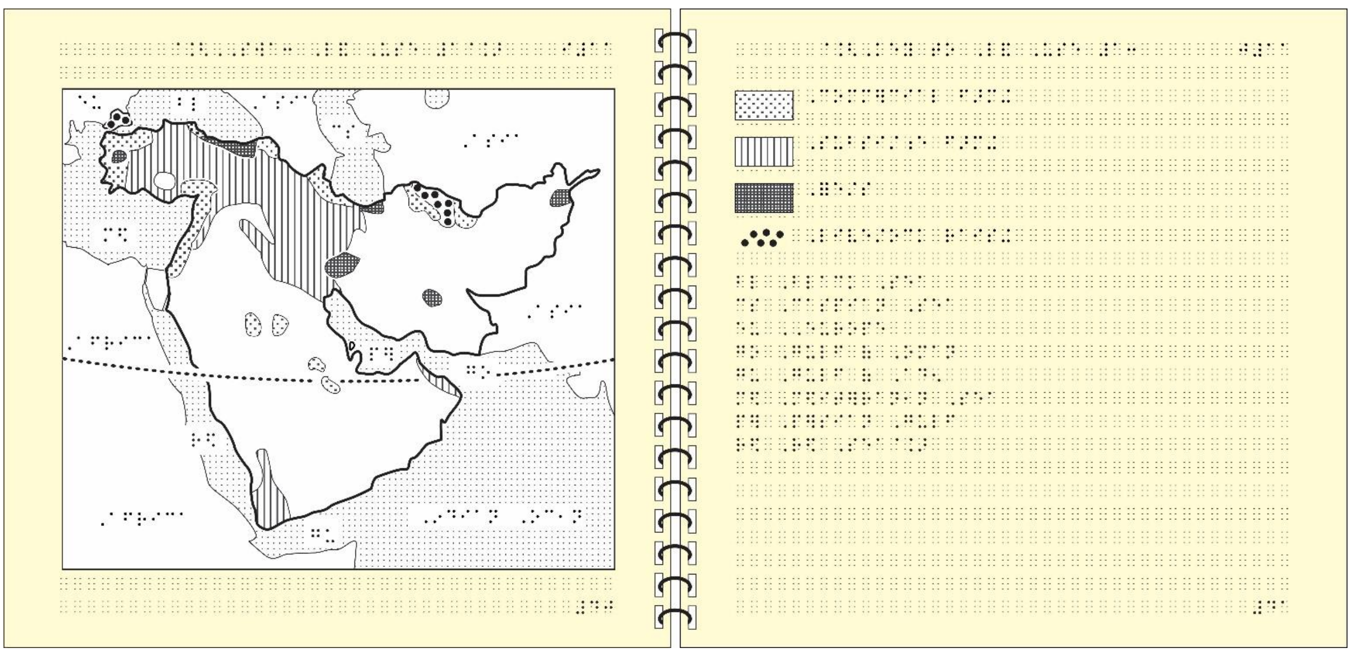
Example 3-6 UEB: Southwest Asia

Note: Page numbers shown here are for an interpoint braille volume. Every page, even the ones that are blank, are assigned a print and braille page number.

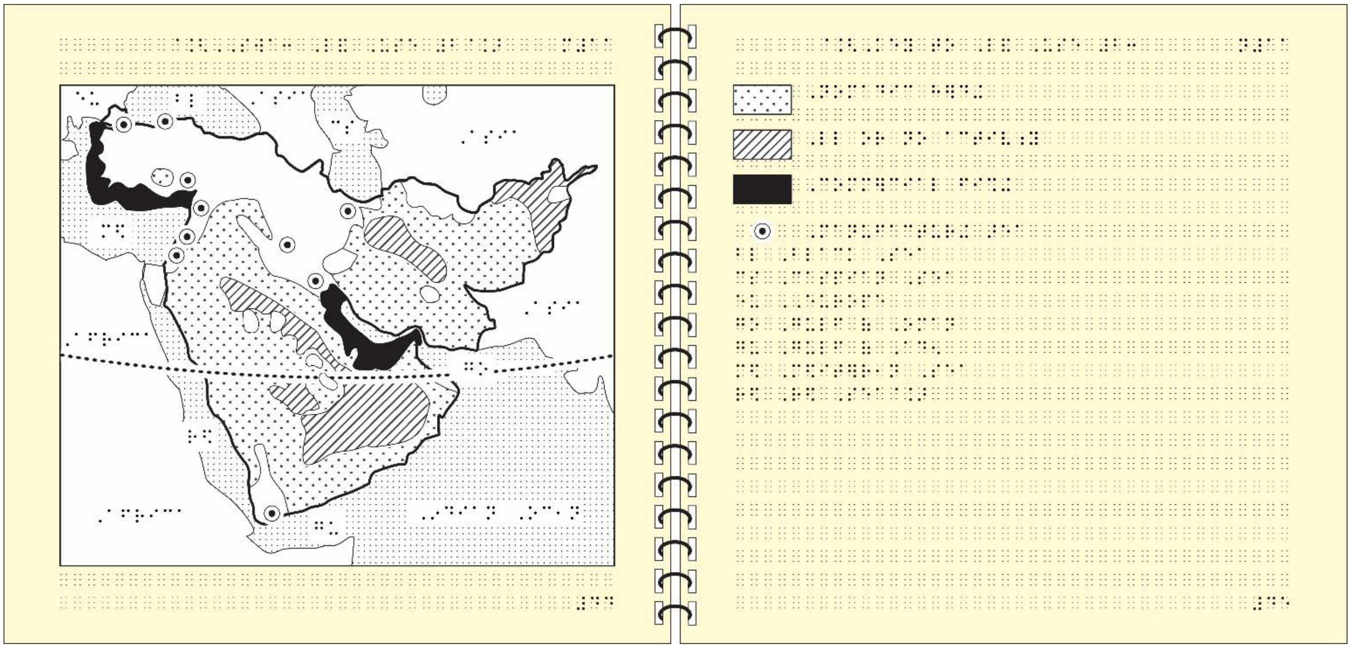


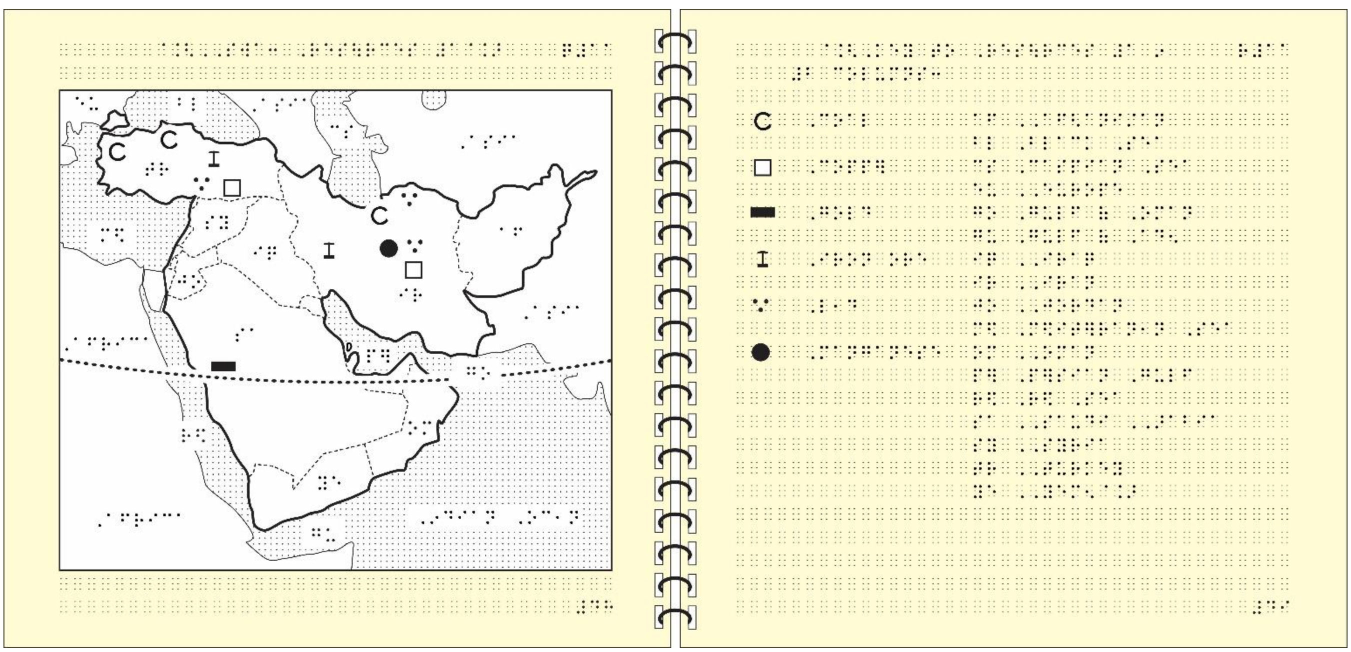
Example 3-6 UEB: Southwest Asia (cont.)



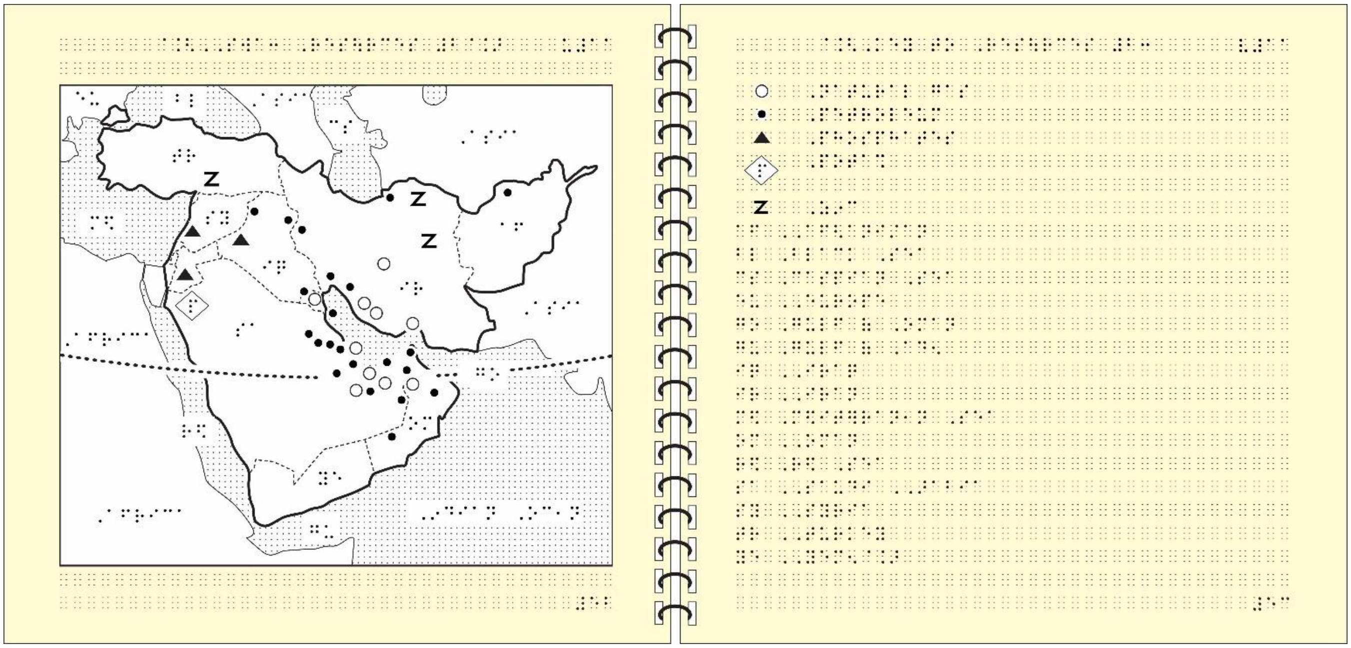


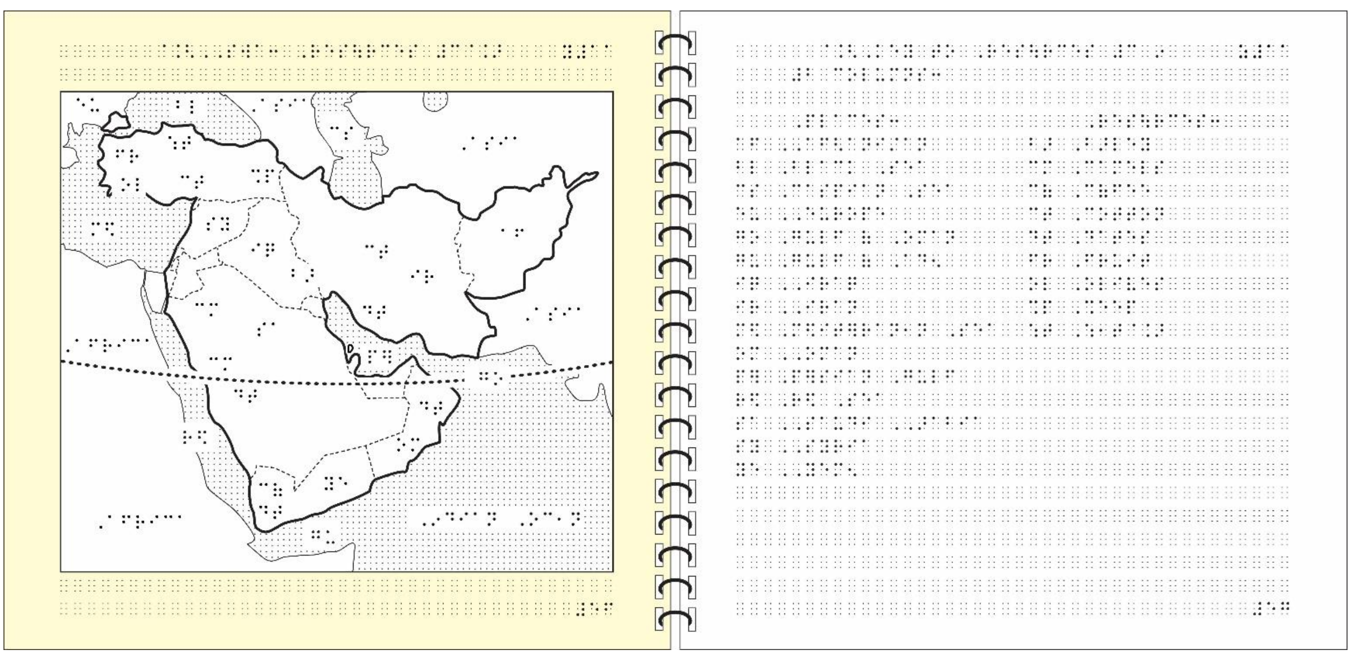
Example 3-6 UEB: Southwest Asia (cont.)



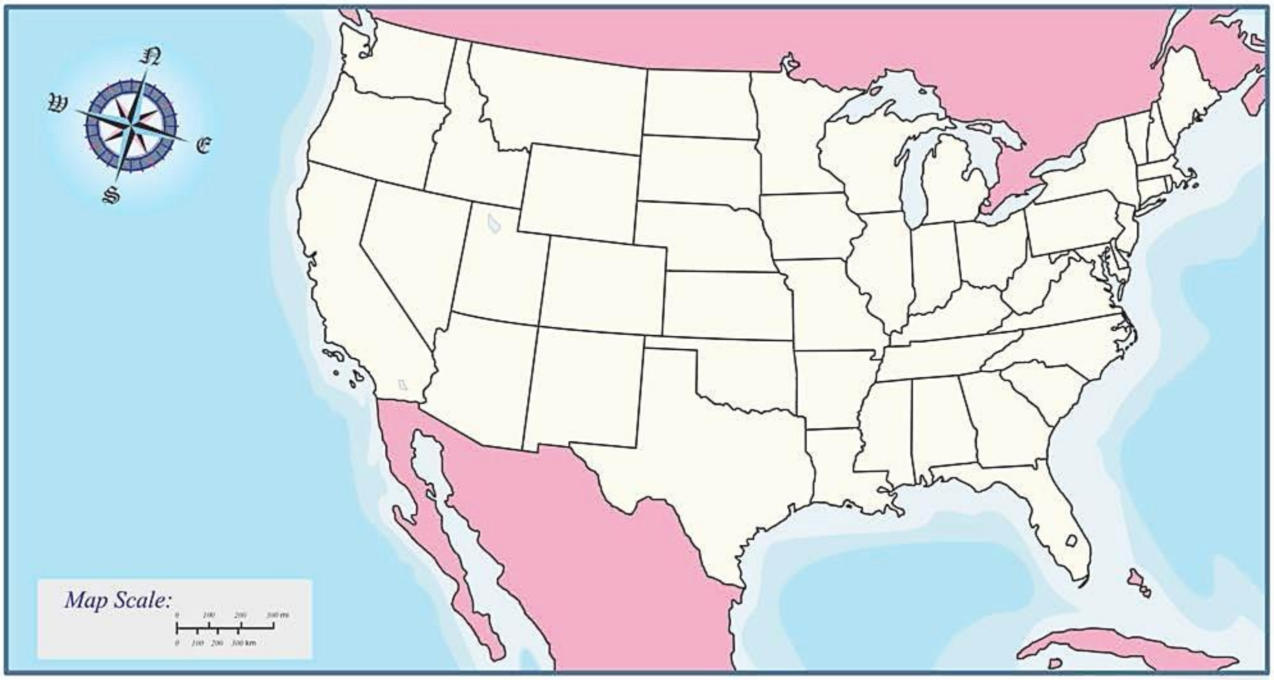


Example 3-6 UEB: Southwest Asia (cont.)





Example 3-7: U.S.A.



48 contiguous mainland states of the U.S.A.

Transcriber's Note:

The map is divided along the Mississippi River into Western and Eastern United States as indicated on the overview map.

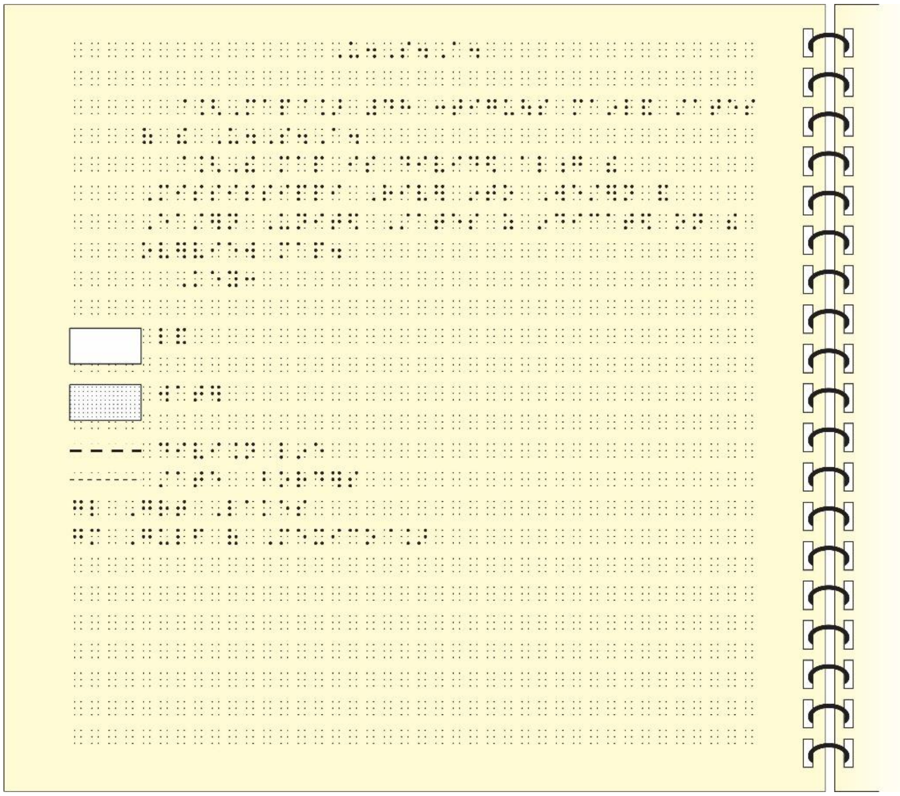
Example 3-7 UEB: Tactile Graphic Design Points

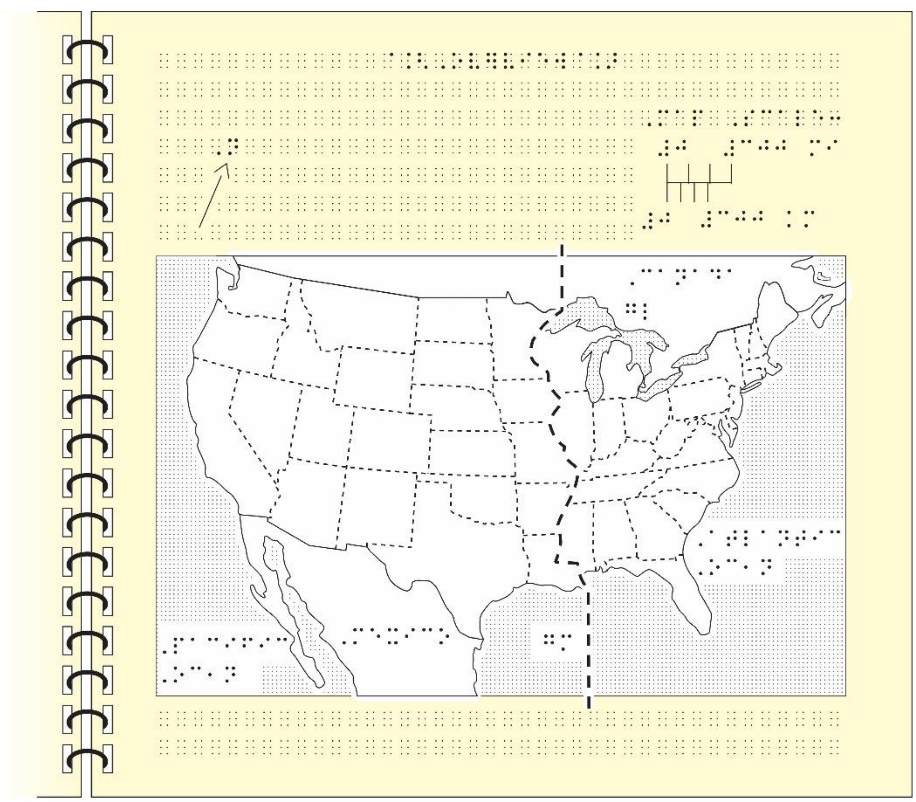
The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example.

- UEB code
- The caption label, “Map”, must be enclosed in transcriber’s notes indicators (5.5)
- outline image used to contain area of map (2.6)
- slight misalignment of dots 456 of numeric indicator with tick marks for the 0 km value on the map scale due to lack of space (2.9)
- combination of labeling styles used, spelled-out names and alphabetic key (2.17, 5.10.2.2, 7.3.6)
- implementation of key on facing page (2.20, 5.8.3.2, 7.3.10)
- use of distinct textures for water versus land (3.4.3.1, 7.6.1)
- enlargement of scale proportional to enlargement of map (3.5.2, 7.6.2)
- division of print graphic into two sections (3.9.2)
- explanation of presentation in transcriber’s note (3.9.2)
- addition of centered headings to clarify section presentations (Overview, Western United States, Eastern United States) (3.9.3)
- implementation of point of references: Mississippi River for separation; Canada and Gulf of Mexico repeated (3.9.4)
- use of dashed line as point of reference on all tactile graphics (3.9.4)
- use of alphabetic key listing (5.7.1, 5.8)
- placement of transcriber’s note indicator before the transcriber’s note starts and after the last symbol in the key (5.8.4.1)
- use of area and line symbols in key listing (5.8.4.3, 5.8.4.4, 5.9.1, 5.9.2)
- non-use of grade 1 symbol indicator on single capitalized letter label (5.10.4, 7.6.3.5)
- addition of labels to clarify presentation: Canada, Mexico, Pacific and Atlantic Oceans, Great Lakes, and Gulf of Mexico (7.3.7)
- transcriber-added labels are not enclosed within transcriber note indicators (3.1.4)
- placement of simplified compass rose and scale on overview map since they are essential for answering text questions (7.6.3, 7.6.3.4, 7.6.3.7)

Example 3-7: UEB U.S.A.

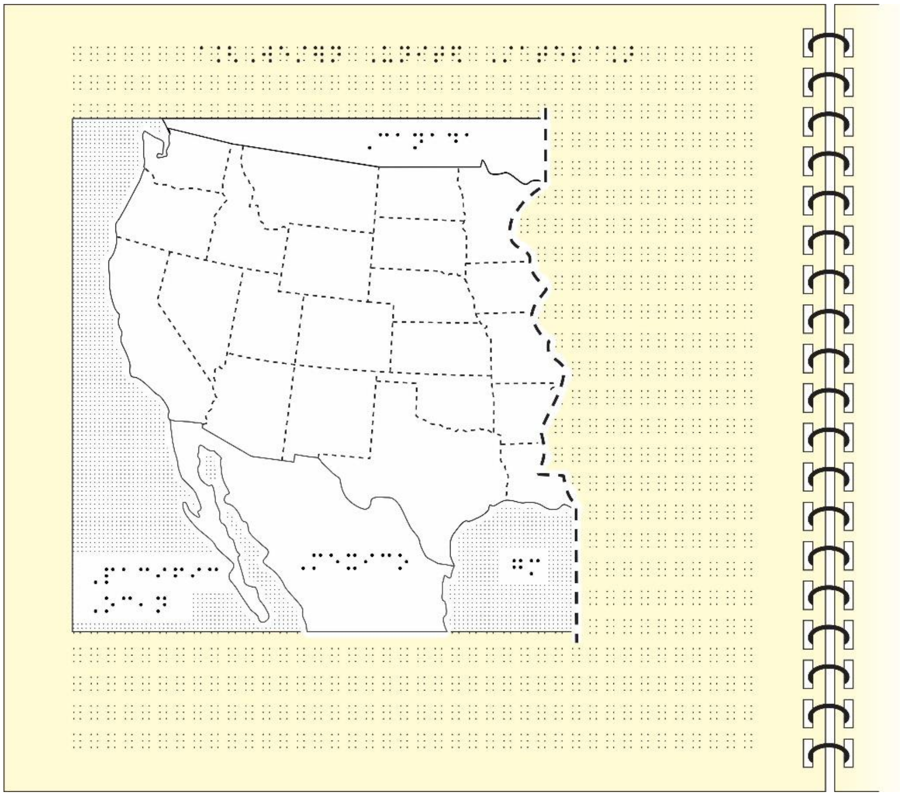
Key and overview tactile map showing the division line

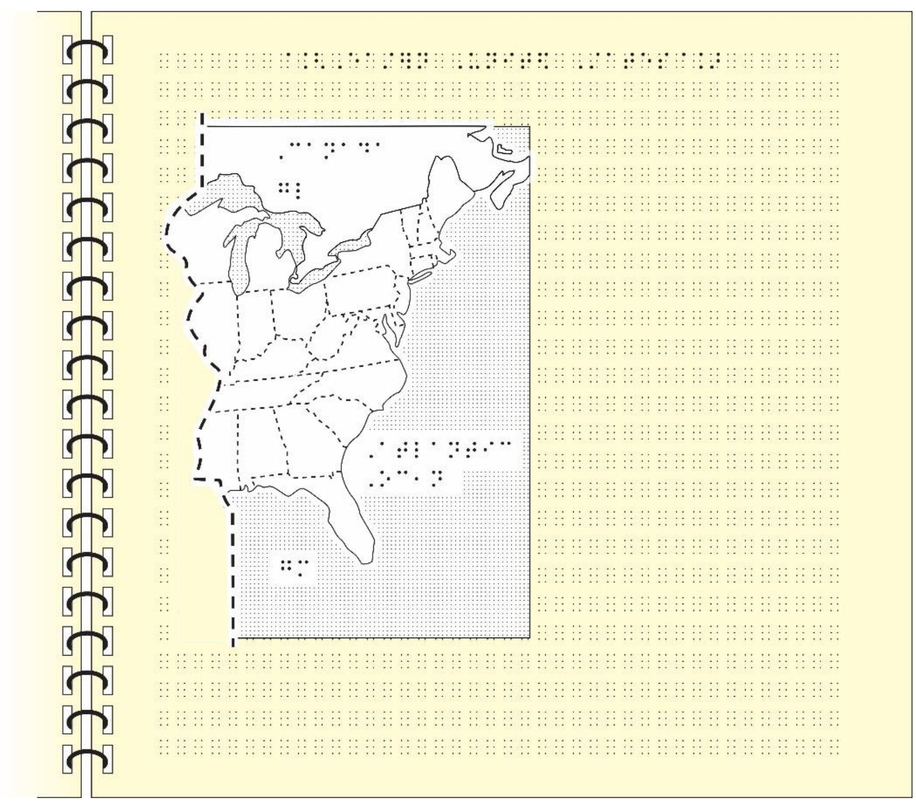




Example 3-7: UEB U.S.A. (cont.)

Tactile map divided into two parts and shown on facing pages





This page is intentionally blank.

Unit 4
Production and Duplication Methods

Tactile graphic production is learned "hands-on" and may be very challenging to a beginning tactile producer. Training, experience, and feedback will improve the skills required to produce a clear, understandable tactile graphic.

Various production methods, from simple to complex, may be used to produce a tactile graphic. The method used depends on the tools and production equipment available.

For detailed instructions on production and duplication methods, see Appendix D: Production and Duplication Methods.

4.1 Digital Master Production

4.1.1 Embossed Braille Image

An image is computer-generated using software programs for braille and graphics and then embossed on computer paper with a graphics embosser. (See Supplement Example 35: *Neighborhood Map*.)

Embossed braille, tooling, and collage may be combined to form a hard copy tactile graphic master.

Production and duplication equipment required: computer, braille and graphics software programs, specific braille fonts, braille paper, graphics embosser.

4.1.2 Microcapsule Image

An image is computer-generated using software programs for braille and graphics, transferred to microcapsule paper using a photocopier or printer, and then developed by a fuser. (See Supplement Example 25b: *Gastrointestinal Tract*.)

Production and duplication equipment required: computer, braille and graphics software programs, specific braille fonts, photocopier or printer, microcapsule paper, fuser.

4.1.3 Three-Dimensional Printing

A typical method for three-dimensional (3-D) printing is a process in which a substance is extruded from a revolving head, building up layers to produce an object that has length, width, depth, and texture. As the size and expense of 3-D printers decreases, 3-D printing can be used to produce tactile representations of geometric shapes, anatomic models, works of art, architectural plans, scientific models, and many other applications.

Libraries of computer-aided design (CAD) files are available to use to produce 3-D objects. Braille labels may be incorporated into the design and printed as part of the 3-D object. Readability of the labels may become problematic if the surface on which the label is affixed is not smooth and flat. If it is not possible to affix braille labels, the reader may need assistance in familiarizing themselves with the 3-D object.

There is a wide variety of 3-D printers on the market, and careful consideration should be given to price and design requirements before purchase. A 3-D printer should have high-resolution capability if braille dots or fine dot patterns will be part of the tactile graphic.

4.2 Hard Copy Master Production

4.2.1 Tooling

Tools can be used to create different area and line textures and point symbols on a paper foundation (base layer) or on diagramming foil to form a raised image. Common household tools (i.e., tracing wheel) or special kits can be purchased to create a tactile graphic master. (See Example 3-3 and Supplement Example 30: *Australia: Average Annual Rainfall*.)

Tooling, collage, and embossed braille may be combined to form a tactile graphic master.

Production and duplication equipment required: braille paper, diagramming foil, household tools and/or tooling kit, rubber mat, plastic sheets, vacuum-form machine.

4.2.2 Collage

Textured materials are glued onto a paper foundation (base layer) to form a raised image. Common household items (i.e., drywall tape, corrugated paper, crochet cotton, string, punched-out dots) can be used to create a tactile graphic master. (See Supplement Example 25a: *Gastrointestinal Tract*.)

Collage, tooling, and embossed braille may be combined to form a tactile graphic master.

Production and duplication equipment required: braille paper, household items, plastic sheets, vacuum-form machine.

4.2.3 Sculpture

Modeling clay is molded into an image and baked to produce the tactile graphic master. The baked clay object is attached to a paper foundation (base layer). (See Supplement Example 27: *Bones*.)

Production and duplication equipment required: braille paper, polymer clays, clay softening agent, silicone sealant, oven, vacuum-form machine, plastic sheet.

4.2.4 Other Simple Techniques

For use in the classroom, tactile graphics may be produced quickly using simple techniques. Some methods can be used by a person who is visually impaired to practice handwriting or to draw a picture.

4.3 Duplication and Development

4.3.1 Braille Embosser

A graphics file is created using software programs for braille and graphics and then printed on a graphics embosser. The electronic file can be saved for further editing or duplication. (See Supplement Example 14: *Bar Graph*.)

4.3.2 Fuser

A graphics file is created using braille and graphics software programs and then transferred to microcapsule paper using a photocopier or printer. Certain pens can also be used on the microcapsule paper to add features. A halogen bulb in the fuser raises the gray and black areas on microcapsule paper, resulting in a tactile graphic. The electronic file can be saved for further editing or duplication. (See Supplement Example 2: *Twenty-Four Hour Analog Clock*.)

4.3.3 Vacuum Form

A hard copy master is created using tooling, collage, foil, or sculpture production methods. The heating component and vacuum pump of the vacuum-form machine mold a plastic sheet (e.g., Brailon® thermoform sheet) to the shape of the hard copy master. This process forms a duplicate copy while retaining the master for future use. (See Example 6-10 and Supplement Example 10: *Shaded Cartesian Graph*.)

Unit 5
Braille Formats for Tactile Graphics

The following information is based on the format guidelines for presentation of these items from Braille Formats: Principles of Print-to-Braille Transcription, 2016; The Rules of Unified English Braille, Second Edition 2013; Guidelines for Technical Material, 2008 version updated August 2014; The Nemeth Braille Code for Mathematics and Science Notation, 2022; and relevant updates.

For the purpose of this document, all literary works are non-technical in nature and are transcribed in UEB. When transcribing technical content (e.g., mathematics, statistics, physics, or chemistry) that appears throughout the book, the materials should be transcribed according to UEB or Nemeth.

5.1 Placement of Tactile Graphic

5.1.1 An illustration should be inserted as close as possible to the corresponding discussion in the text. If an appropriate location is not apparent, place it at the end of the print page on which it appears.

5.1.2 A blank line is required before and after a tactile graphic. If space does not permit the inclusion of a blank line, the opening and closing indicators (e.g., grade 1 passage, numeric passage, Nemeth code switching) can be inserted on a line by itself and replace the blank line.

5.1.3 When it is necessary to move an illustration from its position in the print text, insert a transcriber's note at the original position, giving the print page number of the new location. A second transcriber's note must be inserted before the illustration at its new location stating the page number of its position in the print text.

5.1.4 When individually numbered or lettered diagrams are presented in print, they should be placed one below the other (vertically) rather than side by side (horizontally).

5.1.5 For test materials or answer choices where a comparison is being made between diagrams, they may be placed side by side in order to keep them on the same page. Items should be spatially arranged in order, horizontally, regardless of what is shown in print.

Example: A. B.

C. D.

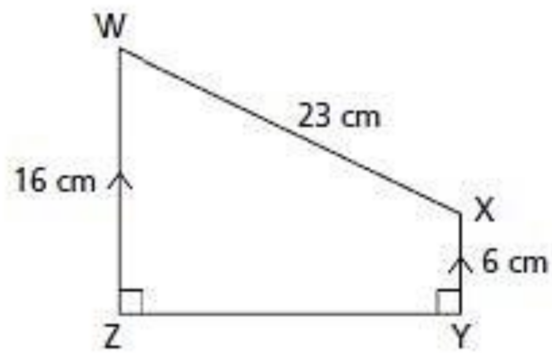
5.2 Order of Elements in a Tactile Graphic

Tactile graphics may consist of some or all of the elements listed below:

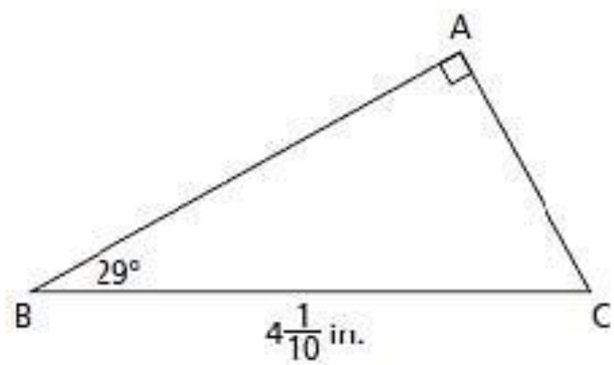
- heading
- caption
- transcriber's note
- key
- graphic
- source

There are many different ways that the headings of print graphics are presented. Some print graphics do not have headings, some headings are included with the figure number and caption, some headings are embedded in the text of the caption, and some headings are displayed. Print graphics for different subject matter, such as mathematics and social studies, are also presented in various ways. Each print graphic needs to be analyzed to decide how these elements may be presented to the reader in the most understandable order and format.

5. In this trapezoid, determine the measure of $\angle W$ to the nearest tenth of a degree.



6. a) Determine the perimeter of $\triangle ABC$ to the nearest tenth of an inch.



b) Determine the area of $\triangle ABC$ to the nearest square inch.

This print graphic may be represented by a simple tactile graphic. No transcriber-assigned heading, caption, transcriber's note, or key is required. More than one simple graphic such as these may fit on a single braille page.

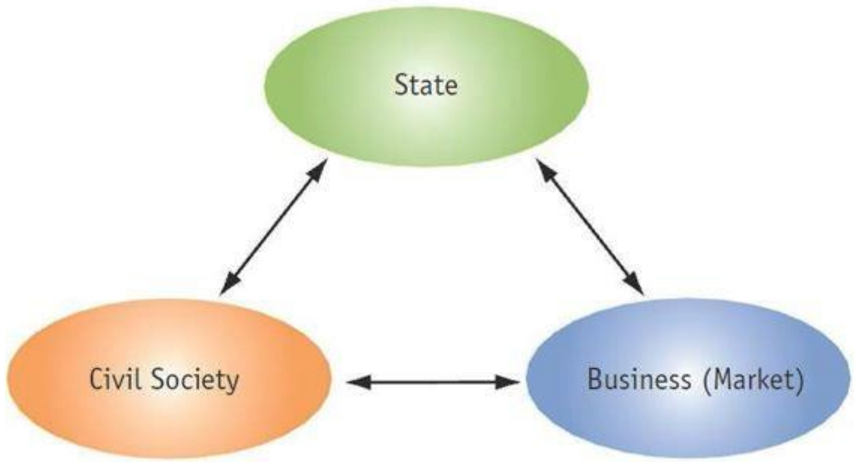
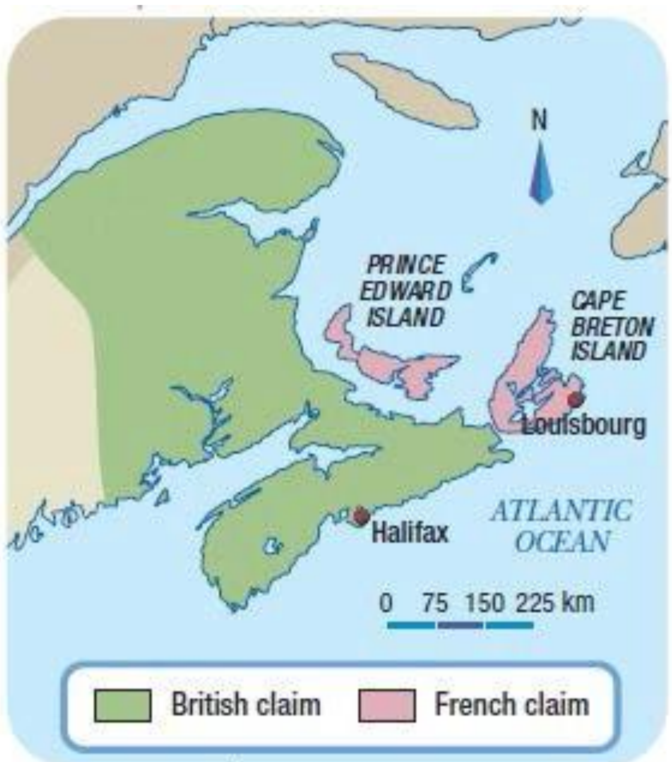


Figure 13-2

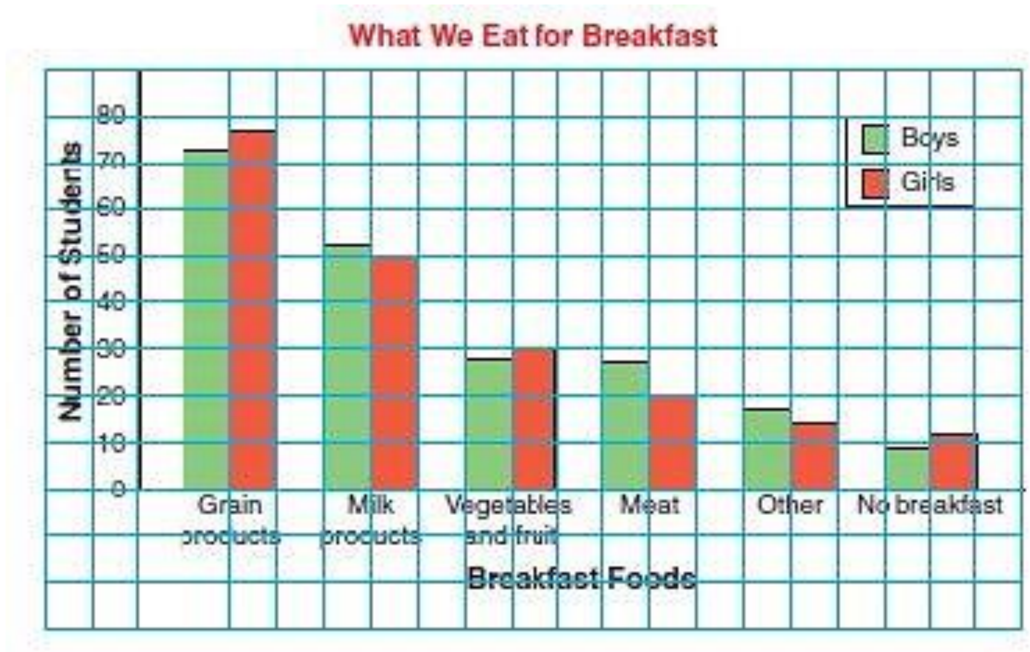
These three elements—state, civil society and business—influence our lives on national and international levels. The relationships among these elements need to be balanced so that one does not overpower the others. *Civil society* describes the collective actions of people based on shared interests. When people take collective action, they often choose to form organizations such as community groups, NGOs, trade unions, faith-based organizations, or advocacy groups.

This print graphic may be represented by the figure number, caption, and the graphic. These elements would likely all fit on one braille page. There is no need to add a transcriber-assigned heading because the caption, which should appear before the graphic, explains what the web is showing.



What province is Cape Breton Island part of today?

This print graphic may be represented by a heading, the caption, a key incorporating the print legend, and the graphic. These elements may all fit on one braille page. Because the caption does not convey the meaning of the map, you may want to add a transcriber-assigned heading. To do this accurately, the understanding of the subject matter is crucial. For instance, the actual heading used in the print textbook for this map is "Acadia, 1713."



This print graphic may be represented by the heading, a key incorporating the print legend, and the graphic. These elements may all fit on two facing pages.

The print legend should be placed before the graphic (e.g., bar graphs, line graphs, and pictographs). If possible, place the key and the graph on the same page. If the key cannot fit on the same page as the graph, it should be placed before the graphic page.

If two pages are required, the heading of the bar graph should be placed before the key as a centered heading. On the page with the bar graph, the heading should not be repeated and the graph should begin at the top of the page.

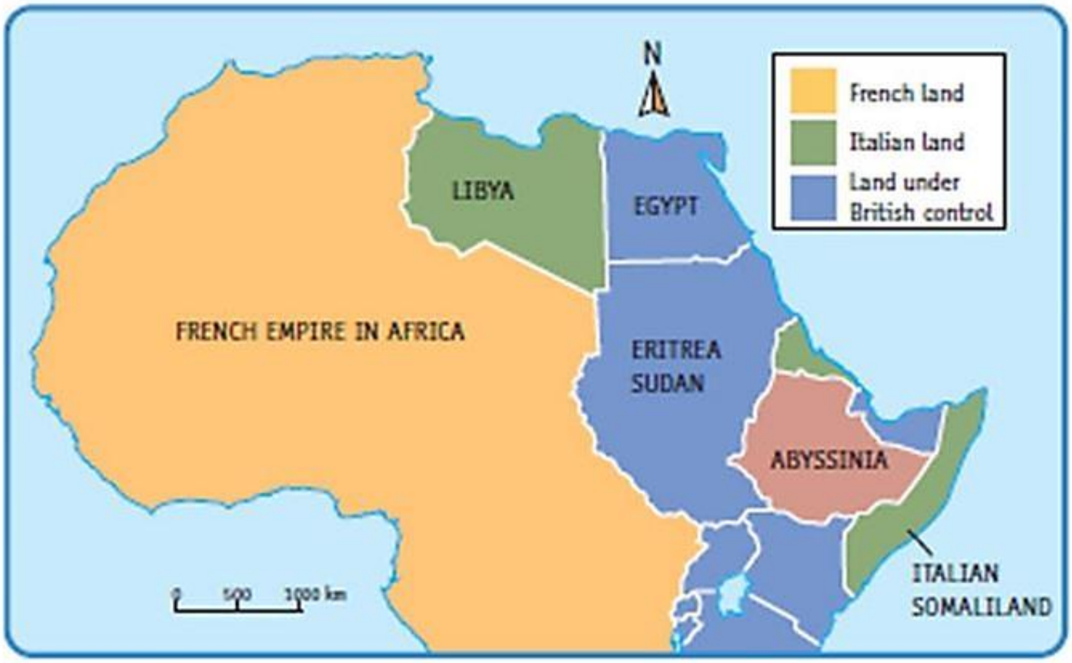


Figure 7-9

This map shows Abyssinia, an independent country since 1896, when it defeated Italy.

This print graphic may be represented by the figure number, caption, a key incorporating the print legend, and the graphic. These elements may all fit on two facing pages. The caption explains what the map is showing, but because the elements require more than one braille page, a transcriber-assigned heading (if necessary) may be added to the first page.

If the key can fit on one page, it should be placed before the graphic page.

5.3 Headings, Titles, and Numbered Figures

5.3.1 **Centered Headings**. The most commonly used heading in a graphic is the centered heading. It is used for the title of a graphic. Blank lines should be left before and after centered headings unless the centered heading is the first line on a page (no running head used) or follows a top box line. When a running head is used, a blank line is necessary before the centered heading.

5.3.2 Cell-5 or cell-7 headings are sometimes used within a key and must be preceded by a blank line. Cell-5 or -7 headings must run over in the same cell in which they start. A blank line should not be used between these minor headings and any accompanying text such as boxed material, listed items presented in columns, and numbered or lettered items. A blank line should be inserted between minor headings and a tactile graphic. (See Example 3-6: *Southwest Asia*; Example 6-7 and Supplement Example 6: *Number Line*.)

5.3.3 When a tactile graphic extends beyond one braille page, do not repeat the title on subsequent pages. In some instances, when there are multi-page keys following a graphic, it is acceptable to add descriptive text to "Key:" (e.g., "Key to Political Map:").

EXCEPTION: Headings on multi-page orientation and mobility maps should be repeated on all pages. (See Example 3-5: *Prince Andrew High Main Floor*.)

5.3.4 A print illustration may include a label or the word *Figure* (or *Fig.*) followed by a number and text. Follow the print copy for the numbering of illustrations in combination with hyphens, dashes, and colons. Use a period (256) to represent the print dot or decimal point when brailling the heading numbers that use a print dot to separate the number of the chapter from the number of an item within the chapter. This information should be brailled starting in cell 7 with runovers in cell 5 and placed before the drawing. Include figure numbers only if they are there in print. (See Example 3-1: *Parts of a Flower*.)

5.3.5 Blank Lines in Tactile Graphics

With Running Head

Page 1	Page 2
RUNNING HEAD *blank line* CENTERED HEADING *blank line* Other braille text OR tactile graphic	RUNNING HEAD Other braille text OR *blank line* followed by tactile graphic
RUNNING HEAD *blank line* CELL-5 HEADING Other braille text OR *blank line* followed by tactile graphic	RUNNING HEAD Other braille text
RUNNING HEAD Key: *blank line* key listing	RUNNING HEAD continuation of key listing

Without Running Head

Page 1	Page 2+
CENTERED HEADING *blank line* Other braille text OR tactile graphic	Other braille text OR blank line followed by tactile graphic
CELL-5 HEADING Other braille text OR *blank line* followed by tactile graphic	Other braille text
Key: *blank line* key listing	continuation of key listing

5.3.6 **Transcriber-Assigned Headings**. Tactile graphics can be identified by way of a transcriber-assigned heading. The "added name" is a useful identification tool that enables the reader to quickly understand what the picture is showing.

When there is no heading to the print illustration, it is permissible to add a heading in braille for clarity. It is necessary to add transcriber's note indicators to this heading.

Note: The test publisher or state/provincial assessment content specialist must approve any changes to standardized tests.

5.3.7 A line 25 identifier is not needed on line 25 of the page containing a tactile graphic or on any accompanying key pages.

5.4 Description of Print Illustrations

5.4.1 When a description, identification, or explanation of an illustration or a series of illustrations is inserted in the braille edition instead of a tactile graphic, these insertions must be brailled as transcriber's notes. The description or explanation must be preceded by the transcriber's note indicator starting in cell 7, followed by the illustration label or the appropriate word (i.e., *Picture, Map, Diagram*) and a colon. The description or explanation must follow on the same braille line with runovers in cell 5. The description or explanation should be as brief as possible using the vocabulary appropriate to the grade level and subject matter of the text. Unless required by other braille formats, no blank line should be left before or after a description or between a series of descriptions.

Example 5-1: Sources of Pollution

Water and People

People are part of the water cycle. We take fresh water from rivers, lakes, and underground. We use it for drinking, cooking, washing, farming, manufacturing, and other activities. All of these activities add substances to the water. Many of these substances are pollutants that can harm living things. Run-off in watersheds can carry pollutants into water systems. Study Figure 5.86. It shows how different human activities can affect water quality.

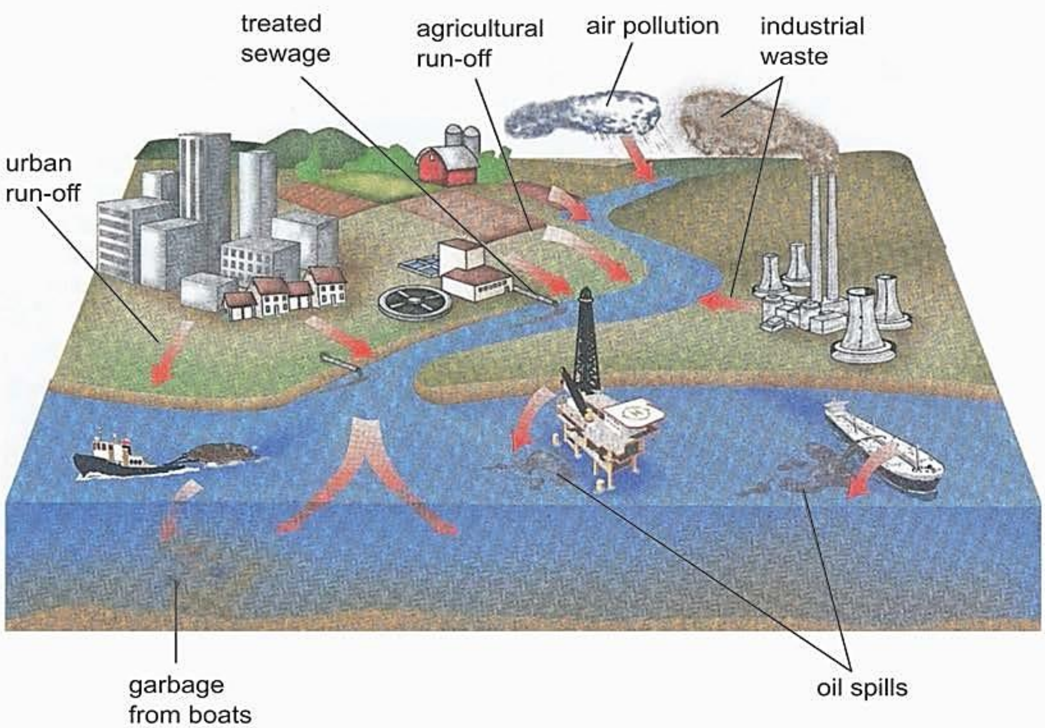


Figure 5.86 Sources of pollution in water systems

Transcriber's Note:

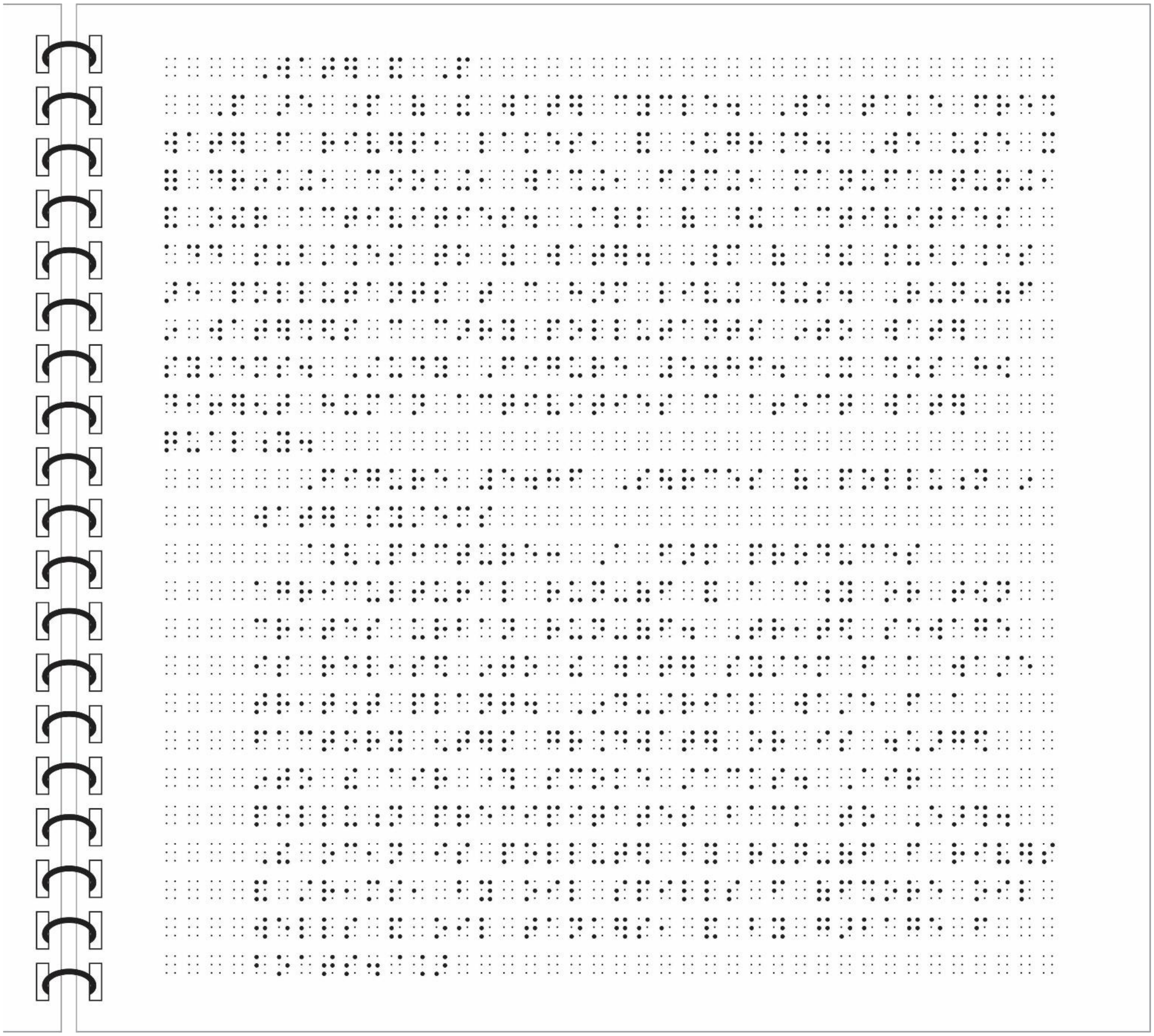
Picture: A farm produces agricultural run-off and a city or town creates urban run-off. Treated sewage is released into the water system from a waste treatment plant. Industrial waste from a factory enters groundwater or is discharged into the air through smoke stacks. Air pollution precipitates back to Earth. The ocean is polluted by run-off from rivers and streams, by oil spills from offshore oil wells and oil tankers, and by garbage from boats.

Example 5-1 UEB: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- UEB code
- use of a transcriber's note for the description instead of a tactile graphic (1.4, 5.4.1)
- use of the label "Picture:" with the transcriber's note (5.4.1)
- placement of the figure caption in relation to the transcriber's note (5.5)
- use of the present tense in the transcriber's note, no interpretation, and wording from the surrounding text (5.6.5)

Example 5-1 UEB: Sources of Pollution



5.4.2 **Omission of Illustrations**. When illustrations are unrelated to the text or when sufficient information in the illustration is given in its caption or in the narrative body of the text, the illustration should be omitted and not described.

A note should be included on the Transcriber's Notes page stating that diagrams have been omitted. If the illustrations are numbered and an occasional one is omitted, a transcriber's note should be inserted at the site of omission. (See Example 5-2: *Patterns*.)

5.5 Illustration Captions

An illustration caption consists of any statement that is shown accompanying an illustration or its title. A caption must be preceded on the same braille line by the illustration title. If no label is shown, insert the appropriate identification (i.e., *Picture, Map, Diagram*) beginning in cell 7 with runovers in cell 5.

This transcriber-assigned label must be enclosed in transcriber's note indicators. Special typeface must be ignored except when required for emphasis or distinction. Do not leave a blank line before or after a caption or between captions in a series unless required by other braille format rules (i.e., after a centered heading). When a description or explanation is needed in addition to the print caption, it must be inserted as a transcriber's note and placed after the caption. (See Example 3-7: *U.S.A.*; Example 5-1: *Sources of Pollution*.)

5.6 Transcriber's Note: Content and Format

5.6.1 The transcriber's note contains any general explanation written by the transcriber about the illustration and is presented before the key. A key listing may be part of the transcriber's note. The transcriber's note may include any of the following:

5.6.1.1 General facts, Example: The following diagram shows ...

5.6.1.2 Changes, Example: This map is shown in three parts ...

5.6.1.3 Omissions, Example: Rivers are not shown.

5.6.2 The explanation is written in paragraph form as a standard transcriber's note and is started in braille cell 7 with the opening transcriber's note indicator. Runover lines begin in cell 5 and end with the closing transcriber's note indicator. If a transcriber's note accompanying a tactile graphic consists of seven words or less, it is enclosed in transcriber's note indicators and included within the text.

5.6.3 Transcriber's note indicators must never be placed within Nemeth switch indicators. If it is necessary to include Nemeth notation in a transcriber's note, the opening Nemeth Code indicator and Nemeth Code terminator must be transcribed within the UEB opening and closing transcriber's note indicators. (See Example 6-17 Nemeth: *Angles on Survey Map*.)

5.6.4 Occasionally, information contained in a note or notes is essential for understanding the graphic before reading it. In this case, insert a transcriber's note before the graphic. Sample transcriber's note.

Note(s) shown in the graphic below.

The note should be preceded by the appropriate reference indicator starting in cell 7 with runovers in cell 5. When more than one note is shown, no blank lines should be left between the notes.

5.6.5 Transcriber's notes should be as short and concise as possible without sacrificing important information. They must be written in the present tense and must be written in the grade level vocabulary being used in the text and describe—not interpret—the information in the drawing.

5.7 Keys and Legends: Content and Format

5.7.1 The key listing should be presented in the following order:

- area textures
- line textures
- point symbols
- alphabetic key
- numeric key

5.7.2 The texture, symbol, or key used in the graphic must be an exact match to that used in the key listing.

5.7.3 The explanation for the area textures, line textures, and/or point symbols does not need to be in alphabetical order. Follow a logical order within each area, line, and point grouping (most significant to least significant). (See Example 6-11 and Supplement Example 12: *Line Graph*.)

For diagrams with a "random" order of labels, the keyed abbreviations are to be presented in alphabetical order on the key listing. (See Example 3-4: *Circulatory System*.)

For diagrams with a "logical" order of labels, the keyed abbreviations are to be presented in the same order as they are shown on the diagram (from left to right, top to bottom, or clockwise starting at the top). (See Supplement Example 35: *Neighborhood Map*.)

Numbered keys should be placed in numeric order.

5.7.4 All the explanations should follow print capitalization. For example, if EUROPE is all in upper case in print, it would then be fully capitalized in the braille explanation.

5.7.5 If the original print illustration has a legend or key, these symbols should be integrated with those created by the transcriber and placed in the key within transcriber's note indicators. When print uses the word "Legend," it should be replaced with the word "Key" in braille. (See Example 3-6: *Southwest Asia*.)

When a passage is teaching the concept of reading maps, a transcriber's note must be inserted to explain the use of the word "key" rather than "legend." If this replacement is made throughout the volume or throughout an entire transcription, it should be explained on the Transcriber's Notes page. Sample transcriber's note.

In braille, the word "key" replaces the print word "legend."

5.8 Alphabetic and Numeric Keys

When space does not permit the inclusion of labels in a tactile graphic, a key is assigned to represent information in a print diagram. The choice of key symbol should relate logically to the print diagram and should be suggestive of the item that it represents.

5.8.1 Keying Techniques for Transcribing Literary Material

5.8.1.1 Any combination of letters or letters and braille contractions requiring a minimum of two braille cells but no more than three braille cells may be used. Use of 2-cell keys is preferred. It is recommended that the first letter of the key symbol be the first letter or contraction of the item that it represents.

5.8.1.2 One of the letters in each key entry must include dot 3 and/or dot 6 in the braille configuration. The only exception is the use of International Organization for Standardization (ISO) abbreviations for North America and the World. (See Appendix C: Standard Key for Maps.)

The use of aa, ac, cc, and ca as a two-cell alphabetic key should be avoided because the dot configuration uses only the top third of the braille cell and makes it difficult to recognize them as braille characters as opposed to part of a texture symbol.

5.8.1.3 Single-letter keys are not recommended, but if used, they must be followed by a period. Do not use the grade 1 symbol indicator before a two-cell alphabetic key, even when the letter combination corresponds to a braille shortform.

5.8.1.4 Single-cell braille contractions should be used when they occur in the word that is being keyed.

Example: Rather than “fm” for Fort McMurray, use “form.”

5.8.1.5 Shortforms consisting of two or three braille cells may be used in a key. The only two-cell shortforms that may be used are: al, bl, fr, hm xs, xf, lr, ll, pd, qk, sd, td, tm, tn, wd, and yr. Three-cell shortforms that may be used are: abv, acr, afn afw, alm, alr, alt, alw, brl, dcv, dcl, hmf, imm, myf, nec, nei, rcv, rjc, tgr, and yrf.

5.8.1.6 In a numeric key, the numeric indicator must precede each number and is brailled without a period.

5.8.2 **Keying Techniques when Transcribing Using the Nemeth Braille Code for Mathematics and Science Notation, 2022 (and current updates).**

5.8.2.1 An alphabetic key must consist of two or three lower-case English letters. One of the letters in each key entry must include dot 3 and/or dot 6 in the braille configuration. The only exception is the use of International Organization for Standardization (ISO) abbreviations for North America and the World. (See Appendix C: Standard Key Maps.)

5.8.2.2 Contractions cannot be used in Nemeth keys.

5.8.2.3 Two- or three-cell letter combinations, which would normally be considered shortforms, can be used in keys transcribed within Nemeth code switching indicators.

5.8.2.4 A numeric key should consist of a numeral written in the upper part of the braille cell (literary number). This numeral must be preceded by the numeric indicator and must not be punctuated.

5.8.2.5 Two items that are identical should have the same key assigned to them.

5.8.3 **Placement of Keys, Both Literary and Nemeth**

Insert a key as a transcriber's note below the graphic title. (See Example 3-6: *Southwest Asia*.) When a title is not shown, place the transcriber's note key before the body of the graphic unless the key is continued on more than one page.

5.8.3.1 A blank line must be left before a key that follows a centered graphic title. No blank line should be left before a key following a top box line. Leave a blank line after completion of the key before the beginning of the graphic or diagram.

5.8.3.2 Whenever possible, the key must appear on the same braille page with the graphic. If this is not possible, insert the key on the page immediately preceding the illustration. These keys must be displayed as left-hand pages (i.e., facing pages) whether or not interpoint braille is being used.

EXCEPTION: If one part of a tactile graphic requires more than one page for a key, the graphic should be placed on the left-hand page and the key on the following right-hand pages. All of the graphic and key pages for one print graphic should then follow this format. All the key pages should appear on right-hand page(s) even though there may be some parts with only one key page. Insert the heading on the graphic. Do not add the heading on any continued key pages. (See Example 3-6: *Southwest Asia*.)

5.8.3.3 If a graphic is preceded by a reference note and a key or by a transcriber's note containing a key plus additional information, the key must always be the last item presented before the graphic.

EXCEPTION: If one part of a tactile graphic requires more than one page for a key, the graphic should be placed on the left-hand page and the key on the following right-hand pages. All of the graphic and key pages for one print graphic should then follow this format. All the key pages should appear on right-hand page(s) even though there may be some parts with only one key page. Insert the heading on the graphic. Do not add the heading on any continued key pages. (See Example 3-6: *Southwest Asia*.)

5.8.4 **Key Listing**

Items in the key must be listed in the following order: texture symbols, letter key symbols, and number key symbols in numerical order.

5.8.4.1 The word "Key:" preceded by a transcriber's note indicator in cell 7 should begin the presentation of keyed information. If the key is a continuation of a transcriber's note, the opening transcriber's note indicator does not have to be repeated.

A blank line should be left between "Key:" and the key symbol list unless this would cause the key page information to be spread over additional braille pages.

EXCEPTION: If one part of a tactile graphic requires more than one page for a key, the graphic should be placed on the left-hand page and the key on the following right-hand pages. All of the graphic and key pages for one print graphic should then follow this format. All the key pages should appear on right-hand page(s) even though there may be some parts with only one key page. Insert the heading on the graphic. Do not add the heading on any continued key pages. (See Example 3-6: *Southwest Asia*.)

5.8.4.2 The entire key is enclosed in transcriber’s note indicators because the information is an interpretation of what is presented in the print legend and graphic.

5.8.4.3 Texture symbols used to represent areas and lines start in cell 1; the explanation starts in cell 6 with runovers in cell 8. Point symbols are to be centered within the first four cells of the line. The explanation should begin in cell 6 and runovers in cell 8.

5.8.4.4 The top edge of the area texture symbol and the top of the point symbol will align with the top edge of the braille cell in the explanation (dots 14). The line texture symbol will align with dots 25 of the explanation.

5.8.4.5 Letter and number key symbols start in cell 1 and are followed by one blank cell. The explanation starts one cell to the right of the blank cell with all runovers in cell 3. (Explanations for 2-cell symbols begin in cell 4, and explanations for 3-cell symbols begin in cell 5 with both types having their runovers starting in cell 3.)

5.8.4.6 The closing transcriber’s note indicator must be placed after the last item in the key listing. (See Example 3-6: *Southwest Asia*.)

5.8.4.7 No blank line is required between different types of symbols unless the symbol takes up more vertical space than one braille line. A blank line must precede and follow the complete list of symbols in the key. (See Supplement Example 25a: *Gastrointestinal Tract;* Supplement Example 25b: *Gastrointestinal Tract*.)

5.8.4.8 If a group of keyed items has a heading (i.e., Countries, Percentages), the heading should be placed in cell 5 or cell 7 with runovers in the same cell in which the heading started. These minor headings must be preceded by a blank line. No blank line follows the minor headings. (See Example 3-6: *Southwest Asia*.)

5.8.4.9 In an effort to conserve space and make the key fit on the same page as the diagram, it is acceptable to make two columns of information for the key listing. If this approach is used, "Key:" should be changed to "Key in 2 columns" followed by a colon. If the information is being presented in alphabetical order and in two columns, the alphabetical order should read down the first column and continue to the top of the second column.

5.8.4.10 In an effort to avoid additional key pages (which would require switching the key listing to follow the graphic), it is permissible to use the two-column key format.

5.8.5 Keys for complex graphics that are presented in multiple parts require additional keying techniques. (See Unit 7, Complex Diagrams.)

5.9 Symbol Placement and Measurements in Keys

5.9.1 **Area** (See Appendix E: Texture Palette for Microcapsule Paper; Appendix H: Texture Palette for Tiger Embossing.)

5.9.1.1 All area texture symbols in a key should begin in braille cell 1 and end in cell 4. Texture symbols should be 1 inch (2.5 centimeters) long from left to right. (See Example 6-10 and Supplement Example 10: *Shaded Cartesian Graph*.)

5.9.1.2 All area texture/pattern symbols in a key should be 1/2 inch (1.25 centimeters) from top to bottom. Note: The size of the area texture symbol requires two braille lines.

5.9.1.3 Area texture symbols in a key must match those that appear on the tactile graphic.

5.9.2 **Line** (See Appendix F: Line Styles for Microcapsule; Appendix I: Line Styles for Tiger Embossing.)

Line symbols in a key must be 1 inch (2.5 centimeters) in length and match the texture on the tactile graphic. (See Example 6-11 and Supplement Example 12: *Line Graph*.)

5.9.3 **Point**

5.9.3.1 Point symbols in a key should be centered between braille cells 1 and 4 and align with the top edge of the braille cell (dots 14) in the explanation.

5.9.3.2 Point symbols in a key should be a minimum of 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) in width or diameter. (See Example 3-6: *Southwest Asia*.)

5.9.3.3 Point symbols in a key must match those that appear on the tactile graphic.

5.10 Label Placement

5.10.1 Labels should be placed horizontally on the tactile graphic master. Stick-on braille labels should not be used on masters created for vacuum-form reproduction because the heat during the vacuum-form process causes the labels to fall off the master graphic. Plastic labeling products should not be used for masters that will be vacuum formed because the labels will melt. Paper labels glued on the master should be avoided because a box will appear around the label when vacuum formed. The resulting box interferes with interpretation and is tactually confusing.

There can be variations in placement of labels in orientation and mobility maps. (See Unit 8, Orientation and Mobility, §8.5.10.)

5.10.2 Hierarchy of Labeling Styles

5.10.2.1 Whenever possible, labels for large areas or sections should be spelled out in full within the area.

5.10.2.2 A combination of spelled-out words and alphabetic key symbols may be used.

5.10.2.3 Lead lines may be used to connect labels to small areas, lines, or point symbols.

5.10.2.4 If necessary, an area, line, or point can be keyed and the explanation of the area included in the key.

5.10.2.5 Certain circumstances may require a combination of the methods above. (See Example 3-7: *U.S.A.*)

5.10.3 Capitalization of labels on the graphic should, in general, follow print; exceptions may be made where space is limited.

5.10.4 A grade 1 symbol indicator is not required with a single capital letter that is used as a label on a tactile graphic. A grade 1 symbol indicator is required with an uncapitalized letter (including a, i, and o).

Example: On a tactile graphic, the grade 1 symbol indicator should not be used with N for north on a compass. (See Unit 7, Complex Diagrams, §7.6.3.5.)

5.10.5 Label placement needs to be at least 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) and no more than 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) from the component to which it belongs.

5.10.6 A label for a measurement line should be placed beside the line, leaving the line unbroken.

5.10.7 When a label needs to be split between two braille lines, the runover should be left justified, not indented. (See Example 3-3 and Supplement Example 30: *Australia: Average Annual Rainfall*.)

5.11 Running Heads

5.11.1 If the agency requires use of the book title as a running head, this running head must appear on the first line of every tactile graphic page and key page.

5.11.2 The running head is capitalized as shown in print and centered on line one, leaving at least three blank cells at both the beginning of the line and before the print page number.

5.11.3 The running head must not occupy more than one braille line, and it must be the same on all pages. When a book title must be shortened to serve as a running head, follow the steps below in the order in which they are given.

5.11.3.1 Capitalize only the initial letter of each word in the title.

5.11.3.2 Capitalize only the initial letter of the first word and principal words in the title.

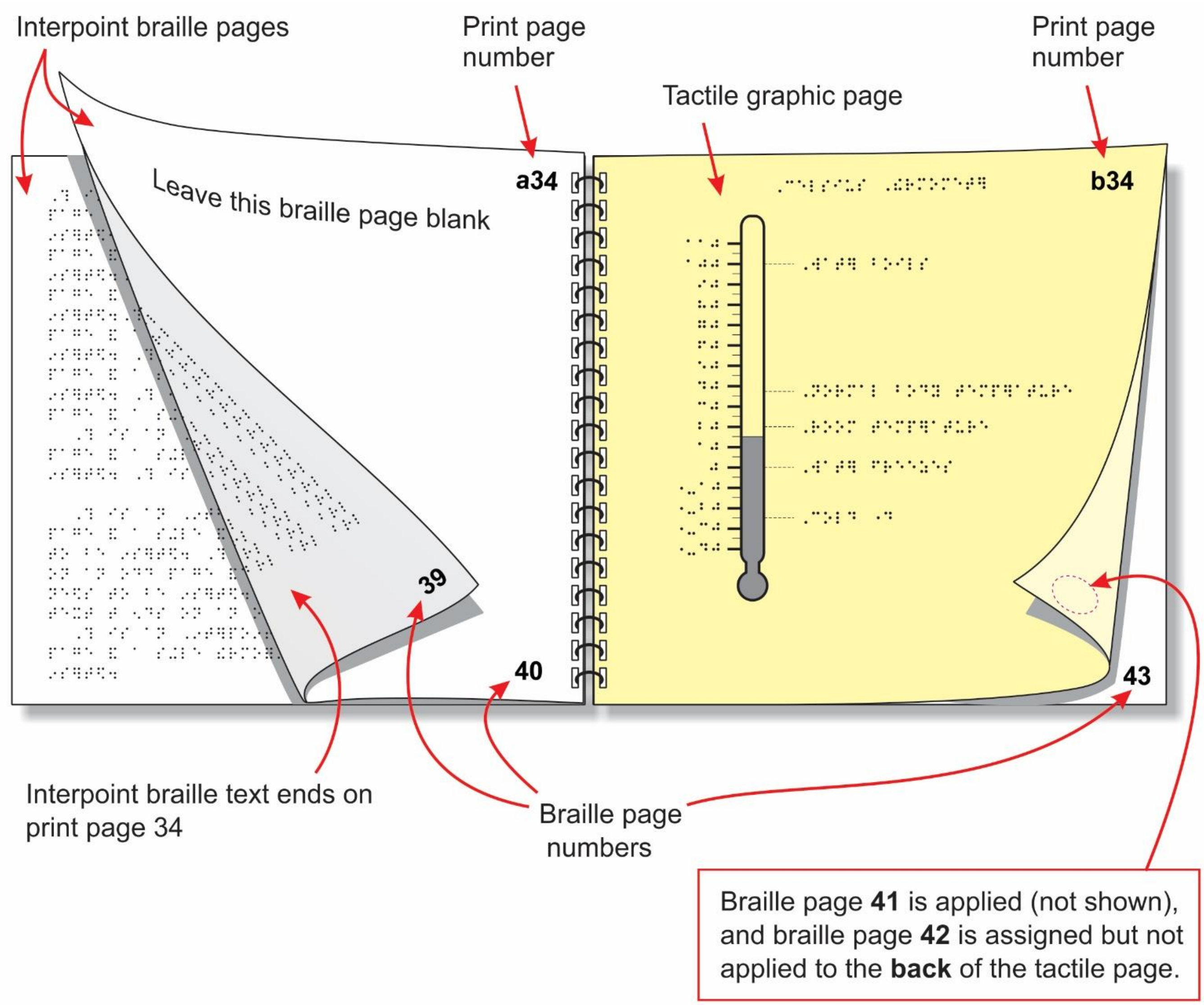
5.11.3.3 Omit minor words and/or abbreviate longer words in the title.

5.12 Page Numbering

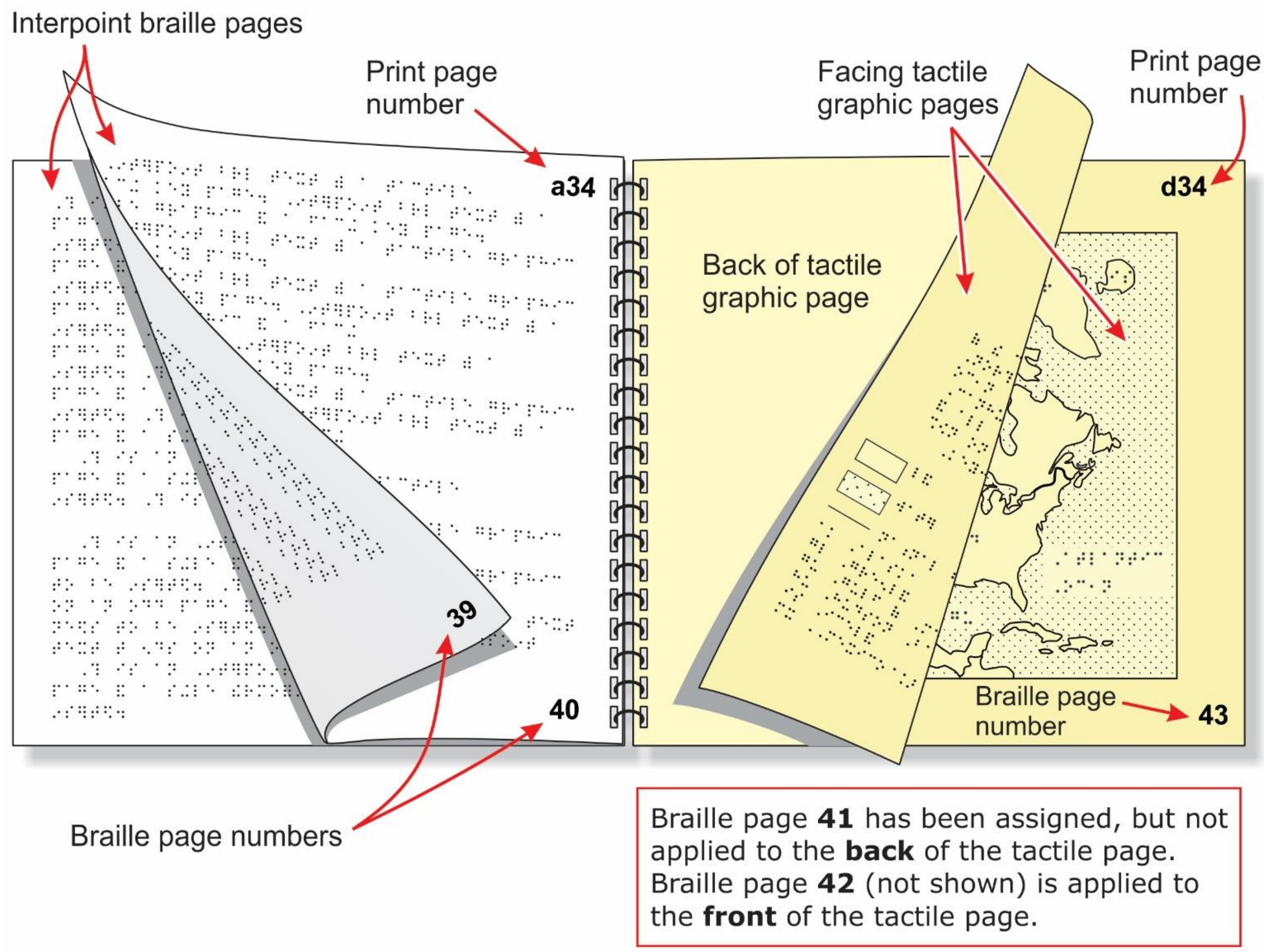
5.12.1 Double-Sided (Interpoint) Braille

Page numbers should be assigned to every braille page. Some of the pages may need to be left blank to accommodate graphics and/or keys. Do not apply the assigned page number to the back of the vacuum form, microcapsule, or other tactile graphic pages.

An interpoint braille volume with a single tactile graphic page inserted:



An interpoint braille volume with a tactile graphic and a facing key page inserted:



5.12.2 If a tactile graphic contains only one page for a key, the key should be placed on a left-hand (facing) page, and the graphic should be placed on the following right-hand page. (See Example 3-4: *Circulatory System*.)

5.12.3 If one part of a tactile graphic requires more than one page for a key, the graphic should be placed on the left-hand page and the key on the following right-hand pages. All of the graphic and key pages for one print graphic should then follow this format. All of the key pages should appear on right-hand page(s), even though there may be some parts with only one key page. Insert the heading on the graphic. (See Example 3-6: *Southwest Asia*.)

5.12.4 **Single-Sided Multiple-Key Pages**. The keys should be placed on the pages following the graphic. The print and braille page numbers for the key pages will be in ascending order.

A single-sided braille volume with a tactile graphic and two or more key pages inserted:

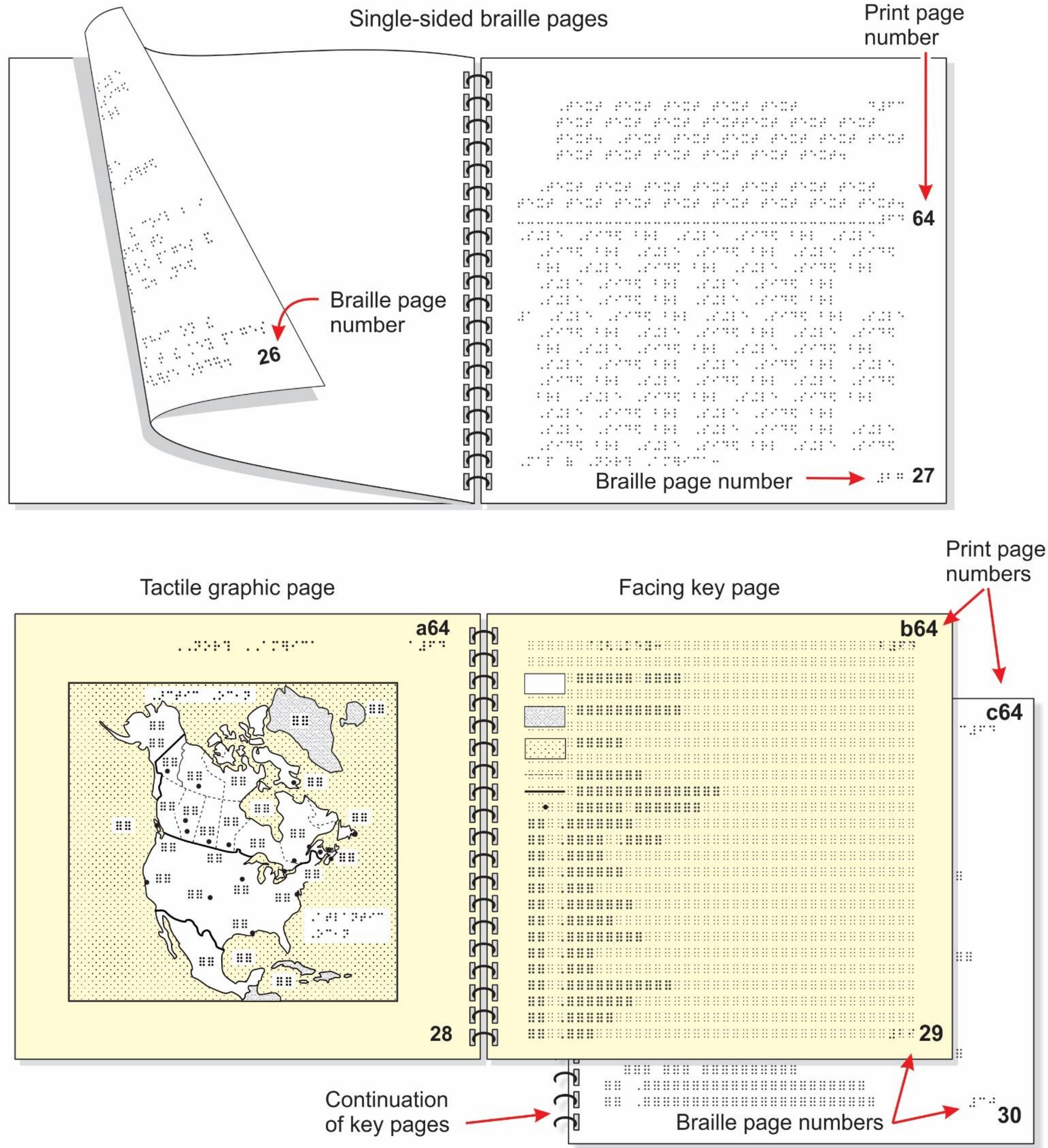


Figure 15-3 ▲

The 27 European Union member countries.

3 Directorate-General for Justice, Freedom and
"Abolition of Internal Borders and Creation

This complex print graphic may be represented by the figure number and caption, a heading, a transcriber's note, part 1 graphic, a key, part 2 graphic, and a key incorporating the print legend. The caption explains what the map is showing, but because the elements require more than one braille page, a transcriber-assigned heading should be added.

If one part of a tactile graphic requires more than one key page with the graphic on the left-hand page and the key on the following right-hand pages, then all of the graphic and key pages should follow this format. All of the key pages should appear on right-hand page(s) even though there may be some parts with only one key page.

- The figure number and caption should be brailled in cell 7 with runovers in cell 5, following regular text.
- A transcriber-assigned heading is then inserted with applicable blank lines. A transcriber's note explaining how the map is formatted and any necessary descriptions should follow, starting in

cell 7 with runovers in cell 5. Sample transcriber's note.

European Union

The following graphic is shown in two parts. The first part shows the countries, and the second part shows the membership. Each part is followed by its related key.

- The graphic for the first part should be placed on a left-hand page. The heading, along with an explanation of the part being shown, should be placed on line 1 if no running head is used or on line 2 if a running head is used. Sample transcriber's note.

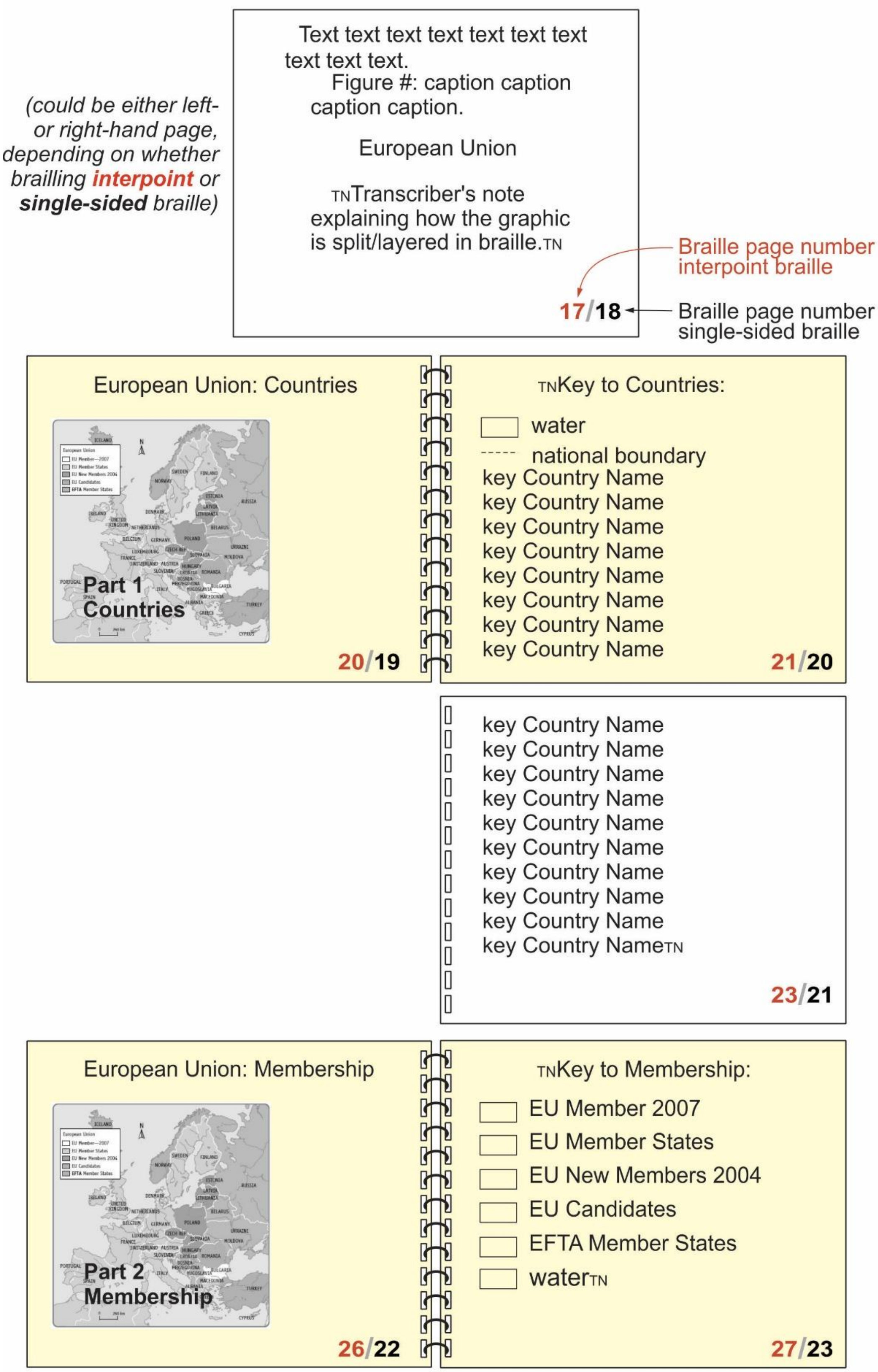
European Union: Countries

- On the right-hand page, place the word "Key:" in cell 7. Insert a blank line and list the key items.
- Additional key pages pertaining to part 1 should be placed on the right-hand page(s). Key items continue on line 1 if no running head is used or on line 2 if a running head is used.
- The graphic for the second part should be placed on a left-hand page. An explanation of the part being shown should be placed on line 1 if no running head is used or on line 2 if a running head is used. Sample transcriber's note.

European Union: Membership

- On the right-hand page, place the word "Key:" in cell 7. Insert a blank line and list the key items.

(See §5.12.3 for page numbering of tactile graphics with multiple parts and key pages.)



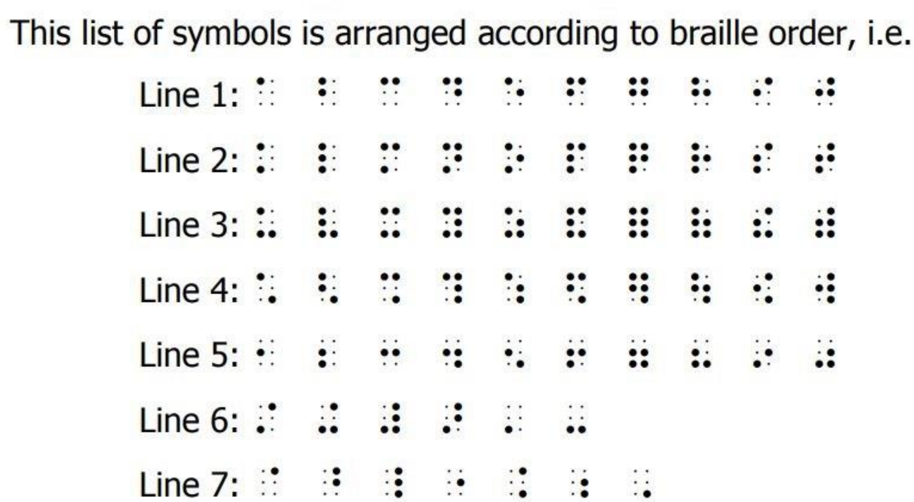
5.13 Special Symbols Page

5.13.1 A special symbols page must include a list of braille items that may not be familiar to the reader.

5.13.2 Format of Special Symbols Page

5.13.2.1 The list must be placed on a new braille page with the centered heading *SPECIAL SYMBOLS USED IN THIS VOLUME* starting on the first line (or on the third line if a running head is used). This heading must be followed by a blank line.

5.13.2.2 General symbols should be listed in braille dot order. Symbols that fall into identifiable categories (e.g., number line symbols) are listed next. The heading for each category must be brailled with initial capitals and placed as a cell-5 heading above the list of symbols.



5.13.2.3 Each listed symbol (preceded by the dot locator for mention) must begin in cell 1 and be followed, after one blank cell, by its identification as directed below.

- The meaning or function of a symbol's print equivalent must be given as it is explained in the print text. When the text does not explain a symbol's print equivalent, give the name, function, or a brief description of the print sign.
- Braille symbols with no print equivalents, such as the

termination indicator, must be identified by name.
- UEB number line symbols are interspersed within the overall special symbols listing. Nemeth number line symbols are listed in braille order in a separate category following the UEB listing.

5.13.2.4 All runovers of items in the special symbols list must start in cell 3.

5.14 Graphic Symbols Page

5.14.1 Area, line, or point symbols that are consistently or repeatedly used on diagrams should be placed on the Graphic Symbols page following the Special Symbols page. This will reduce the need to redo keys that appear repeatedly throughout the volume.

Example: Land and water for a series of maps or supply and demand curves in an economics book

5.14.2 Alphabetic key symbols, such as ISO abbreviations for countries in a geography or history book, should also be placed on this page. This will reduce the need to repeat those items in keys. (See Appendix C: Standard Key for Maps.)

5.14.3 **Format of Graphic Symbols Page**

5.14.3.1 A note should be placed on the Transcriber's Notes pages that explains the use of the Graphic Symbols page. Sample transcriber's note.

> Graphic symbols that are used throughout this volume are shown on the Graphic Symbols page, braille page t__.

5.14.3.2 The list of graphic symbols must be placed on a new braille page with the centered heading GRAPHIC SYMBOLS USED IN THIS VOLUME in the same manner as the Special Symbols page. (See Unit 9, Tactile Graphics Supplements.)

5.14.4 Assure the following when considering what should or can be included on the Graphic Symbols page:

5.14.4.1 The area, line, point, or alphabetic key symbols appear frequently enough to warrant placement on the Graphic Symbols page. Symbols that occur in only one or two diagrams or that reoccur infrequently should be placed in the key pages preceding the diagram to which they refer.

5.14.4.2 The area, line, point, or alphabetic key symbols are not used for any other feature in that volume. It is recommended that during the planning and formatting, when all the diagrams are examined, the most commonly occurring features be earmarked for inclusion in the Graphic Symbols page.

5.14.4.3 The area, line, or point symbols that are consistently used throughout the transcription are placed on the Graphic Symbols page.

Example: North arrows, measurement lines, directional (flow) arrows, land and water textures

5.14.4.4 The alphabetic key symbols that are consistently and repeatedly used throughout the transcription are placed on the Graphic Symbols page.

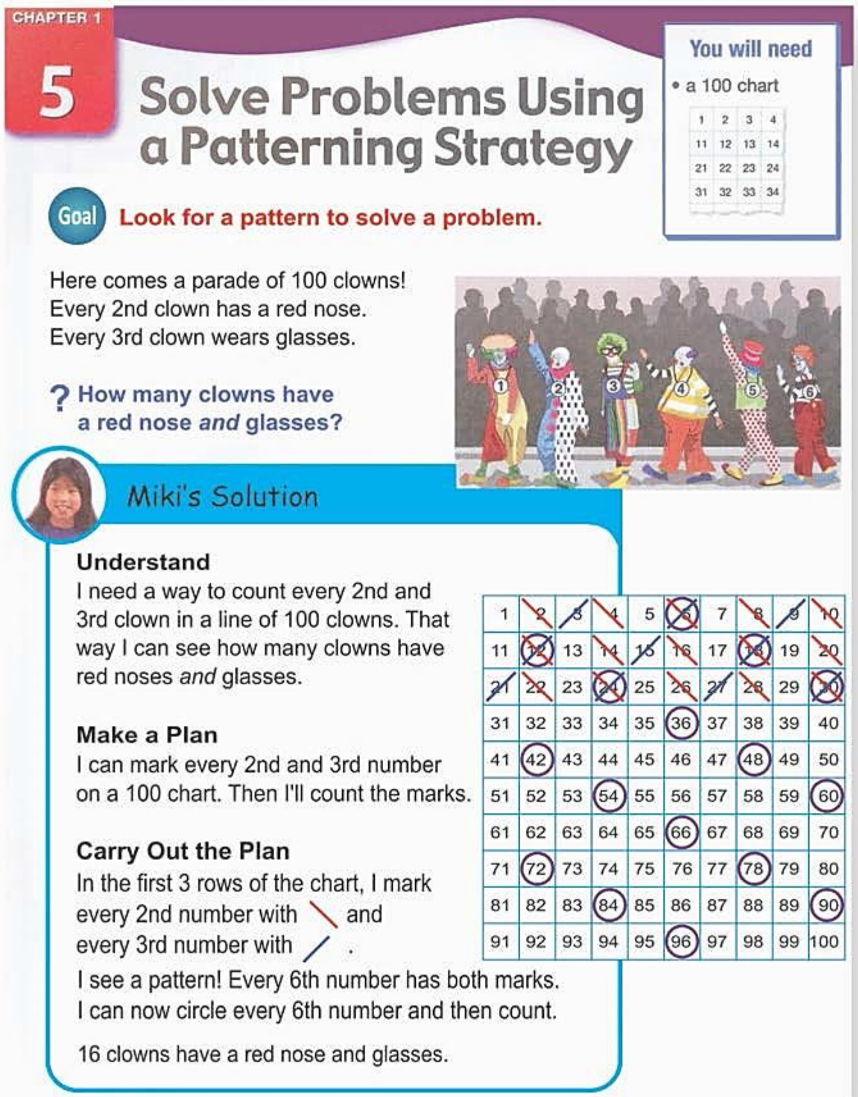
Example: If placed on the Graphic Symbols page, “af” (for Afghanistan in the ISO abbreviations) could not be used for the continent of Africa on any other tactile graphic.

5.14.5 When symbols fall under identifiable categories, the heading for each category must be brailled with initial capitals and placed as a cell-5 heading above the symbols it identifies.

5.14.6 The textures used to represent areas and lines start in cell 1, and the explanation starts in cell 6 with runovers in cell 8. Point symbols are to be centered within the first four cells of the line, and the explanation should begin in cell 6 with runovers in cell 8.

This page is intentionally blank.

Example 5-2: Patterns



CHAPTER 1

5 Solve Problems Using a Patterning Strategy

You will need

- a 100 chart

Goal Look for a pattern to solve a problem.

Here comes a parade of 100 clowns!
Every 2nd clown has a red nose.
Every 3rd clown wears glasses.

? **How many clowns have a red nose *and* glasses?**

Miki's Solution

Understand

I need a way to count every 2nd and 3rd clown in a line of 100 clowns. That way I can see how many clowns have red noses *and* glasses.

Make a Plan

I can mark every 2nd and 3rd number on a 100 chart. Then I'll count the marks.

Carry Out the Plan

In the first 3 rows of the chart, I mark every 2nd number with \ and every 3rd number with / .

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49	50
51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59	60
61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69	70
71	72	73	74	75	76	77	78	79	80
81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89	90
91	92	93	94	95	96	97	98	99	100

I see a pattern! Every 6th number has both marks.
I can now circle every 6th number and then count.

16 clowns have a red nose and glasses.

Transcriber's Note:

In print, a chart shows 10 columns and 10 rows. It is numbered from left to right, starting at the top left corner with 1 and ending at the bottom right corner with 100.

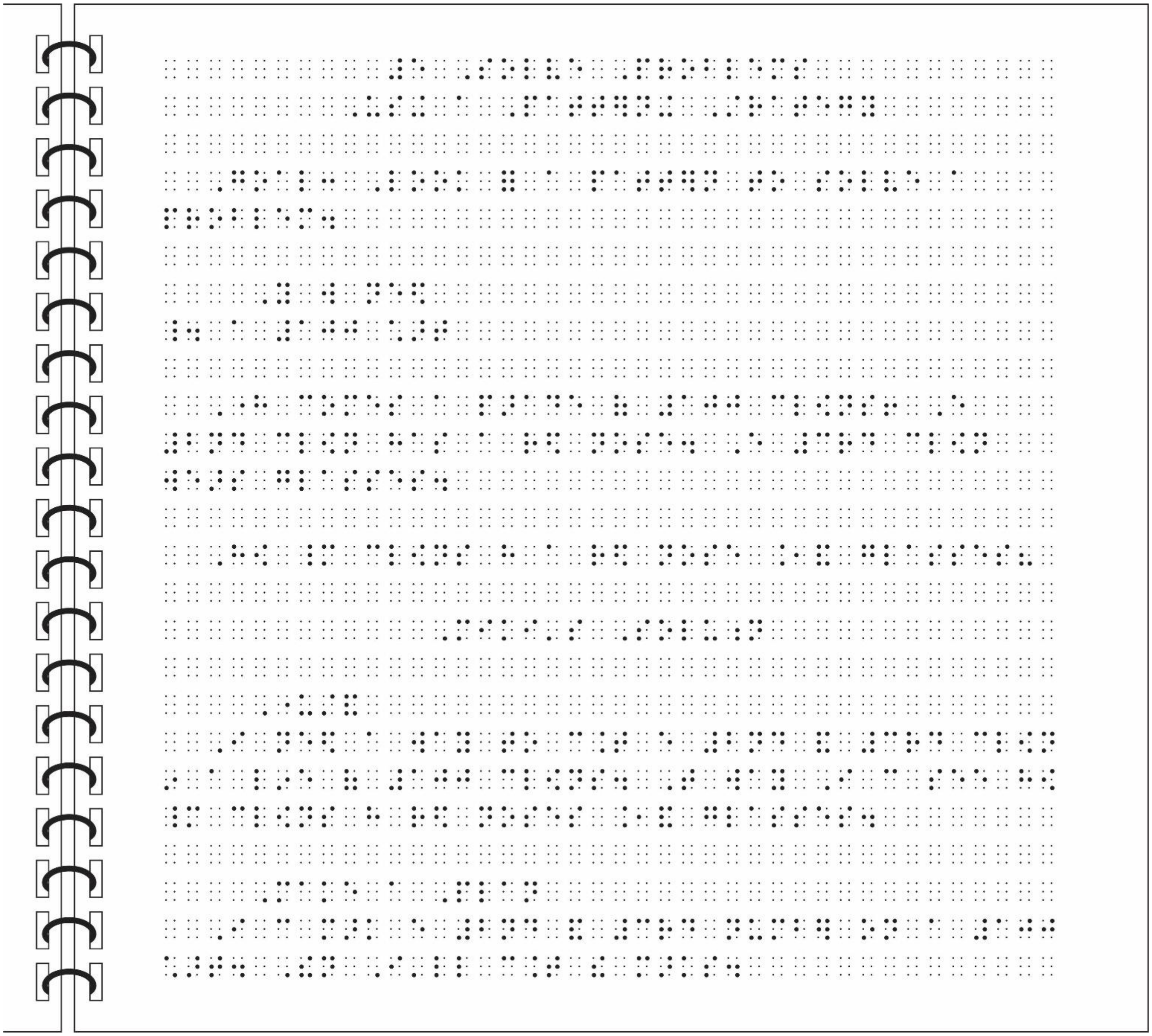
In braille, the numbers are omitted and only the system of marking is shown.

Example 5-2 UEB: Tactile Graphic Design Points

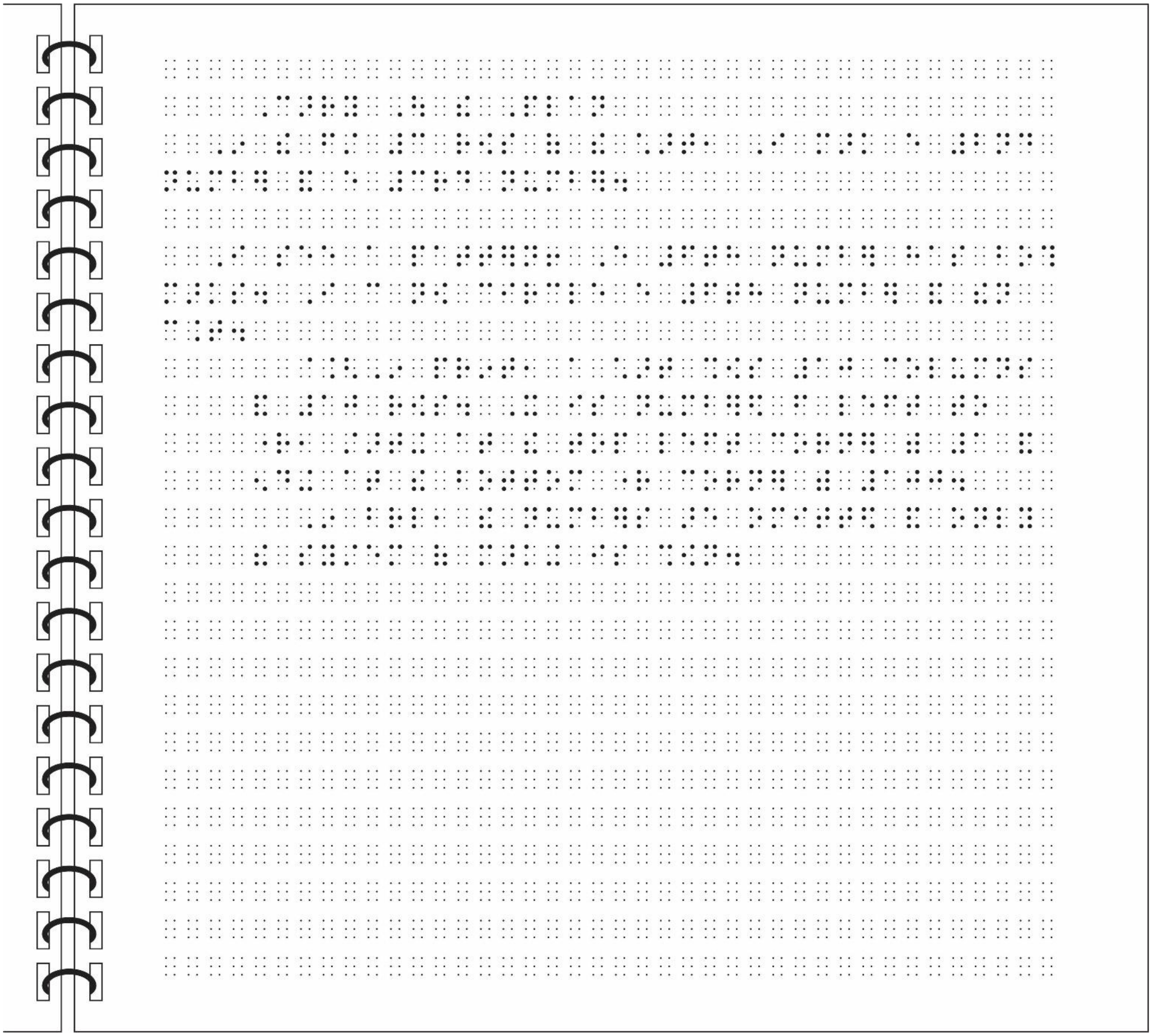
The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- UEB code
- simplification of the hundreds chart (3.6)
- description of clowns within the surrounding text; therefore, description in the transcriber's note necessary (5.4.2)
- description of the print hundreds chart in the transcriber's note: number of columns and rows, numbering system (5.6.1)
- omission of numbers within the hundreds chart explained in the transcriber's note (5.6.1.3)
- use of point symbols in the key listing to represent different features in the chart (red nose, glasses, every 6th number) (5.8.4.3, 5.8.4.4, 5.9.3)
- placement of the transcriber's note indicator before the transcriber's note starts and after the last symbol in the key (5.8.4.1)

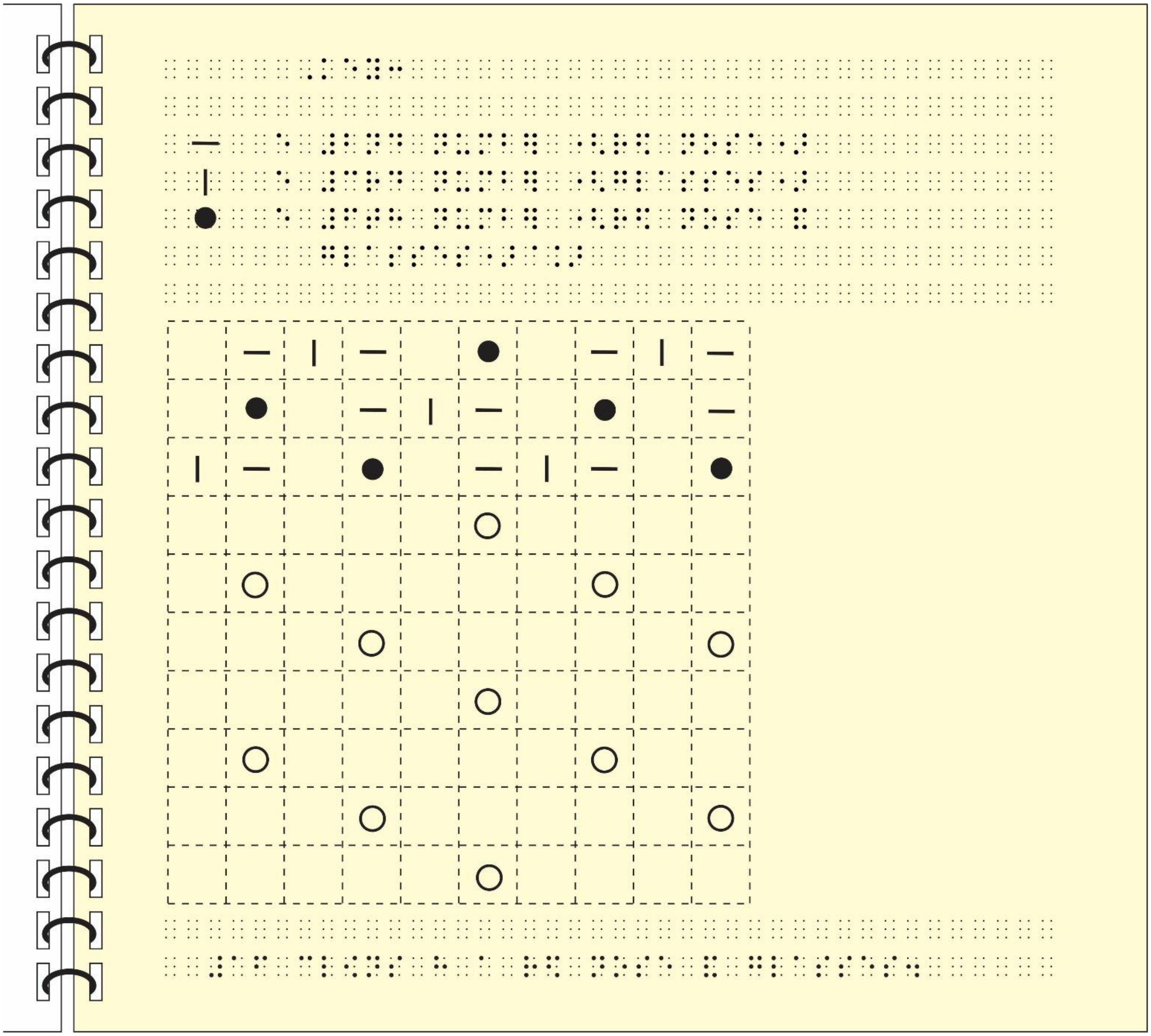
Example 5-2 UEB: Patterns



Example 5-2 UEB: Patterns (cont.)



Example 5-2 UEB: Patterns (cont.)



This page is intentionally blank.

Unit 6
Diagrams for Technical Material

When transcribing technical content (e.g., mathematics, statistics, physics, or chemistry), all text and graphics should be transcribed according to the codes applicable from the list below:

- *The Rules of Unified English Braille, Second Edition 2013*
- *Unified English Braille Guidelines for Technical Material, 2008 version updated August 2014*
- *The Nemeth Braille Code for Mathematics and Science Notation, 2022*
- *Chemistry Notation Using the Nemeth Braille Code, 2022*
- and all relevant updates

> **Note:** In **Unit 6**, if a difference in transcription method exists between the preparation of a tactile graphic in UEB and the preparation of a tactile graphic in Nemeth within UEB contexts, the guidelines for preparing the UEB graphic is presented first, followed by the Nemeth example.

For text transcribed in UEB

Tactile graphics included in texts transcribed in UEB should have all technical material, including chemical notation, transcribed according to the rules in *Unified English Braille, Second Edition 2013* and *Guidelines for Technical Material, 2008 version updated August 2014* and the latest updates.

Do not include the numeric passage indicator or numeric passage terminator when transcribing tactile graphics. A note must be included on the Transcriber’s Note page alerting the reader of the omission. The "Use and Omission of Numeric Indicator" chart on page 3 explains when numeric indicators should be used.

For text transcribed in Nemeth within UEB contexts

When transcribing mathematical and scientific tactile graphics, the actual math and technical notation is presented in Nemeth Code or the Nemeth-based Chemistry Code, as applicable, while the surrounding text is presented in UEB.

When no technical notation is present on the tactile graphic (e.g., only unmodified numbers and/or letters as defined in the Nemeth Code), the tactile graphic should be prepared in UEB.

> **Note:** UEB symbols are not used within the switch indicators for Nemeth Code. No contractions are to be used in Nemeth Code.

For all text transcriptions

In general, regardless of the braille code used, the numeric indicator should be omitted when depicting measuring tools, number lines, and multiple-quadrant Cartesian graphs. Situations may occur that will necessitate the use of numeric indicators. These exceptions will be explained throughout the unit.

The following chart shows information about the inclusion or omission of the numeric indicator. In these instances, it is not necessary to include a transcriber's note regarding the omission of the numeric indicator.

Use and Omission of Numeric Indicator

	Use Numeric Indicator (⠼)	
Barometers		No
Circle Graphs (Pie Charts)	Yes	
Clocks		No
Graphs		
Cartesian (with Single Quadrant)	Yes	
Bar Graphs	Yes	
Histograms	Yes	
Line Graphs	Yes	
Scatter Plots	Yes	
Cartesian (with Multiple Quadrants)		No
Longitude/Latitude Lines	Yes	
Number Lines		No
Pictographs	Yes	
Protractors		No
Rulers		No
Spinners	Yes	
Thermometers		No
Time Lines	Yes	

Use the numeric indicator for graphics that are not specified in the chart above. If it is deemed necessary to omit the numeric indicator (for example, due to space constraints), the omission must be explained in a transcriber’s note prior to the graphic or on the Transcriber's Notes page.

The grade 1 indicator (56) is required when a single lowercase English letter in regular type (including a, i, and o) is used as a label on a tactile graphic. The grade 1 indicator is omitted if the letter is capitalized. The grade 1 indicator must be used with an uncapitalized combination of letters corresponding to a shortform (e.g., ab, cd), if the shortform letter combination is preceded and followed by a space.

6.1 Clocks

6.1.1 **Analog Clocks** (See Supplement Example 1: *Analog Clocks*; Supplement Example 2: *Twenty-four Hour Analog Clock*.)

6.1.1.1 The numeric indicator should not be used on analog clocks.

6.1.1.2 Ordinarily, tactile graphics should be presented in vertical order, one below the other. However, to compare several clocks at one time, clocks may be presented in a square formation that shows two clocks side by side followed below by two more clocks side by side.

6.1.1.3 The circumference of the clock should be tactually distinct from the tick marks used to indicate the hour divisions. Minute divisions should be omitted unless specifically referred to in the surrounding text.

6.1.1.4 The length of the tick marks should be in proportion to the overall size of the clock. Generally, the tick marks for hours should straddle the circumference line and extend no less than 3/16 inch (4.5 millimeters) and no more than 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) on either side of the circumference.

6.1.1.5 The numbers on the clock should be placed outside the clock circle and should be 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) from the tick mark.

6.1.1.6 The hands on the clock should be produced with differing textures and should be of different lengths. The hour hand texture should be dotted or dashed, and the minute hand should be prepared using a smooth texture. A third texture should be used if a second hand is shown. Only the hour hand should have an arrowhead placed at its end.

6.1.1.7 It is not necessary to include tick marks for each minute when only five-minute intervals are required. However, if the reader must discern minutes less than five-minute intervals, the tick marks for every one-minute interval must be shown.

6.1.1.8 When it is necessary to discern minutes, the clock face must be larger to allow sufficient space between the individual minutes, all of which must be included. Tick marks for minutes should extend 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) on either side of the circumference. The tick marks for hours should be tactually more significant than the tick marks for minutes. Numbers indicating individual minutes should not be included.

6.1.1.9 The number placement in the tactile graphic presentation of a 24-hour clock should be similar to the print graphic even if the numbers are inside the clock circle. (See Supplement Example 2: *Twenty-Four Hour Analog Clock*.)

6.1.2 **Digital Clocks** (See Example 6-1: *Digital Clock*.)

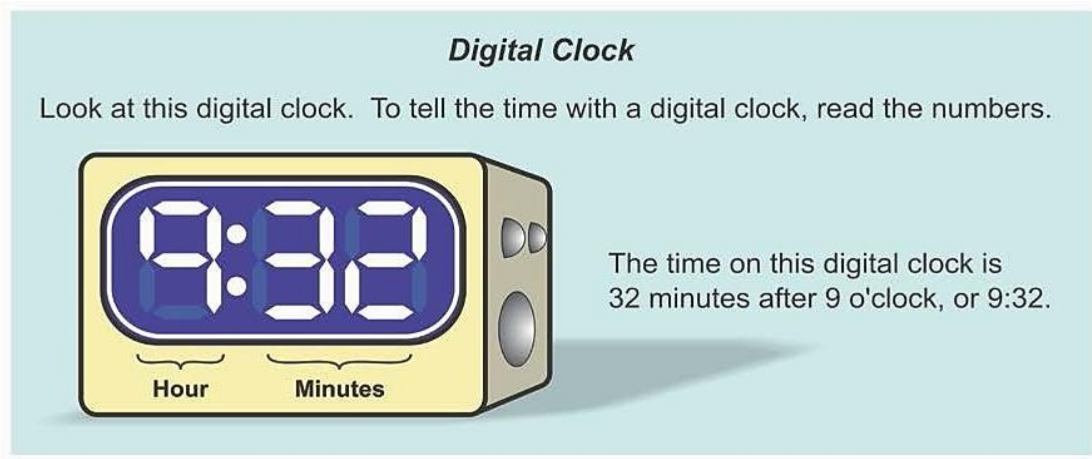
6.1.2.1 The perimeter or outline of a digital clock is shown with the time brailled inside. The perimeter is important because it helps the reader recognize the clock as an object rather than as numbers standing alone to represent time.

6.1.2.2 The perimeter of the clock may be represented by a series of unspaced braille symbols for grades 4 and up. (See the first clock in Example 6-1.)

UEB Line Mode Symbols (for perimeter)	
⠨⠿⠚	Corner with upward vertical
⠨⠿⠒	Simple (solid single) horizontal line segment
⠨⠿⠲	Corner with downward vertical
⠨⠿⠸	Vertical single solid line segment
⠨⠿⠐ ⠒	Horizontal line mode indicator

6.1.2.3 For grades K-3, the perimeter of clocks must be shown as a raised line graphic (See the second clock in Example 6-1.)

Example 6-1: Digital Clock

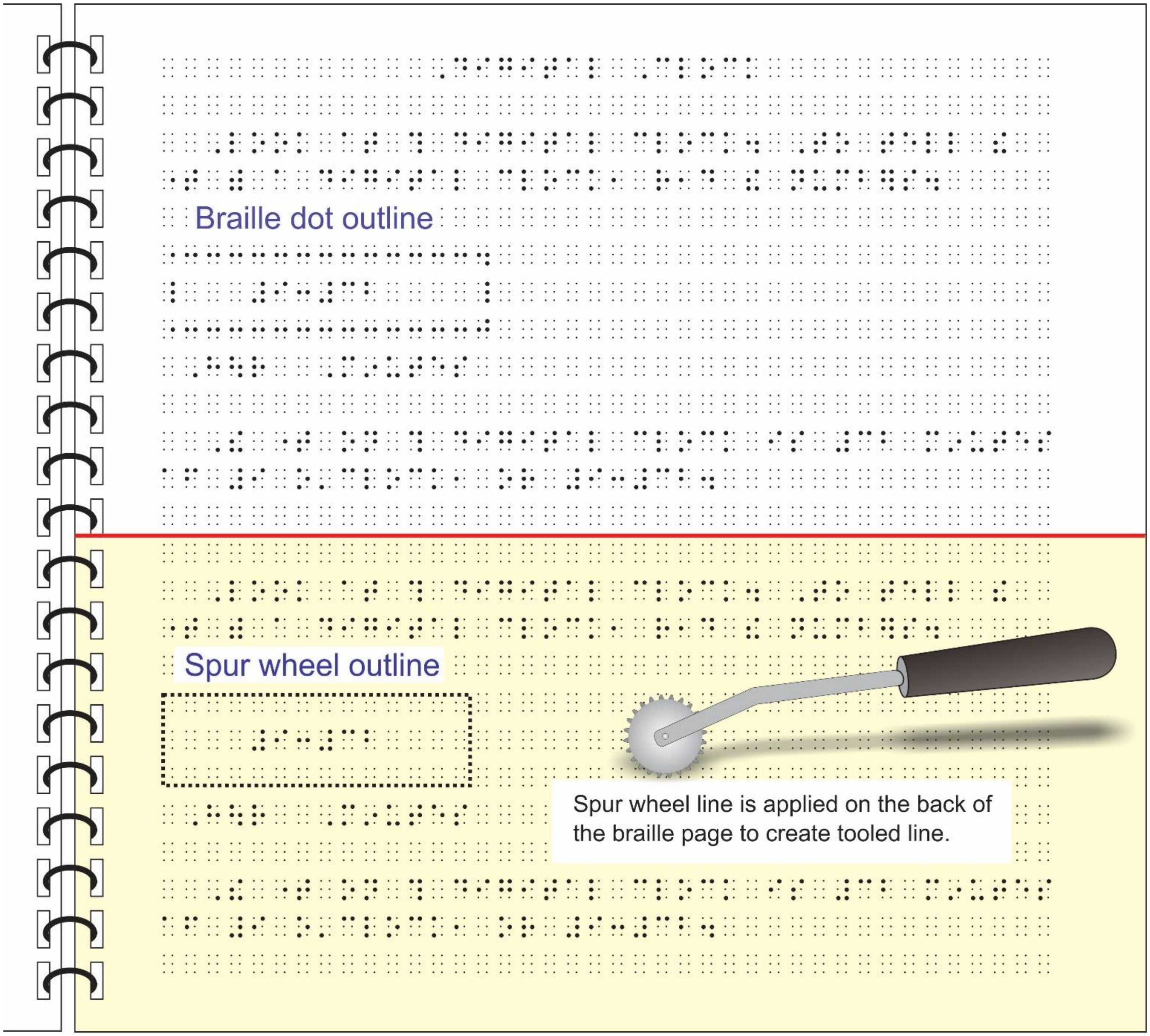


Example 6-1 UEB: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- UEB code
- Placement of labels outside the perimeter or outline, lined up with time inside (2.1)
- The first clock is for grades 4 and up. The second clock is for grades K–3.
- Use of outline image around time (2.6, 6.1.2.2). It is acceptable to use either braille dot symbols or other outline techniques for grades 4 and up
- Simplification from three-dimensional to two-dimensional (2.10, 3.6.2, 6.11.2.7)
- Use of blank space of 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) between labels and outline (3.4.3.12)

Example 6-1 UEB: Digital Clock



6.2 Spinners

A spinner is divided into portions and used to determine the probability of an outcome or moves on a game board. It must be provided as a tactile graphic. (See Supplement Example 3: *Spinner*.)

6.2.1 If numbers are shown, they should be preceded by the numeric indicator regardless of whether the spinner is transcribed in UEB or Nemeth Code.

6.2.2 Spinners should be enlarged just enough to easily display the segments.

6.2.3 The outline of the spinner should be tactually distinct from the lines separating the segments.

6.2.4 The spinner or pointer should be shown as a simple arrow (shaft and arrowhead) beginning at the center and extending outward and should be tactually distinct from the segment lines. Including the arrowhead clearly distinguishes spinners from circle graphs. The tail of the spinner should not be shown because it has no mathematical significance, and it adds unnecessary clutter.

6.2.5 Labels should be placed 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) outside the outline of the spinner, leaving the interior of the spinner unobstructed.

6.2.6 If the reader needs to know the color to complete the task, place the color name as a label outside the segment. If space is an issue, use an alphabetic key for labels rather than an area texture.

6.3 Circle Graphs

Circle graphs or pie charts show numerical relationships by dividing a circle into several sectors. Each piece represents a quantity that is a portion of the whole circle. It must be provided as a tactile graphic rather than as a list. (See Supplement Example 4: *Pie Chart*; Supplement Example 5: *Energy Pie Chart*.)

6.3.1 If numbers are shown, they should be preceded by the numeric indicator regardless of whether the circle graph is transcribed in UEB or Nemeth Code.

6.3.2 Pie charts should be shown as a tactile graphic rather than presenting the information as a list. They should be enlarged just enough to easily display the divisions of the circle.

6.3.3 The outline of the circle should be tactually distinct from the lines separating the divisions.

6.3.4 It may be difficult to differentiate between division lines that are close together. A few of these lines may be stopped just short of the center to avoid clutter.

6.3.5 The circle graph may be rotated slightly to accommodate labels. Lengthy descriptive labels should be indicated with an alphabetic or numeric key.

6.3.6 Labels should be placed 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) outside the circumference, leaving the interior of the graph unobstructed.

6.3.7 **Key** (See Unit 5, Braille Formats for Tactile Graphics: Keys and Legends: Content and Format, §5.7.)

6.3.7.1 If a key is necessary for the different sections, it should be placed before the graph. If possible, place the key and the graph on the same page.

6.3.7.2 The key should be listed in the order the sections appear in clockwise order, starting at the top (at the 12:00 position).

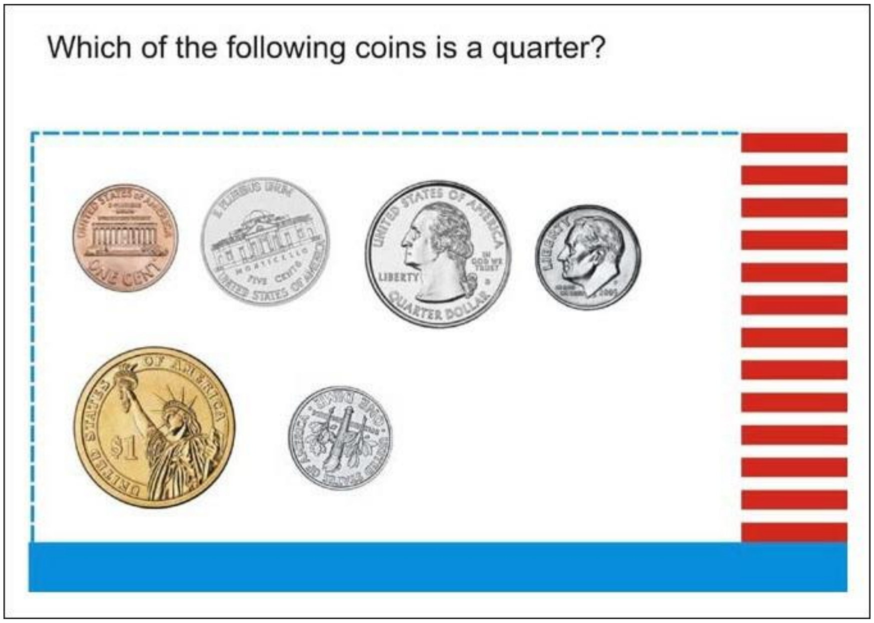
6.3.8 If the portions of the print circle graph show a descriptive label in addition to shading, it is not necessary to show the shading in braille.

6.3.9 If lead lines are required to connect the label to a segment, a minimum length of 3/4 inch (2 centimeters) and a maximum length of 1-1/2 inches (3.75 centimeters) are preferred. There should not be an arrowhead at either end, and the lead line should not cross over the outside of the circle. (See Supplement Example 5: *Energy Pie Chart*.)

6.4 Money

6.4.1 When identification of coins and paper currency is being taught, real money should be used instead of producing a tactile graphic of the money. Do not attempt to illustrate the images on the coins in a tactile form. Braille readers identify coins by their size, textured edge, and shape, rather than by the images on the front and back of the coin.

Example of when tactile graphics should not be used:



6.4.2 The print information should be transcribed in braille without interpretation. Since additional information may “give away” an answer, do not substitute numbers or symbols for words. (See Example 6-2: *Describing Money*.)

Example: If “quarter” is shown on the coin, do not substitute the amount “25¢”.

Example 6-2: Describing Money

Checking

3. On day 5 of fund-raising, Paulette's class collected this amount.
   a) Estimate how much money the class raised.
   b) Calculate the actual amount for day 5.

4. Use bills and coins to make $10.00 in 3 different ways.

Practising

5. Estimate each total. Calculate the actual total.
   a) 2 twenty-dollar bills, 1 quarter, 2 dimes, 4 nickels
   b) 1 five-dollar bill, 2 toonies, 1 loonie, 5 pennies
   c) 4 ten-dollar bills, 4 loonies, 4 quarters, 4 pennies

6. Jeff has 25 quarters, 10 dimes, 5 nickels, and 1 penny in his piggy bank. How much money does Jeff have?

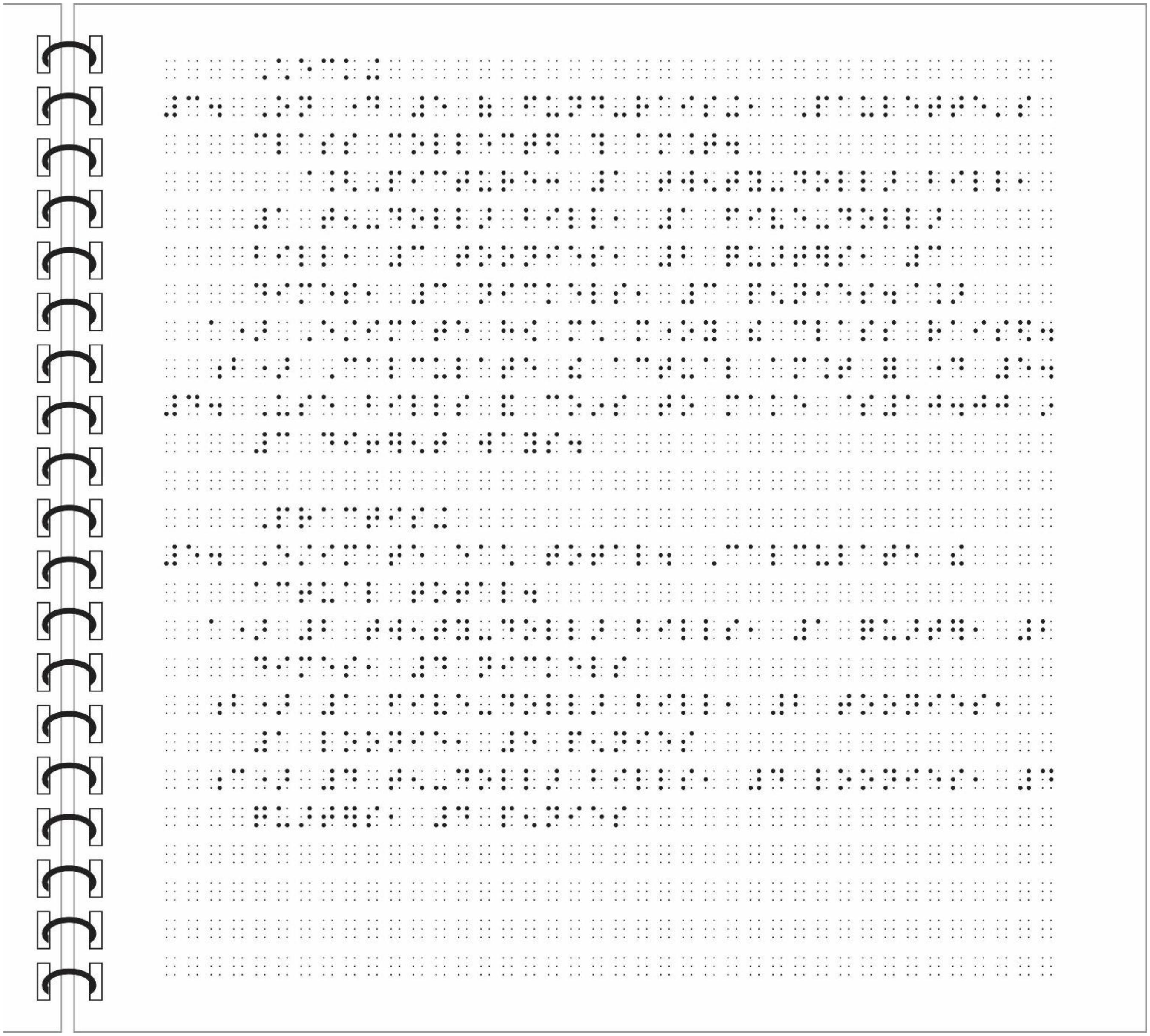
Transcriber's Note:
Picture: 1 twenty-dollar bill, 1 ten-dollar bill, 1 five-dollar bill, 3 toonies, 2 quarters, 3 dimes, 3 nickels, 3 pennies.

Example 6-2 UEB: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- UEB code
- use of a transcriber’s note for description instead of a tactile graphic (1.4, 5.4.1)
- use of the same language in the transcriber’s note as found in the surrounding text (2.15)
- words for money rather than the number value (6.4.2)

Example 6-2 UEB: Describing Money

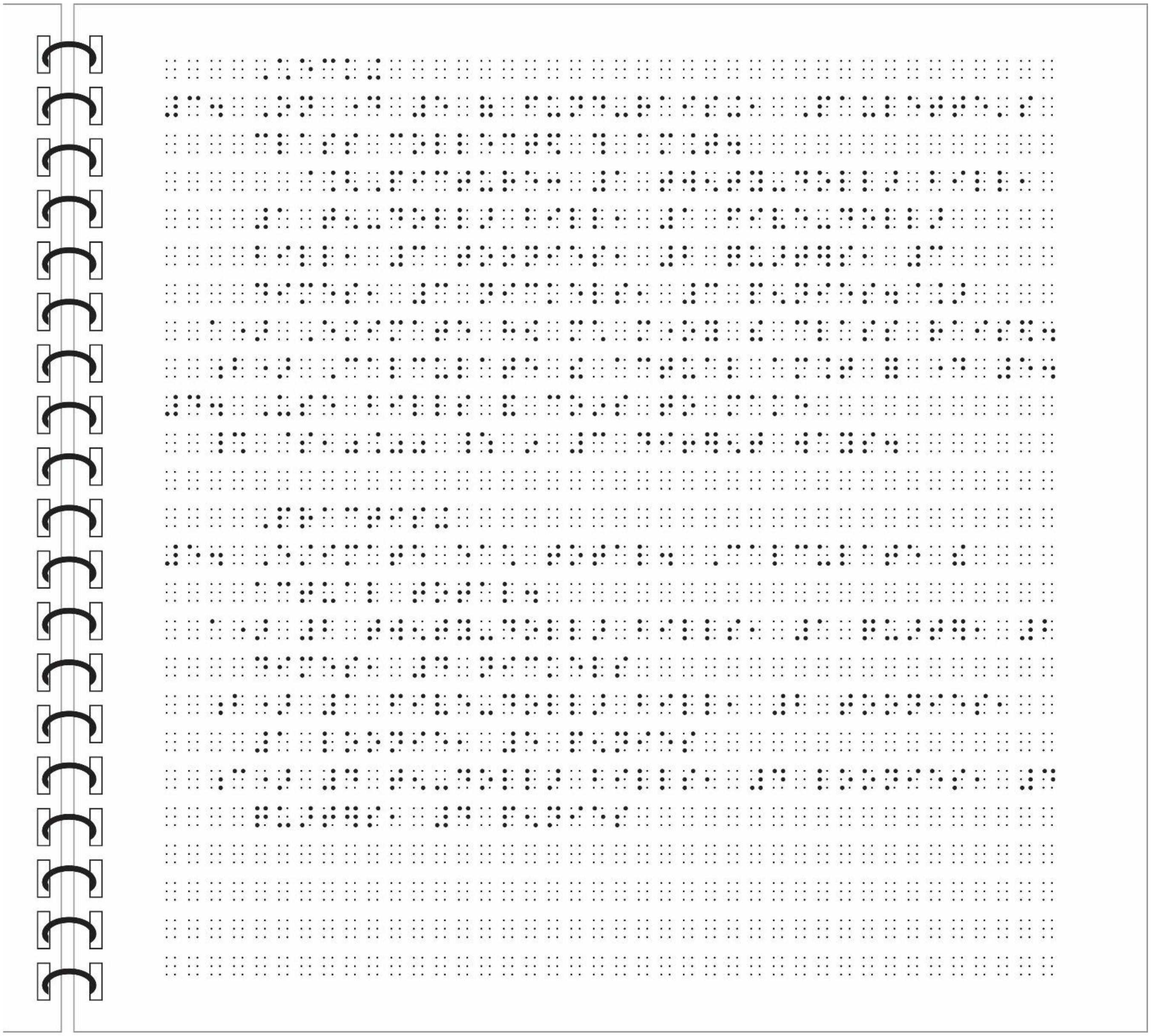


Example 6-2 Nemeth: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- Nemeth Braille Code
- use of Nemeth switch indicators to denote the change into and out of the Nemeth Braille Code
- use of a transcriber's note for description instead of a tactile graphic (1.4, 5.4.1)
- use of the same language in the transcriber's note as found in the surrounding text (2.15)
- words for money rather than the number value (6.4.2)

Example 6-2 Nemeth: Describing Money



6.4.3 When a picture of money is shown for the purpose of calculating its value, letters can be used to represent coins. Coinage should be transcribed using the letters "pn" for penny, "nk" for nickel, "dm" for dime, "qr" for quarter, "hl" for half-dollar, "ln" for loonie, and "tn" for toonie. (See Example 6-28: *Value of Coins*.)

If readers become accustomed to a 2-cell symbol, it will help them in reading other graphics with key listings. If a single-letter counting symbol is used (e.g., "p" for penny), it may be confused with alphabetic contractions, especially to readers just learning braille contractions.

6.4.4 Numbers can be used to represent bills. Bills can be transcribed using the appropriate dollar sign and number.

Example: "$1" for one dollar

6.5 Line Formations

6.5.1 **Number Lines** (See Example 6-3: *Simple Number Line;* Example 6-4: *Open- and Solid-Circle Number Line*; Example 6-7 and Supplement Example 6: *Number Line*.)

A number line is similar to a Cartesian graph except that there is only one dimension. Number lines are used to teach relationships between numbers; therefore, it is essential that the proportional spacing between units be preserved.

All number lines transcribed in Nemeth within UEB contexts must be enclosed within Nemeth Code switch indicators even though numbers may not be modified. This applies whether they are drawn or created using braille symbols. (See Example 6-3 Nemeth: *Simple Number Line*; Example 6-6 Nemeth: *Number Line with Time.*)

6.5.1.1 A numeric indicator is not used before a number if it occurs below the number line, whether the number is whole, fractional, decimal, or negative. A numeric indicator is used before a number above the number line. Follow these guidelines for the numeric indicator regardless of whether the number line is transcribed in UEB or Nemeth Code. (See Supplement Example 7: *Box-and-Whisker Plots*.)

6.5.1.2 A number line, including markers and labels, is a spatial arrangement and must be preceded and followed by a blank line.

6.5.1.3 Include arrowheads on the number line if shown in print.

6.5.1.4 Every effort should be made to keep number line constructions (braille symbol or spurred line) consistent throughout a transcription. A mixture of braille symbols and spurred lines is permissible when necessary for clear presentation.

NUMBER LINE SYMBOLS

Number Line Symbols – UEB

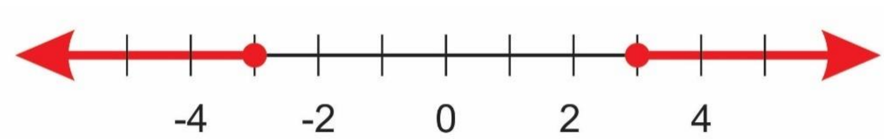
Braille	Print	Meaning
⠨⠿⠽	—○—	Open (hollow) circle (point not included)
⠨⠿⠿	—●—	Solid (filled-in) circle
⠨⠿⠣	(	Left parenthesis (dot 5 is omitted)
⠨⠿⠳⠕	>	Right-pointing arrowhead
⠨⠿⠳⠪	<	Left-pointing arrowhead
⠨⠿⠺	|	Ordinary (regular) coordinate (scale mark)
⠨⠿⠶	▬▬▬	Bold (shaded, colored) line segment
⠨⠿⠜	)	Right parenthesis (dot 5 is omitted)
⠨⠿⠘⠳⠕	**>**	Bold right-pointing arrowhead
⠨⠿⠘⠳⠪	**<**	Bold left-pointing arrowhead
⠨⠿⠐⠒	———	Line (begin horizontal line mode for axis line or arrow shaft)
⠨⠿⠨⠣	[	Left bracket
⠨⠿⠨⠜	]	Right bracket

Number Line Symbols – Nemeth

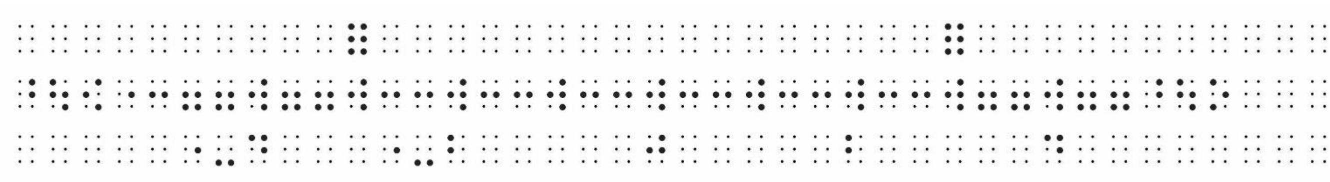
Braille	Print	Meaning
⠨⠿⠕	〉	Right-pointing arrowhead
⠨⠿⠕⠕	**>**	Bold right-pointing arrowhead
⠨⠿⠗	|	Ordinary (regular) coordinate (scale mark)
⠨⠿⠭	—○—	Open (hollow) circle (point not included)
⠨⠿⠽	]	Right bracket
⠨⠿⠯	[	Left bracket
⠨⠿⠿	—●—	Solid (filled-in) circle
⠨⠿⠷	(	Left parenthesis
⠨⠿⠾	)	Right parenthesis
⠨⠿⠪	〈	Left-pointing arrowhead
⠨⠿⠪⠪	**<**	Bold left-pointing arrowhead
⠨⠿⠒	——	Line (axis line or arrow shaft)
⠨⠿⠶	▬▬	Bold (shaded, colored) line segment

6.5.1.5 The number line should always start and end with an arrow, axis line, or coordinate mark. Note: In UEB, the horizontal line mode indicator should be inserted following an opening arrowhead (if shown in print) or before the horizontal line segment or coordinate mark.

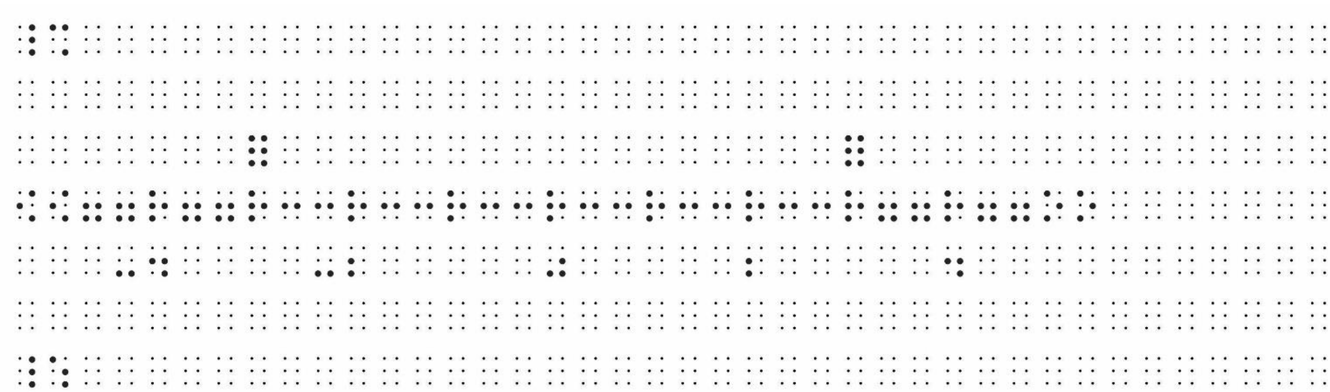
Example 6-3: Simple Number Line



Example 6-3 UEB: Simple Number Line



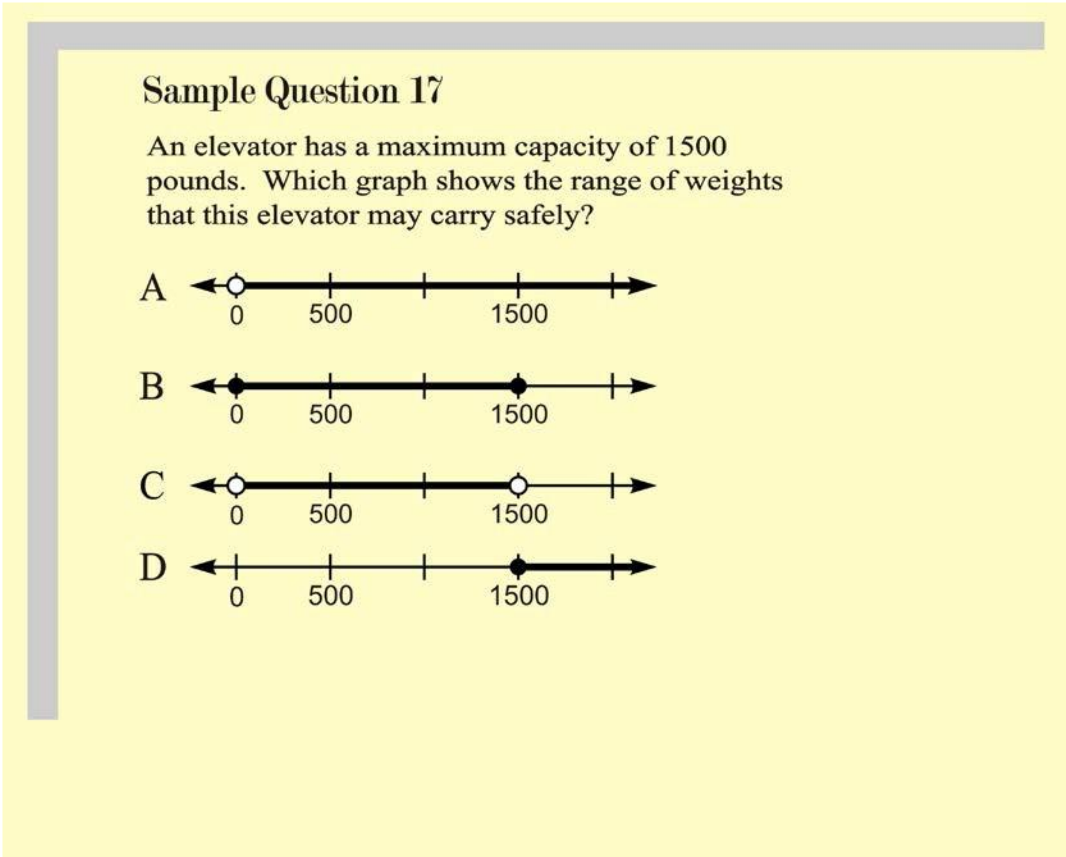
Example 6-3 Nemeth: Simple Number Line



6.5.1.6 The presence of open (hollow) circles and solid (filled-in) circles is mathematically significant and should not be altered.

If part or all of a number line is bold, indicating that the number line values are included in a solution set, it is assumed that the scale marks are included in the solution set with the open and filled-in circles at the extremes indicating whether that value is included or not.

Example 6-4: Open- and Solid-Circle Number Line

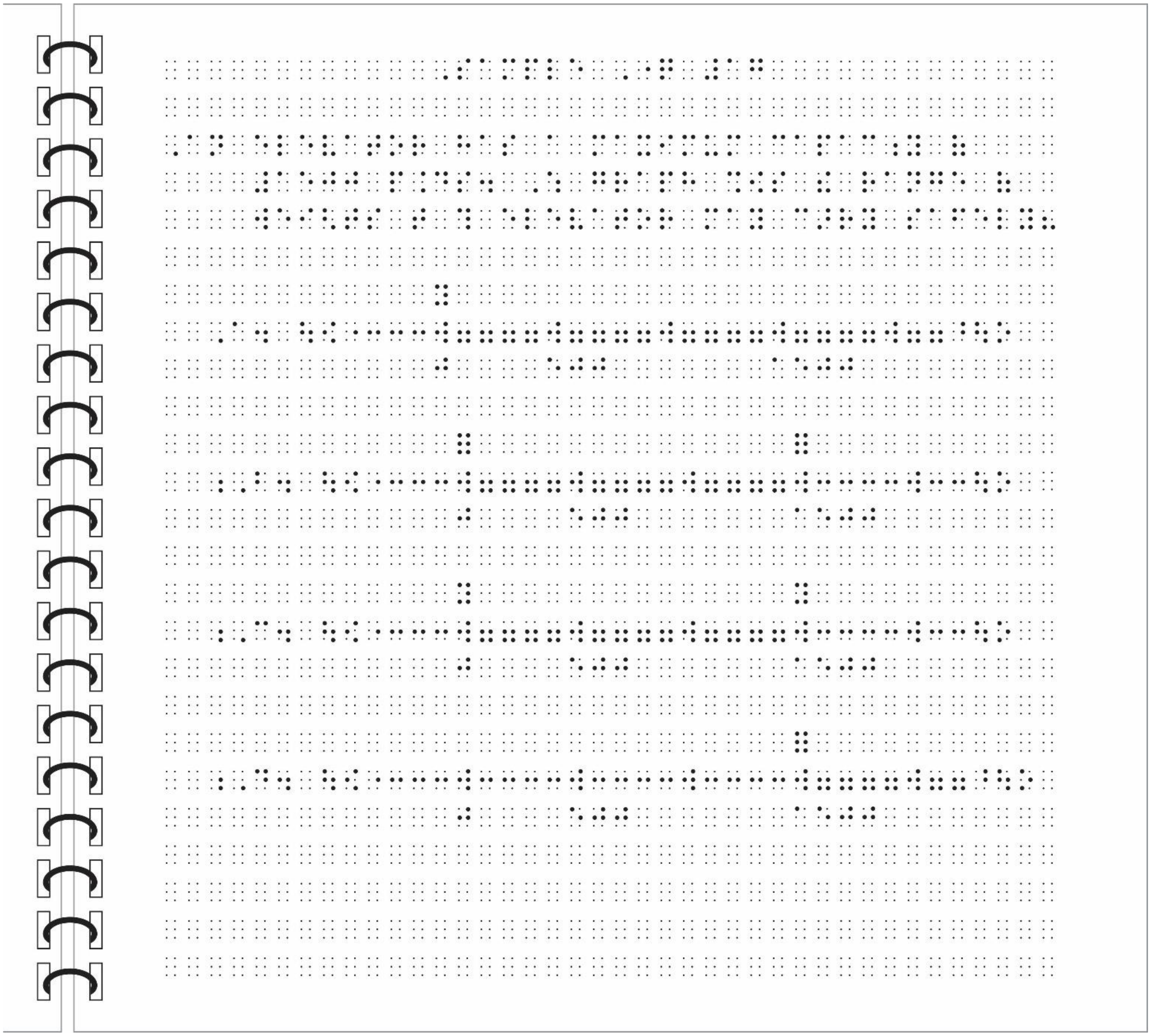


Example 6-4 UEB: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- UEB code
- extension of axis line segments to allow space for multi-digit values (2.9)
- use of the Special Symbols page to explain braille dot symbols (5.13, 6.5.1.13)
- non-use of numeric indicators for labels below the number line (6.5.1.1)
- use of blank lines before and after number line and labels (rules for spatial arrangement) (6.5.1.2)
- inclusion of arrowheads as in print (6.5.1.3)
- no alteration of open and solid circles because they are mathematically significant (6.5.1.6)
- alignment of the first digit of the numeric label with a regular scale mark (6.5.1.8)
- placement of ordinary labels (6.5.1.8)
- arrangement of the number line on the same line as itemized answer choices A-D. (6.5.1.9)
- use of embossed braille symbols allowed for grades 4 and up (6.5.1.13)
- placement of regular scale marks embedded within the number line (6.5.1.13)
- placement of open and solid circles above the number line (6.5.1.13)

Example 6-4 UEB: Open- and Solid-Circle Number Line

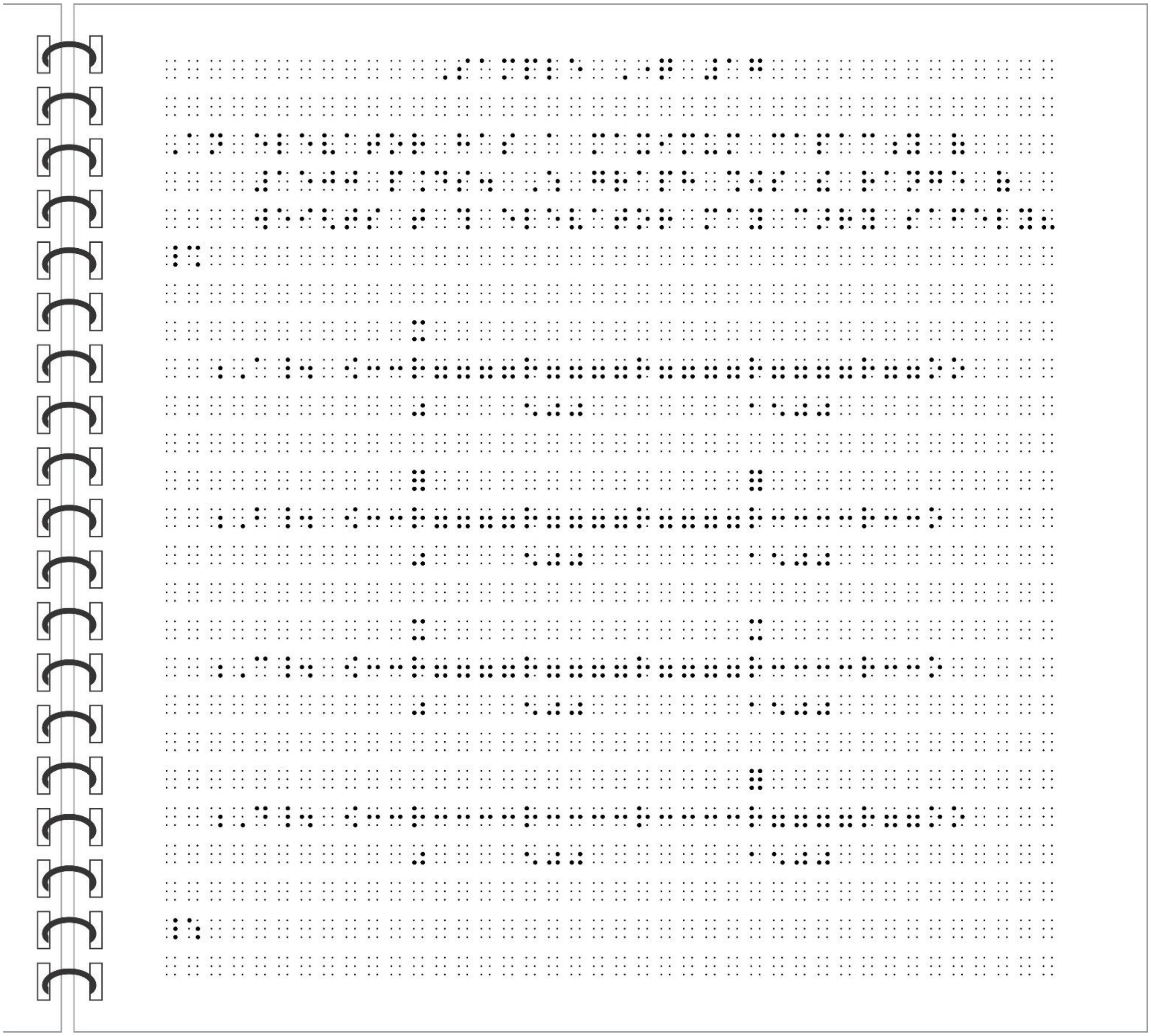


Example 6-4 Nemeth: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- Nemeth Braille Code
- Use of Nemeth Code switch indicators to denote the use of the Nemeth Braille Code
- extension of axis line segments to allow space for multi-digit values (2.9)
- use of the Special Symbols page to explain braille dot symbols (5.13, 6.5.1.13)
- non-use of numeric indicators for labels below the number line (6.5.1.1)
- use of blank lines before and after the number line and labels (rules for spatial arrangement) (6.5.1.2)
- inclusion of arrowheads as in print (6.5.1.3)
- no alteration of open and solid circles because they are mathematically significant (6.5.1.6)
- alignment of the first digit of the numeric label with regular scale mark (6.5.1.8)
- placement of ordinary labels (6.5.1.8)
- arrangement of the number line on the same line as the itemized answer choices A-D (6.5.1.9)
- use of embossed braille symbols allowed for grades 4 and up (6.5.1.13)
- placement of regular scale marks embedded within the number line (6.5.1.13)
- placement of open and solid circles above the number line (6.5.1.13)

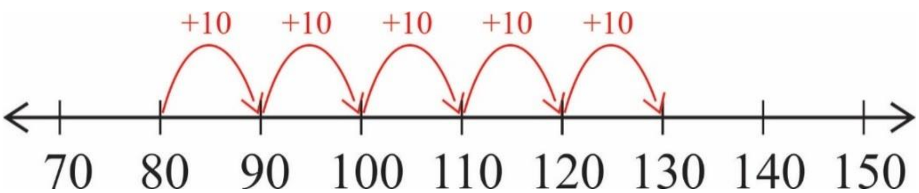
Example 6-4 Nemeth: Open- and Solid-Circle Number Line



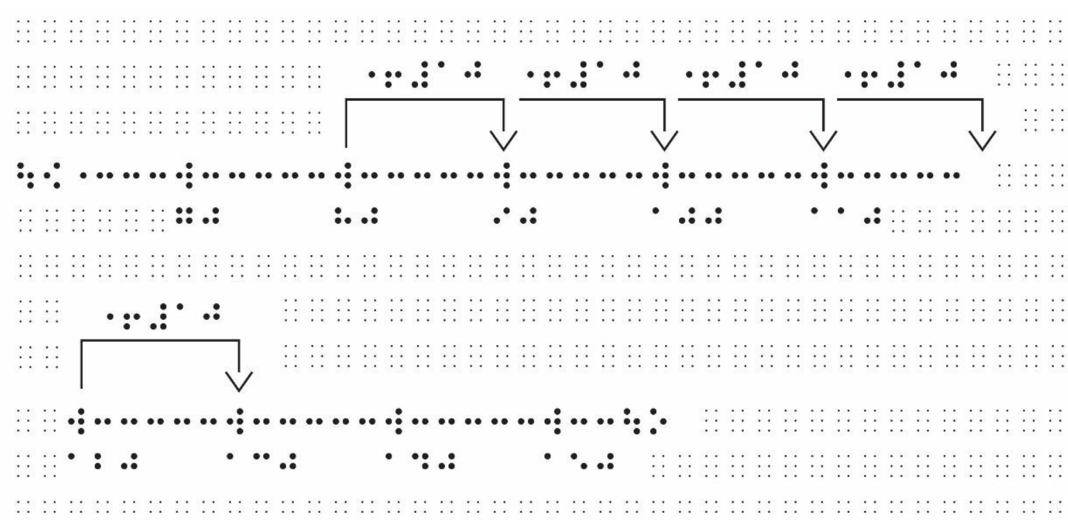
6.5.1.7 If an arc or curved line illustrating a group of numbers is too short to enable the point of the arrowhead to be perpendicular to the number line, it is permissible to use a straight line with squared corners (up, across, down). The arrow should then clearly and accurately point to the intended mark or label on the number line.

Example 6-5: Skip Counting on a Number Line

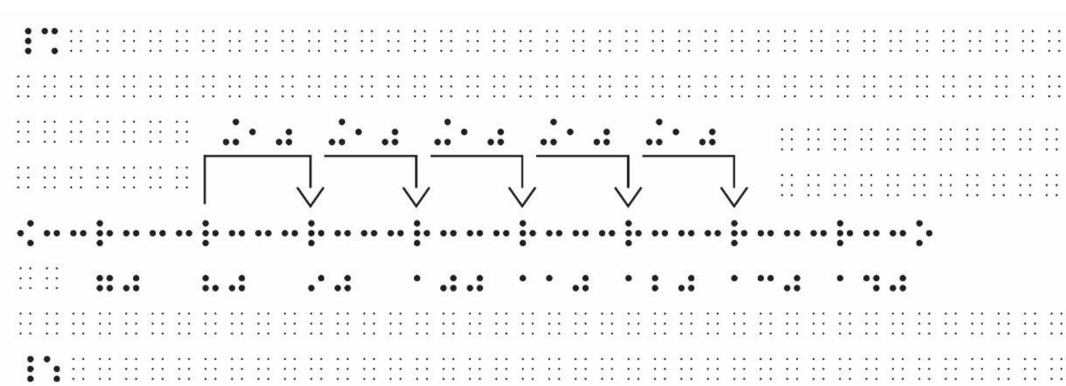
Print number line showing skip counting



Example 6-5 UEB: Skip Counting on a Number Line



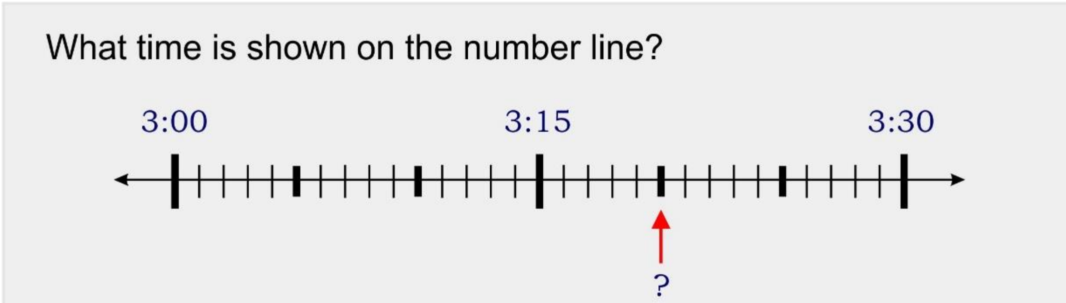
Example 6-5 Nemeth: Skip Counting on a Number Line



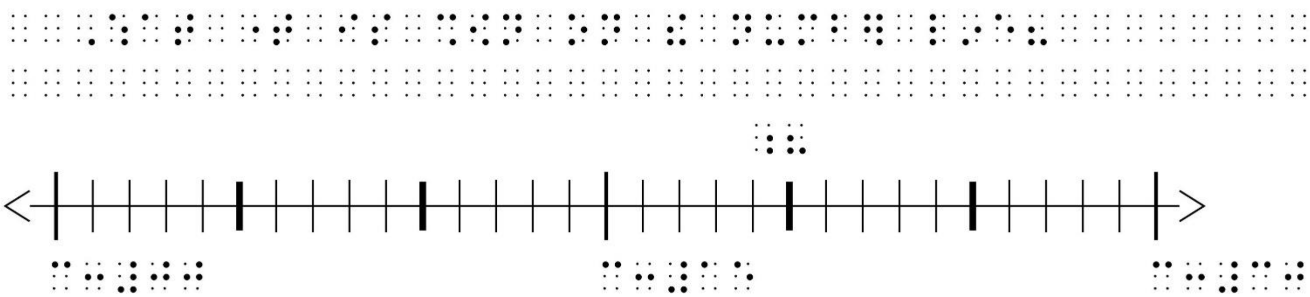
6.5.1.8 **Label Placement**

- Numeric labels for ordinary (regular) coordinates (scale marks) should be placed below the number line regardless of their placement in print.
- Variables (usually lowercase letters) representing omitted numbers or any real number should be placed below the number line. (See Example 6-8: *Number Line with Interval Notation.*)
- The first digit of a numeric label should be aligned with the coordinate or scale mark whether or not the label is preceded by a plus or minus sign. A variable has its letter aligned with the scale mark and is preceded by the grade 1 indicator (UEB) or English letter indicator (Nemeth).
- In UEB, the numeric indicator must be included on a fractional coordinate label. The first numeric indicator in a simple fraction or mixed number must be aligned with the scale mark. In the case of general fractions (a fraction that is not entirely numeric), the general fraction open indicator is aligned with the scale mark. If a plus or minus sign is present, these signs should be transcribed to the left of the numeric or general fraction indicators.
- In Nemeth, the opening fraction indicator in a simple fraction is aligned with the scale mark. In mixed numbers, the number indicator is omitted before the first number, and the first digit of the mixed number is aligned with the scale mark.
- When the coordinate label is a unit of time, whether the number line is transcribed in UEB or Nemeth, the numeric indicator is omitted before the hour value. The first digit of the hours label is aligned with the scale mark. The numeric indicator is retained before the minutes value.

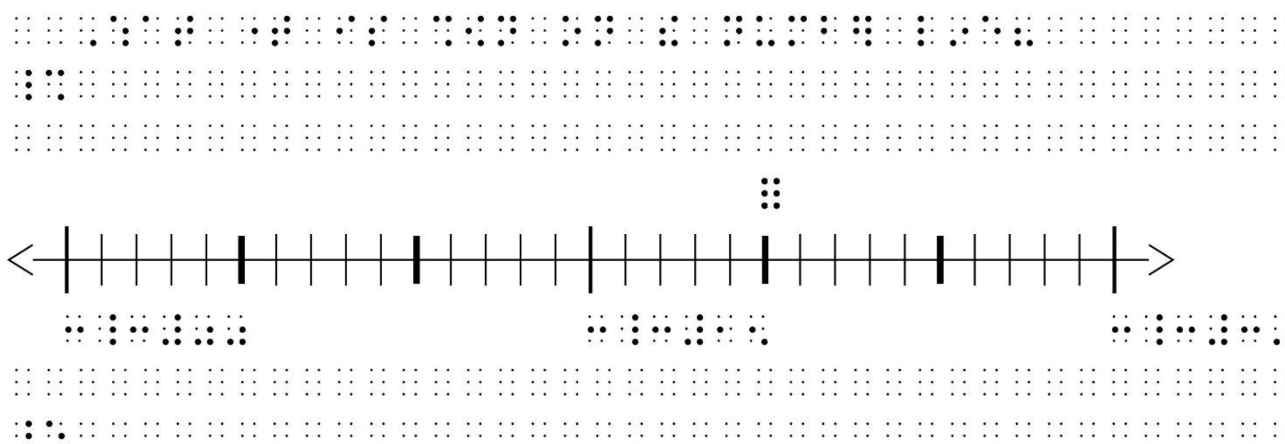
Example 6-6: Number Line with Time



Example 6-6 UEB: Number Line with Time



Example 6-6 Nemeth: Number Line with Time



- If the coordinate label is a square root, the open radical indicator should be aligned with the coordinate or scale mark, whether the number line is transcribed in UEB or Nemeth.
- An alphabetic label or sign of omission, representing a plotted point on a number line, is similarly aligned, with the capital indicator or grade 1 symbol indicator (English letter indicator in Nemeth) to the left of a coordinate or scale mark. These labels for plotted points must be moved above the number line regardless of their placement in print. (See Example 6-6 UEB: *Number Line with Time*; Example 6-7: *Number Line;* and Supplement Example 6: *Number Line*.)

6.5.1.9 If there is insufficient space on a line to accommodate the exercise identifier and the entire number line, the number line should be placed in cell 1 on a separate line. A blank line is still required before the spatial number line.

6.5.1.10 Hierarchy for accommodating a long number line:

- starting the number line at the margin in cell 1. If accompanied by an exercise number, the exercise number can be left on one line, and the number line can be moved down to a new line. A blank line is inserted between the exercise number and the number line.
- shortening the length of the line segments between integers
- omitting unused portions of the line
- omitting alternate labels while keeping the coordinate marker
- moving a long label away from the number line by placing it below the line reserved for ordinary labels and connecting it to its coordinate marker with a lead line
- dividing the number line between braille lines (See §6.5.1.11.)
- changing the horizontal form to vertical. Rotating a number line will produce a vertical line that may be thought of as comparable to the *y*-axis of a Cartesian

graph; therefore, the number line should be transcribed with the smallest number at the bottom of the page and increasing upward. The tick marks should straddle the axis line 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) on either side of the axis line. Dots 25 of the value are aligned with the tick mark. A transcriber's note should be included to explain the change in presentation.

6.5.1.11 A horizontal number line may be divided between braille lines. If division is required, the runover should start in cell 3 with a coordinate marker. In the instance of a negative number, the minus sign will start in cell 3. In UEB, the coordinate marker will start in cell 5 (if the dot 5 is retained) or cell 4 (if the dot 5 is not retained). In Nemeth, the coordinate marker will start in cell 4. The coordinate markers on the runover line do not need to be aligned with the coordinate markers on the line above. A number line should not be divided between pages.

A horizontal number line that is divided between braille lines should not contain a dot 5 continuation indicator (UEB).

A blank line is required before any components of the runover line. (See Example 6-7: *Number Line*.)

Example 6-7: Number Line

D Number Lines

Write the number for each point.

14. *A* 15. *B* 16. *C*

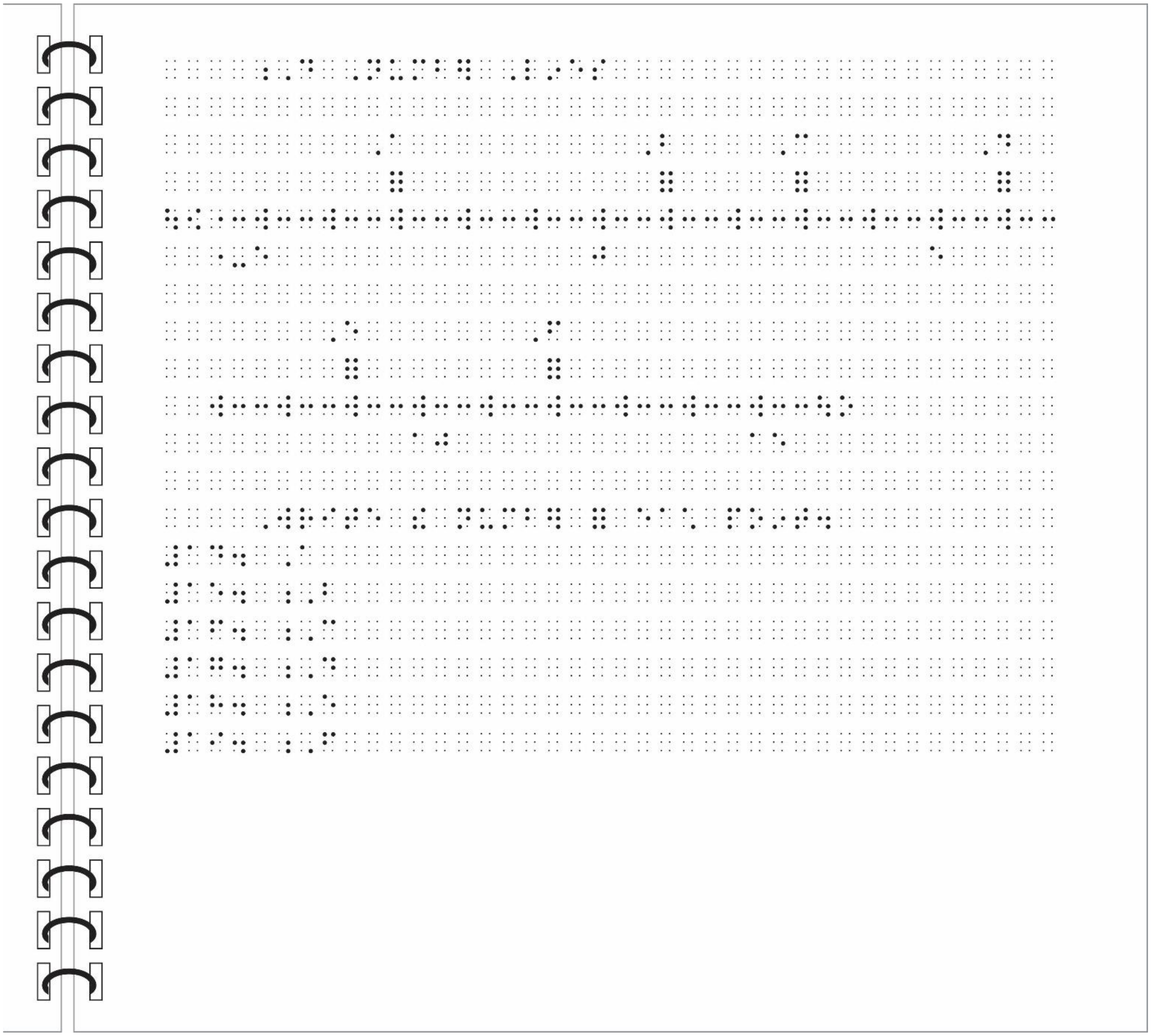
17. *D* 18. *E* 19. *F*

Example 6-7 UEB: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- UEB code
- use of a blank line after the cell-5 heading (5.3.2)
- non-use of the grade 1 indicator for single, capitalized alphabetic labels on distinctive markers (5.10.4)
- use of the Special Symbols page to explain braille dot symbols (5.13, 6.5.1.13)
- non-use of numeric indicators for labels below the number line (6.5.1.1)
- use of blank lines before and after the number line (6.5.1.2)
- inclusion of arrowheads as in print (6.5.1.3)
- use of the dot 5 prefix before a minus sign when space permits (6.6.1.3)
- alignment of the first digit of the numeric label with the regular scale mark, even with a negative number (6.5.1.8)
- alignment of the letter (not capital indicator) with the distinctive marker symbol (6.5.1.8)
- runover of the number line with a break before the scale mark and indented two cells from the start of the number line (6.5.1.11)
- use of a blank line before the runover line (6.5.1.11)
- use of embossed braille symbols allowed for grades 4 and up (6.5.1.13)
- placement of regular scale marks embedded within the number line (6.5.1.13)
- movement of alphabetic labels for plotted points to above the number line regardless of the placement in print (6.5.1.13)

Example 6-7 UEB: Number Line

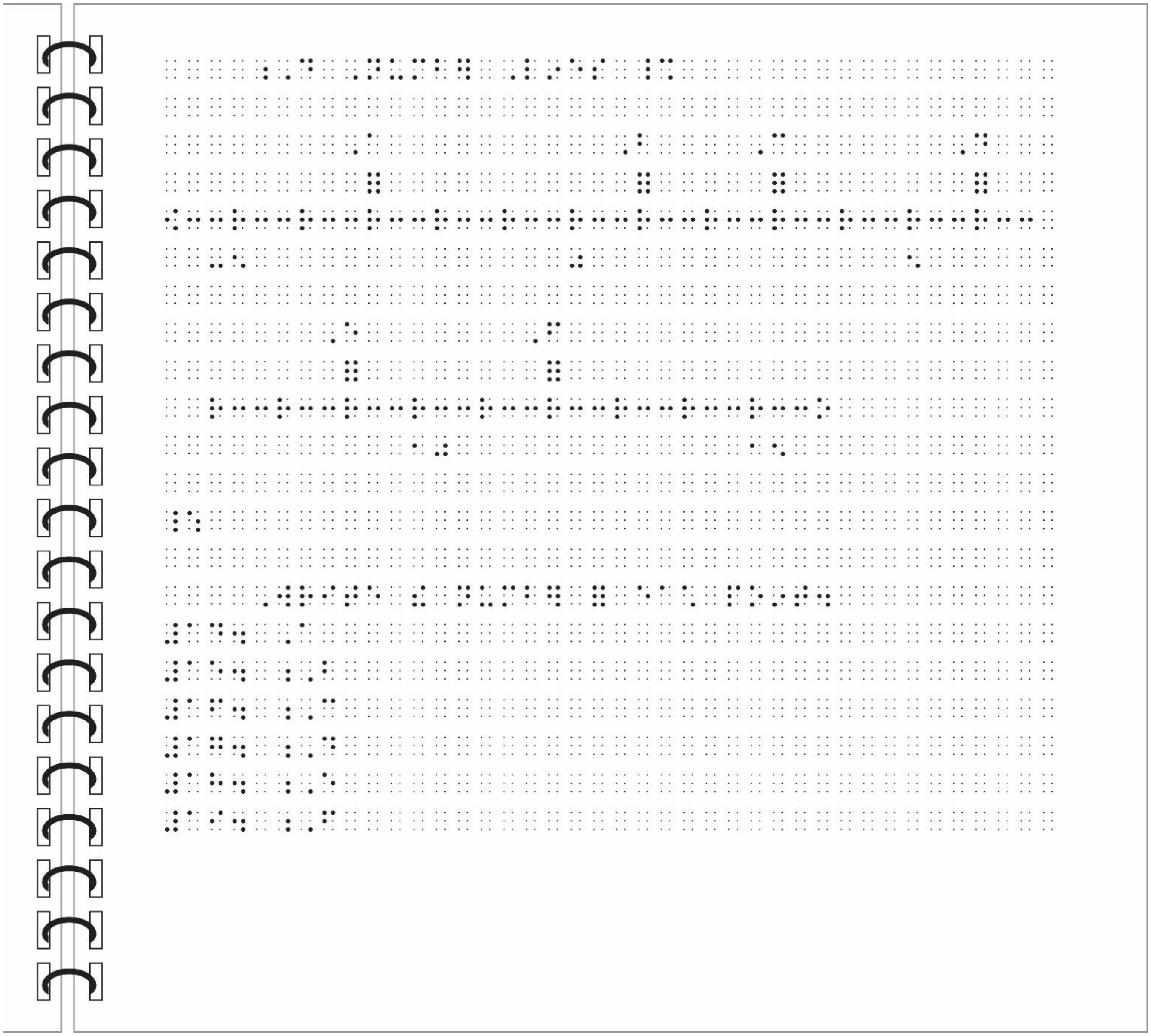


Example 6-7 Nemeth: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- Nemeth Braille Code
- use of Nemeth Code switch indicators to denote the use of the Nemeth Braille Code
- use of a blank line after the cell-5 heading (5.3.2)
- non-use of the letter indicator for single, capitalized alphabetic labels on distinctive markers (5.10.4)
- use of the Special Symbols page to explain braille dot symbols (5.13, 6.5.1.13)
- non-use of numeric indicators for labels below the number line (6.5.1.1)
- use of blank lines before and after the number line (6.5.1.2)
- inclusion of arrowheads as in print (6.5.1.3)
- alignment of the first digit of the numeric label with a regular scale mark, even with a negative number (6.5.1.8)
- alignment of the letter (not capital sign) with the distinctive marker symbol (6.5.1.8)
- runover of the number line with a break before the scale mark and indented two cells from the start of the number line (6.5.1.11)
- use of a blank line before the runover line (6.5.1.11)
- use of embossed braille symbols allowed for grades 4 and up (6.5.1.13)
- placement of regular scale marks embedded within the number line (6.5.1.13)
- movement of alphabetic labels for plotted points to above the number line regardless of placement in print (6.5.1.13)

Example 6-7 Nemeth: Number Line



This page is intentionally blank.

Example 6-8: Number Line with Interval Notation

5. Choose the interval notation description that represents the number line shown by the set $\{x \mid a \leq x < b\}$

A. The open interval from *a* to *b* contains neither end point

B. The interval from *a* to *b* contains *b* but not *a*

C. The interval from *a* to *b* contains *a* but not *b*

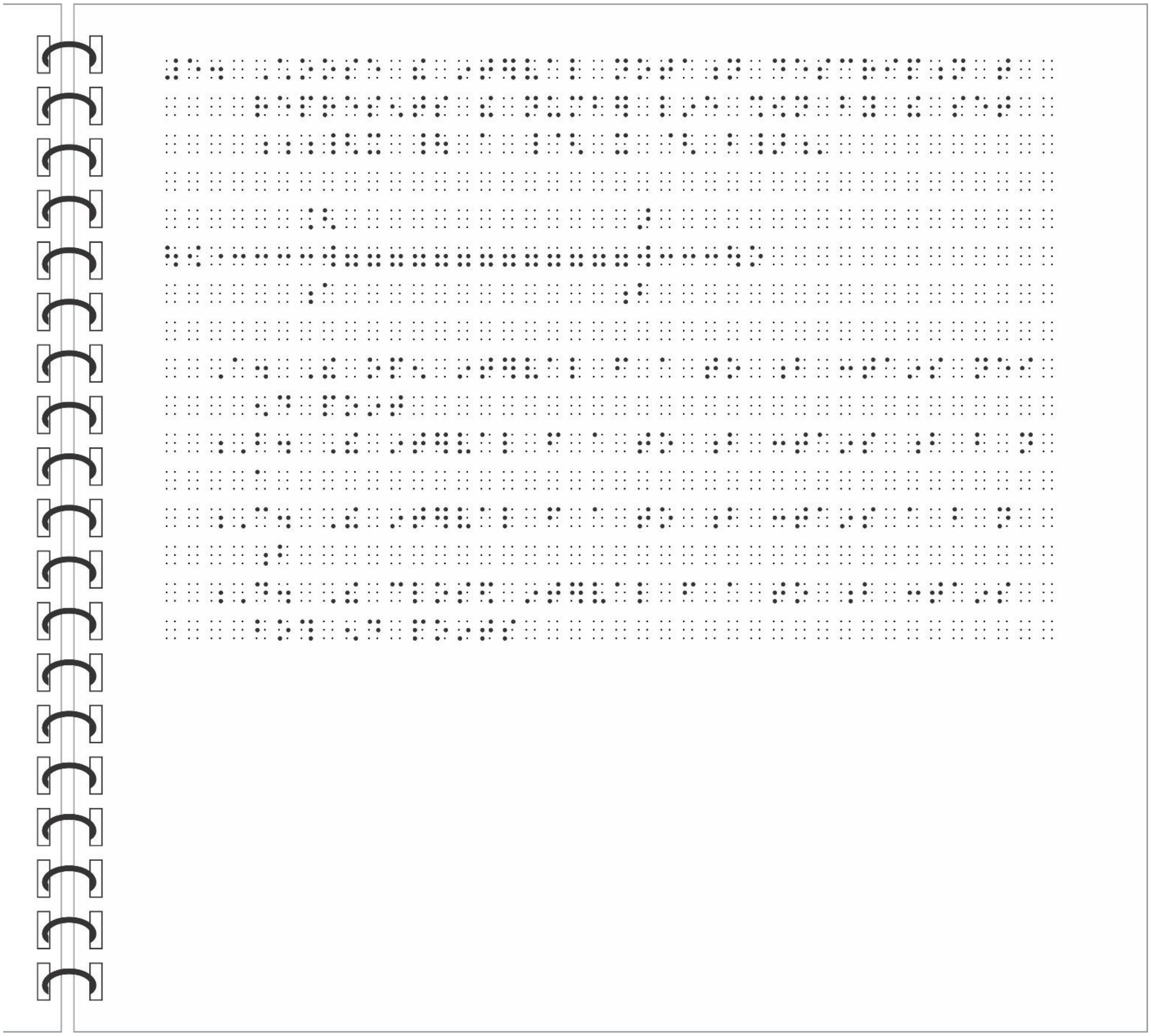
D. The closed interval from *a* to *b* contains both end points

Example 6-8 UEB: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- UEB code
- use of 1–5 margins for the first level and 3–5 for the second level in exercise material with subentries
- use of the grade 1 indicator for single lowercase variables (including a, i, and o) on distinctive markers (without the grade 1 indicator, the letters would be misread as numbers)
- use of the Special Symbols page to explain braille dot symbols (5.13, 6.5.1.13)
- use of blank lines before and after the number line (6.5.1.2)
- inclusion of arrowheads as in print (6.5.1.3)
- alignment of the square bracket (root character, not the prefix) with the regular scale mark (6.5.1.8)
- alignment of the letter (not grade 1 indicator) with the distinctive marker symbol (6.5.1.8)
- use of embossed braille symbols allowed for grades 4 and up (6.5.1.13)
- placement of regular scale marks embedded within the number line (6.5.1.13)
- placement of variables below the number line (6.5.1.8)
- movement of the square bracket and parenthesis to above the number line regardless of placement in print (6.5.1.13)

Example 6-8 UEB: Number Line with Interval Notation

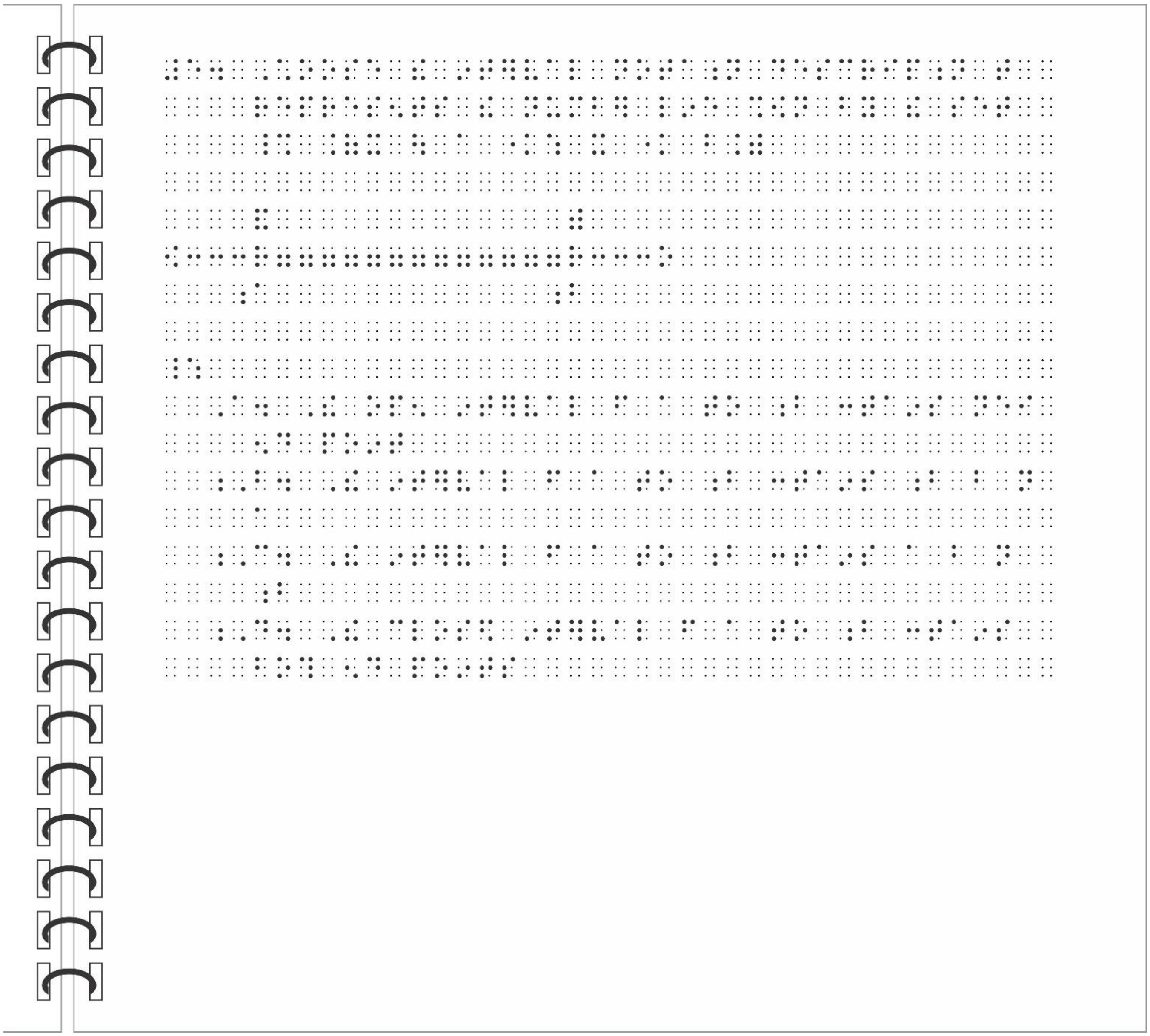


Example 6-8 Nemeth: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- Nemeth Braille Code
- use of 1–5 margins for the first level and 3–5 for the second level in exercise material with subentries
- use of the English letter indicator for single lowercase alphabetic labels on distinctive markers
- use of the Nemeth Code switch indicator before the mathematical expression and the Nemeth Code terminator after the number line
- use of the Special Symbols page to explain braille dot symbols (5.13; 6.5.1.13)
- use of blank lines before and after the number line (6.5.1.2)
- inclusion of arrowheads as in print (6.5.1.3)
- alignment of the letter (not English letter indicator) with the distinctive marker symbol (6.5.1.8)
- use of embossed braille symbols allowed for grades 4 and up (6.5.1.13)
- placement of regular scale marks embedded within the number line (6.5.1.13)
- placement of variables below the number line (6.5.1.8)
- movement of the square bracket and parenthesis to above the number line regardless of placement in print (6.5.1.13)

Example 6-8 Nemeth: Number Line with Interval Notation



6.5.1.12 **For kindergarten through grade 3:**

- The number line must be shown as a tactile graphic. The axis line, coordinate marker, and line segments should be raised tactile lines; only the labels should be brailled.
- When a line segment is bold, shaded, or colored in print, it should be tactually stronger than the axis line.
- Scale marks should be 1/2 inch (1.25 centimeters) long. They should straddle the axis line 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) on either side of the axis line.
- The open or solid circles should be placed on the axis line as indicated in print (not above it).
- (See Supplement Example 6: *Number Line*.)

6.5.1.13 **For grades 4 and up:**

- Number lines may be prepared using braille symbols. When arrows, loops, or lead lines are part of the arrangement, but not part of the number line itself, a combination of braille symbols and raised tactile lines may be used.
- All braille number line symbols must be listed in braille order in a separate category with the heading "Horizontal Number Line Symbols" or "Nemeth Horizontal Number Line Symbols" on the Special Symbols page of each volume in which they are used. If number lines appear infrequently, the braille number line symbols should be inserted as a transcriber's note.
- The scale mark is embedded in the braille number line.
- Distinctive markers (open or solid circles; square brackets; parentheses) found superimposed on ordinary coordinates of the print number line should be moved to the line above, directly over the scale marks or position they represent. Special print labels associated with distinctive markers or plotted points are to be placed on the braille line immediately above the markers and aligned as regular labels. (See Example 6-4: *Open- and Solid-Circle Number Line*.)
- If a number line containing open and solid circles is too

long to fit on one braille line using number line symbols, it can be created as a tactile graphic. If a tactile graphic is created, a key must be inserted identifying the symbol used for an open circle and the symbol used for a solid circle.

6.5.2 Line or Dot Plots

Line plots, also called dot plots, are formed by a series of stacked symbols, usually the letter x, above a number line. These plots are used to show the frequency of data values. (See Example 6-9: *Line Plot*.)

6.5.2.1 A line plot may not need to be prepared as a tactile graphic if it is possible to present the number line using the braille symbol representation. (See Unit 6, Diagrams for Technical Material, §6.5.1.13.)

6.5.2.2 The number line should be transcribed following the guidelines and standards in Unit 6, Diagrams for Technical Material, 6.5.1.

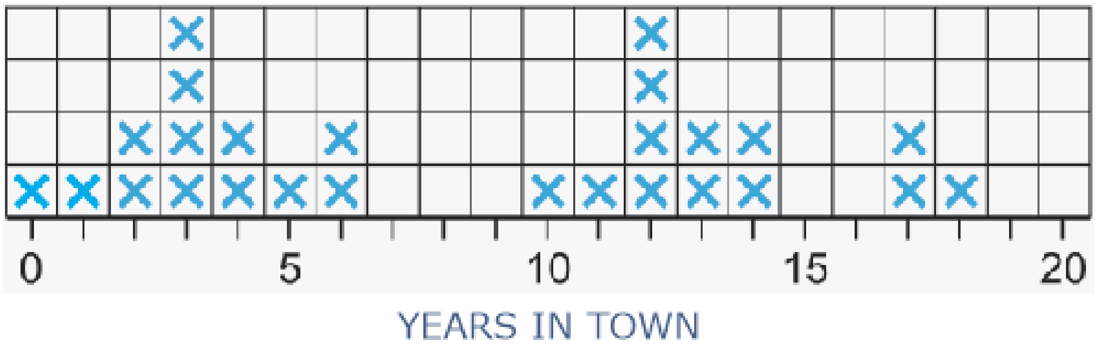
6.5.2.3 Whether the name of the data set shown on a line plot is placed above or below the line plot in print, the braille label for the horizontal values must be placed below the values on the number line and should be left-justified with the first cell of the first value. Since the label for the line plot is actually the label for the horizontal axis line (rather than a centered heading), this placement will be consistent with the format for the label placement for a Line Graph. (See Unit 6, Diagrams for Technical Material, §6.6.4.5; and Example 6-9 *Line Plot*.)

6.5.2.4 If it is not possible to fit all of the number line scale marks across the page using brailled number line symbols, it may be necessary to produce the number line as a tactile graphic, thus allowing for closer positioning of the scale marks. If the line plot is still not accommodated by using a tactile number line, the number line should be produced using either the brailled number line symbols or a tactile number line and should be produced as a fold-out page. A transcriber’s note should be inserted to alert the reader to the change in format.

6.5.2.5 The symbols that are shown in print should be replaced by the full braille cell (123456) and be placed one above the other as shown in print. The full braille cells should be placed directly above the tick or scale marks. The full braille cell is used rather than the letter “x” because “stacked” x’s are difficult to count.

6.5.2.6 A transcriber’s note must be added to alert the reader to the change from x’s to full cells.

Example 6-9: Line Plot



Transcriber's Note:

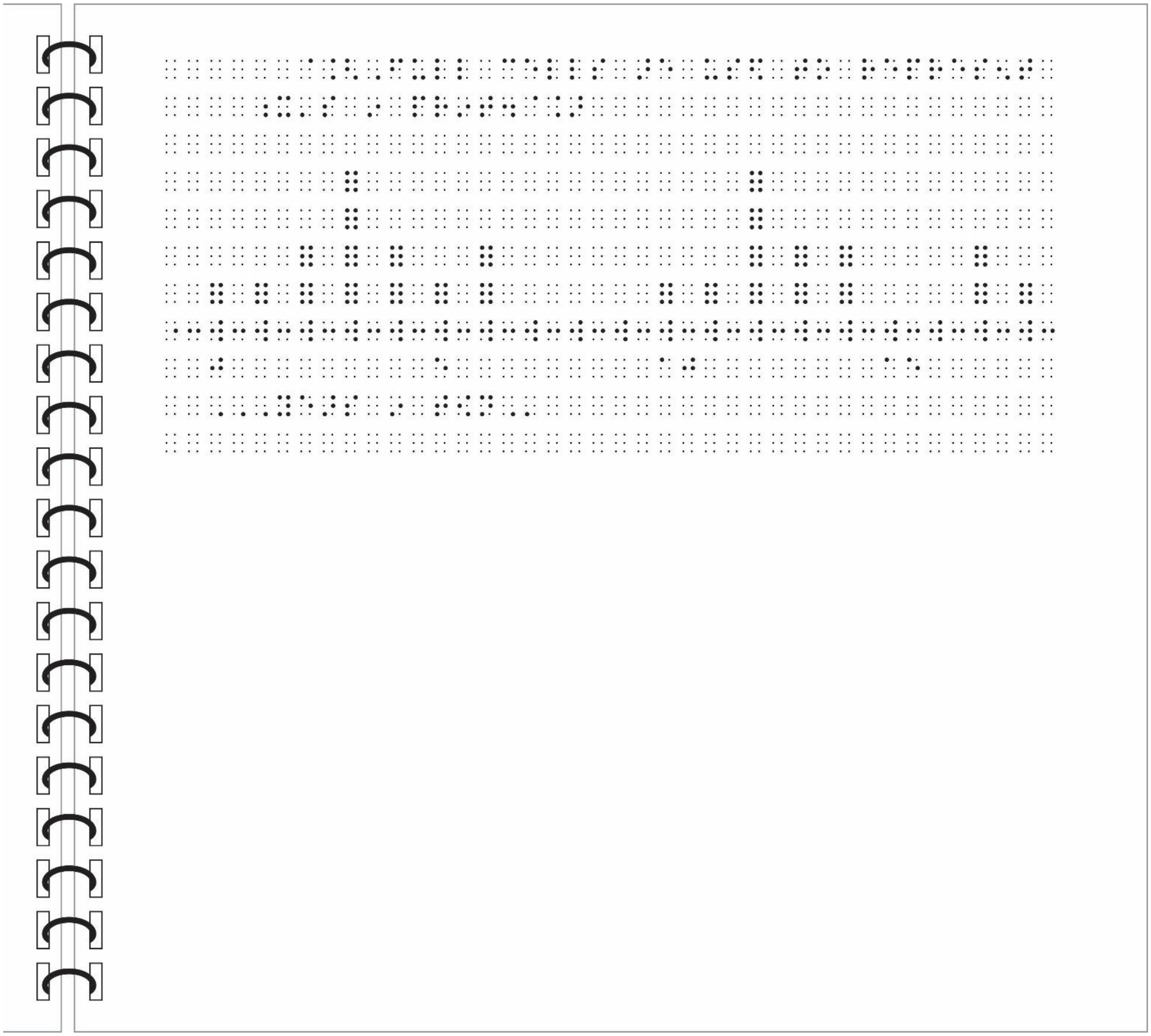
Full cells are used to represent x's in print.

Example 6-9 UEB: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- UEB code
- cropping of the number line to fit on one line and prevent runover (3.7)
- coordinate mark immediately follows the opening line mode indicator (6.5.1.5)
- use of the Special Symbols page to explain braille dot symbols (5.13, 6.5.1.13)
- non-use of numeric indicators with numbers (6.5.1.1)
- non-use of arrowheads as in print (6.5.1.3)
- alignment of the first digit of the numeric label with the coordinate mark (6.5.1.8)
- use of braille symbol representation instead of a tactile graphic (6.5.2.1)
- alignment of the horizontal label (YEARS IN TOWN) with the first value (0) rather than centered as shown in print (6.5.2.3)
- use of a full braille cell to represent the x's shown in print (6.5.2.5)
- alignment of x's (6.5.2.5)
- use of a transcriber's note to explain the substitution of a full braille cell for "x" (6.5.2.6)

Example 6-9 UEB: Line Plot

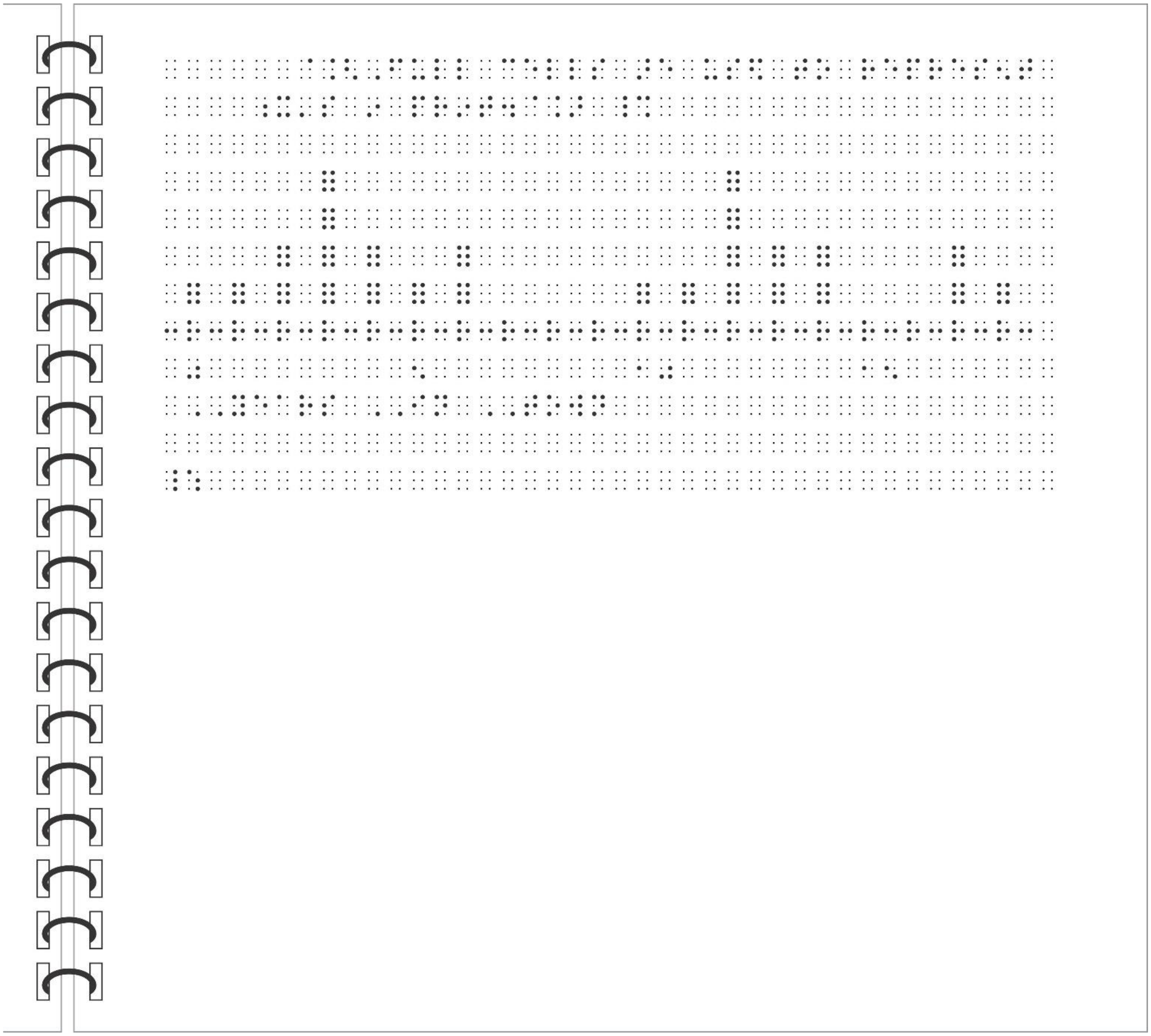


Example 6-9 Nemeth: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- Nemeth Braille Code
- use of Nemeth Code switch indicators to denote the use of the Nemeth Braille Code
- placement of switch indicators as per the Nemeth Code
- cropping of the number line to fit on one line and prevent runover (3.7)
- use of the Special Symbols page to explain braille dot symbols (5.13, 6.5.1.13)
- non-use of numeric indicators with numbers (6.5.1.1)
- non-use of arrowheads as in print (6.5.1.3)
- alignment of the first digit of the numeric label with regular scale mark (6.5.1.8)
- use of braille symbol representation instead of a tactile graphic (6.5.2.1)
- alignment of the horizontal label (YEARS IN TOWN) with the first value (0) rather than centered as shown in print (6.5.2.3)
- use of a full braille cell to represent x's shown in print (6.5.2.5)
- alignment of x's (6.5.2.5)
- use of a transcriber's note to explain the substitution of a full braille cell for "x" (6.5.2.6)

Example 6-9 Nemeth: Line Plot



6.5.3 **Box-and-Whisker Plots** (See Example 6-26: Box-and-Whisker Plot (Horizontal); Example 6-27: Box-and-Whisker Plot (Vertical); Supplement Example 7: Box-and-Whisker Plots With Number Line; Supplement Example 8: Box-and-Whisker Plots Without Number Line.)

Box-and-whisker plots are a type of diagram or graph used to show the distribution of data.

6.5.3.1 Whenever possible, the plot should be presented horizontally or vertically as shown in print.

6.5.3.2 The number line of the box-and-whisker plot should be transcribed following the guidelines and standards in Unit 6, Diagrams for Technical Material, 6.5.1.

When transcribing using Nemeth within UEB contexts, the entire box-and-whisker plot (including the number line, if present, and any associated labels) must be enclosed within Nemeth Code switch indicators even though numbers may not be modified.

6.5.3.3 The number line is the only part of this construction that can be created using braille dot formations. All data above the number line must be presented as a tactile graphic.

6.5.3.4 Keep the plot on one page if possible.

6.5.3.5 The number line and grid lines must be retained if shown in print.

6.5.3.6 The plot should be placed above the number line even if it is shown below the number line in print. If two plots appear below a number line in print, they should be moved above the number line on the tactile graphic. The new position of the plots should be a mirror image of the original position of the plots below the number line. (See Example 6-26: *Box-and-Whisker Plot (Horizontal)*.)

6.5.3.7 All plotted dots should be uniform in size. The plotted dot should be a more significant dot (larger than a braille dot). Note the dot size on the examples.

6.5.3.8 Be consistent in placement of the labels. Labels should not be placed between the number line and the box if possible.

6.5.3.9 If components of the box-and-whisker plot are identified with numbers, the numeric indicator must be transcribed. Align the numeric indicator with the box plot, point symbol, or lead line.

6.5.3.10 Place labels so they clearly identify the item. To accommodate this, the capital indicator may be omitted and explained in a transcriber's note. (See Supplement Example 7: *Box-and-Whisker Plot (with Number Line)*.)

6.5.3.11 The bottom of the box should be no more than 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) above the number line.

6.5.3.12 The horizontal plot may be rearranged into a vertical presentation. The number line for vertical plots is brailled on the left of the page beginning in cell 1. (See Example 6-27: *Box-and-Whisker Plot (Vertical)*.)

- Rotating a number line in a box-and-whisker plot will produce a vertical line that may be thought of as comparable to the *y*-axis of a Cartesian graph. Therefore, the number line should be transcribed with the smallest number at the bottom of the page and increase upward.
- The tick marks should straddle the axis line 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) on either side of the axis line.
- Dots 25 of the value are aligned with the tick mark.
- The plots are rotated so that the plot closest to the horizontal number line remains closest to the vertical number line.

6.5.3.13 If there is not enough room to show the complete plot within the width of the 40 cells or by rearranging it into a vertical presentation, break the plot into separate lines. Indent the runover two cells to the right and begin with the next scale mark. If the runover line starts with a plus or minus value, the scale mark should still align with the first digit of its numeric label.

6.5.3.14 If there are two plots that are related and they must be shown one below the other, line up the values between the two plots if possible.

6.6 Graphs

6.6.1 Graphing Components

6.6.1.1 **Grids**

- Grid lines should be the least distinct lines in a graph.
- Squares of a grid should be no smaller than 3/8 inch (1 centimeter) square or they may appear to be an area texture.
- Some grid lines may be omitted if not necessary to the understanding of the graph.
- When the reader is required to track the values of plotted points or bars, grid lines should be added even if not shown in print.
- The shaded regions within a graph should be distinct enough to recognize the shading, but not so strong as to overpower the grid lines, the plotted items, or the axes. Some graphs have shaded regions in multiple colors. The differences in shading should be shown. (See Example 6-10 and Supplement Example 10: *Shaded Cartesian Graph*.)

6.6.1.2 **Lines**

- Scale marks or tick marks must be 1/2 inch (1.25 centimeters) long and shown 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) long on either side of a line. If tick marks are shown in print, they should be shown in braille.
- If lead lines are used, they should be solid and similar in strength to grid lines.
- A zigzag line that appears on a vertical or horizontal axis line (indicating omitted material in print) must be included in the graph.

6.6.1.3 **Labels**

- Keyed labels should be used instead of lead lines to indicate plotted lines or points.
- If space is needed, some numbers can be omitted from the vertical and horizontal axis lines (e.g., only the

even numbers or only the odd numbers are shown). A transcriber's note explaining this modification is not necessary. No labels should be omitted for bars in a bar graph or histogram.

- In UEB transcriptions, additional space-saving accommodations are given for shortening labels on diagrams, such as removing the dot 5 prefix from minus signs or parentheses. A transcriber's note must be included. (See Example 6-10 and Supplement Example 10: *Shaded Cartesian Graph*.)

6.6.1.4 Hierarchy for accommodating multiple or lengthy numeric values on the horizontal axis:

- crop sections of the graph not required for the concept being shown
- stagger the values on every other line with a lead line from the tick mark to its corresponding value
- omit some of the values (every other value or every 5th value, etc.)
- omit repeated information, such as $, %, °, and abbreviations (yrs, hrs, ft, in)
- if the values all begin with the same digit or digits, omit the repeated digit(s) from the values and note the omission in a transcriber's note (1920, 1930, 1940, etc.—delete the digits 19 from each year)
- omit the numeric indicator before the values and note the omission in a transcriber's note
- key the information

6.6.2 **Cartesian Graphs**

A Cartesian graph is one that shows numerical relationships by drawing points, lines, curves, or geometric shapes on the Cartesian plane. The Cartesian plane consists of two or more axes joined at a single point called the origin and possibly a grid to help index points on the graph. The axes are labeled with single letter variables, commonly *x* or *y*, and the axis lines may divide the graph into quadrants. (See Supplement

Example 9: *Cartesian Graph*; Example 6-10 and Supplement Example 10: *Shaded Cartesian Graph* and Supplement Example 11: *Transformation*.)

The numeric passage indicator and numeric passage terminator are not used with multiple-quadrant Cartesian graphs transcribed in UEB technical. Numeric indicators are not inserted before numbers on the vertical and horizontal axes (usually *x*- and *y*-axes). Any additional labels on the multiple-quadrant Cartesian graph are transcribed in contracted braille with numeric indicators. A note must be included on the Transcriber's Note page alerting the reader of the omission of the numeric passage indicator and numeric passage terminator. Sample transcriber's note.

> The numeric passage indicator and numeric passage terminator are omitted on multiple-quadrant Cartesian graphs.

The opening Nemeth Code indicator and Nemeth Code terminator are not used before and after multiple-quadrant Cartesian graphs transcribed in Nemeth. A note is placed on the Transcriber's Notes page. Sample transcriber's note.

> All multiple-quadrant Cartesian graphs are transcribed in Nemeth Braille Code. The opening Nemeth Code indicator and Nemeth Code terminator are omitted on multiple-quadrant Cartesian graphs.

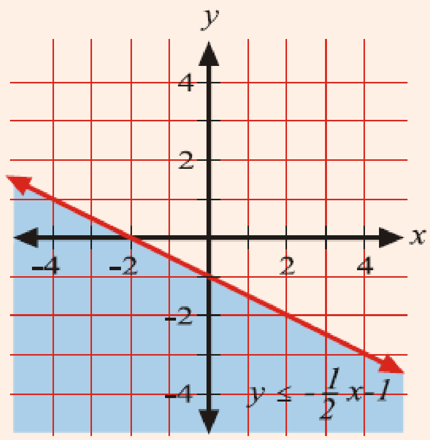
The switch indicators are implied but not inserted in braille. Item identifiers (such as 1. 2. 3. 4. or A. B. C. D.) are not to be considered part of the graphic.

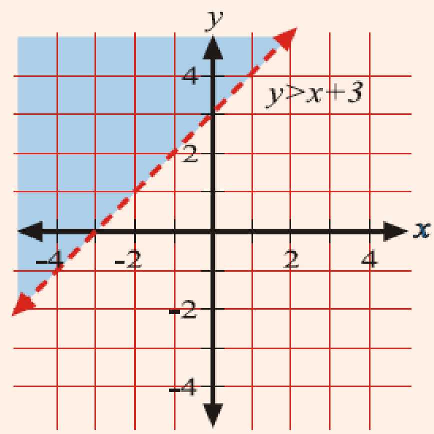
This page is intentionally blank.

Example 6-10: SHADED CARTESIAN GRAPH

SOLUTION

Graph each inequality, and combine the graphs on one coordinate plane.

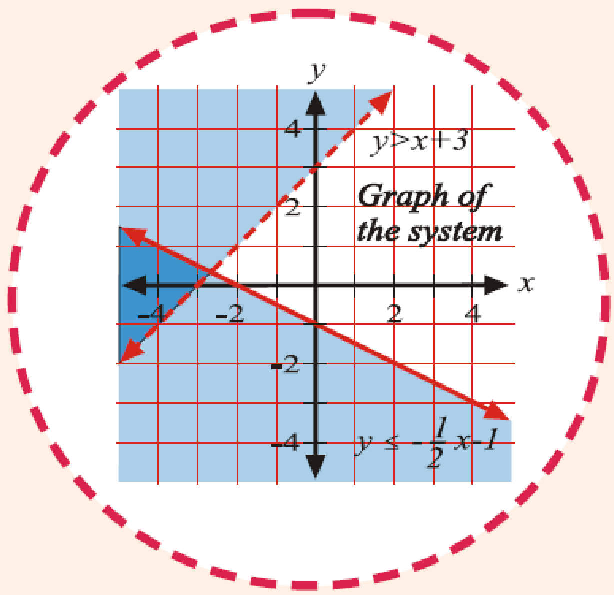




The solution of the system is the intersection of the two shaded regions (the darker region) in the combined graph at right, including the part of the solid boundary line that the intersection region touches.

Try a point from the intersection region such as (-4,0), to test in both inequalities.

$y \le -\frac{1}{2}x-1$ $\qquad$ $y>x+3$

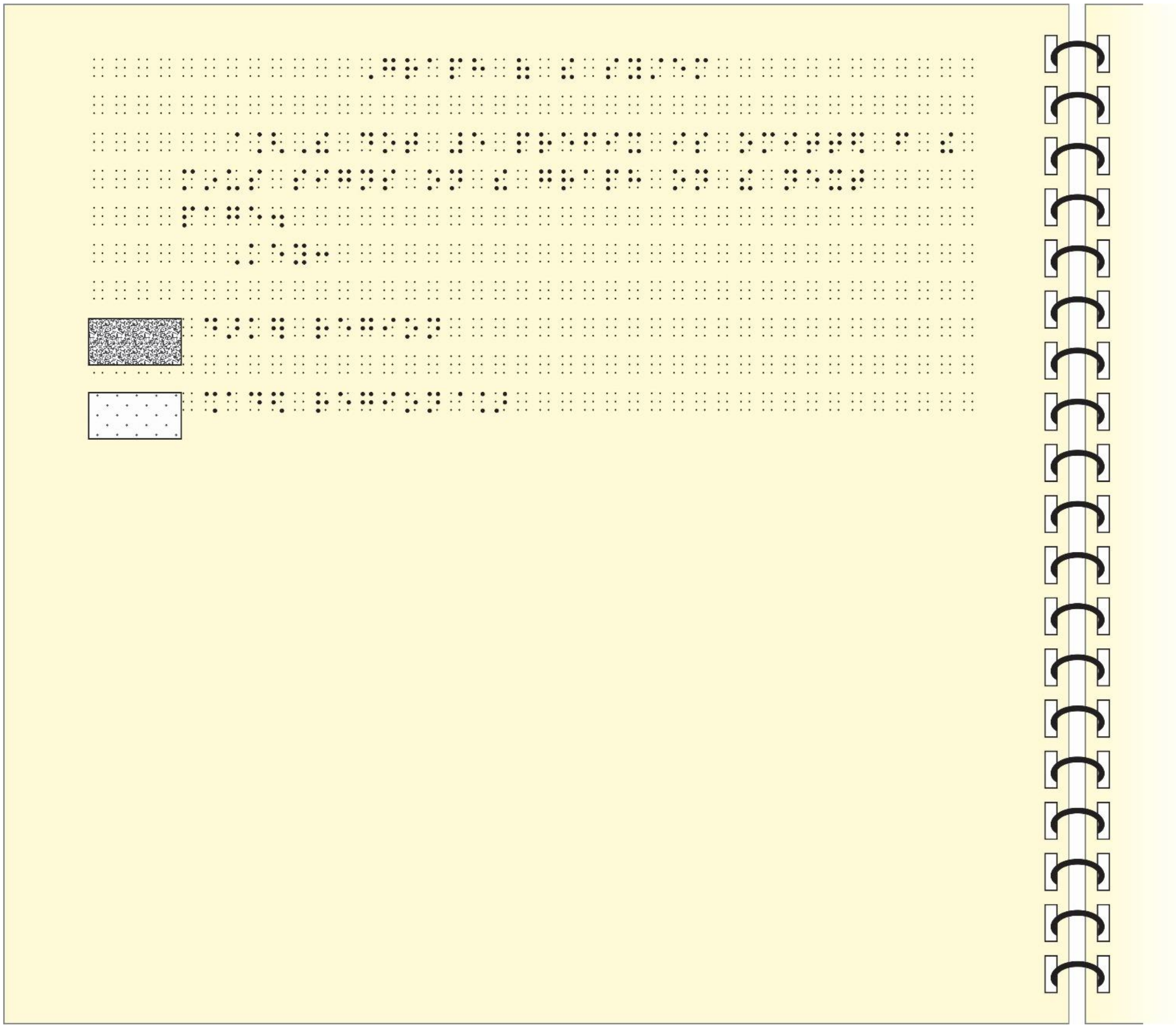


Example 6-10 UEB: Tactile Graphic Design Points

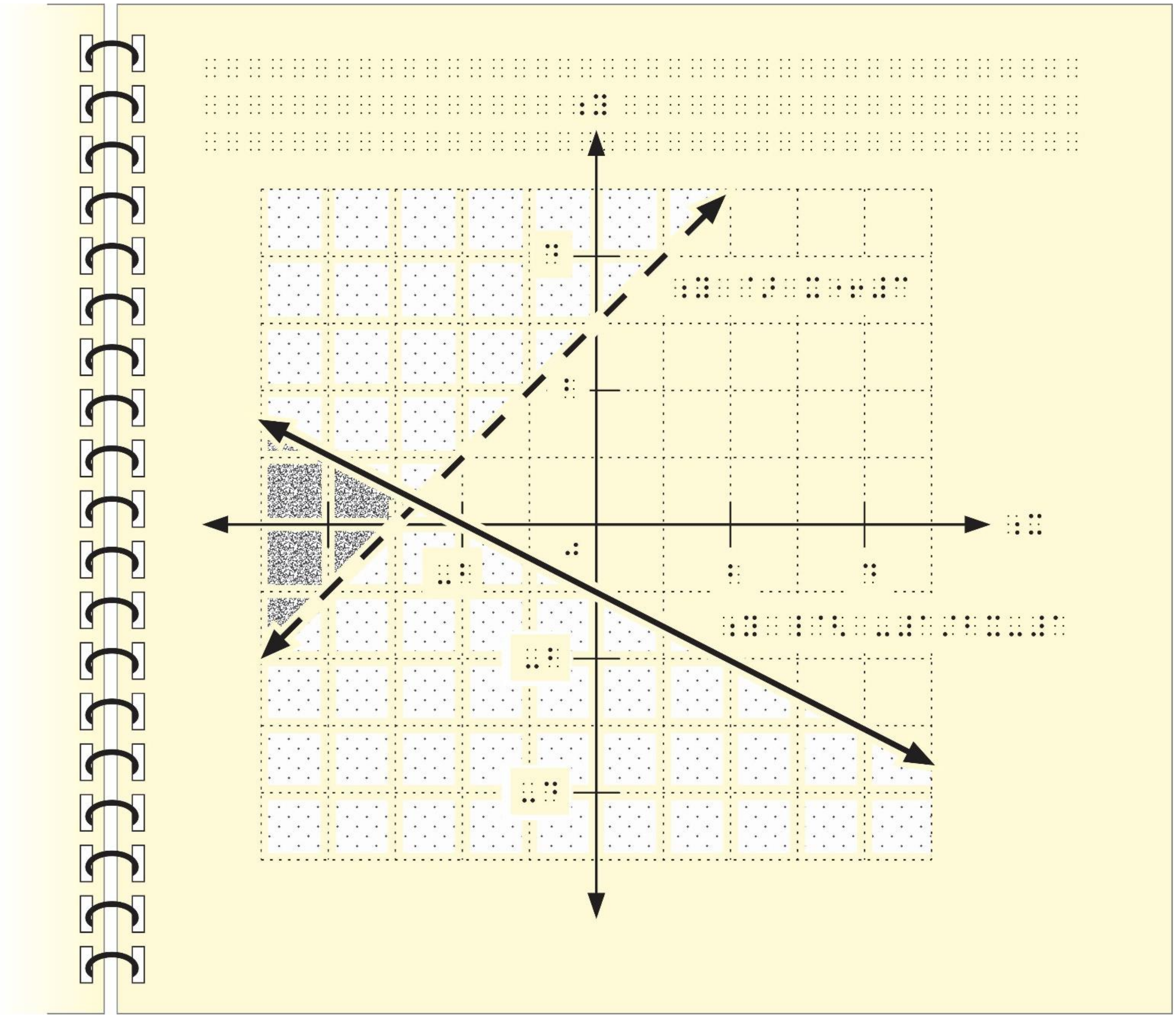
The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- UEB code
- non-use of the numeric passage indicator and numeric passage terminator (6.6.2)
- transcriber's note included to explain omission of the dot 5 prefix from the minus sign (6.6.1.3)
- the -4 label was omitted on the *x*-axis because it would obscure the information given by the dashed plotted line and the shaded area (6.6.1.3)
- elimination of the dashed circle surrounding the print graphic (2.6, 3.7.2)
- use of blank space behind and around labels, on axis lines, and between shading and grid (2.11)
- insertion of key on left-hand facing page (2.20, 5.8.3.2)
- use of a variety of textures to indicate shading (2.22)
- grid lines are discernable within the shaded area (6.6.1.1)
- order of presentation of information: heading, TN, key, tactile graphic (5.2)
- heading is not repeated on the second page of the graphic (5.3.3)
- use of area textures in the key listing (5.9.1.3)
- non-use of numeric indicators for labels on the *x*- and *y*-axes (6.6.2)
- varying heights and textures of lines, least distinct (grid lines) to most distinct (plotted lines) (6.6.2.2)
- tick marks straddling the *x*- and *y*-axis lines 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) on each side (6.6.2.2)
- placement of arrowheads on *x*- and *y*-axes placed beyond the boundary of the grid (6.6.2.2)
- importance of making the solid line solid and the dashed line dashed on the braille graphic to communicate the same mathematical concept being shown in print (6.6.2.2)
- alignment of numeric axis labels in relation to grid lines (6.6.2.3)
- placement of *x*- and *y*-labels for axis lines (6.6.2.3)

Example 6-10 UEB: Shaded Cartesian Graph



Example 6-10 UEB: Shaded Cartesian Graph (cont.)



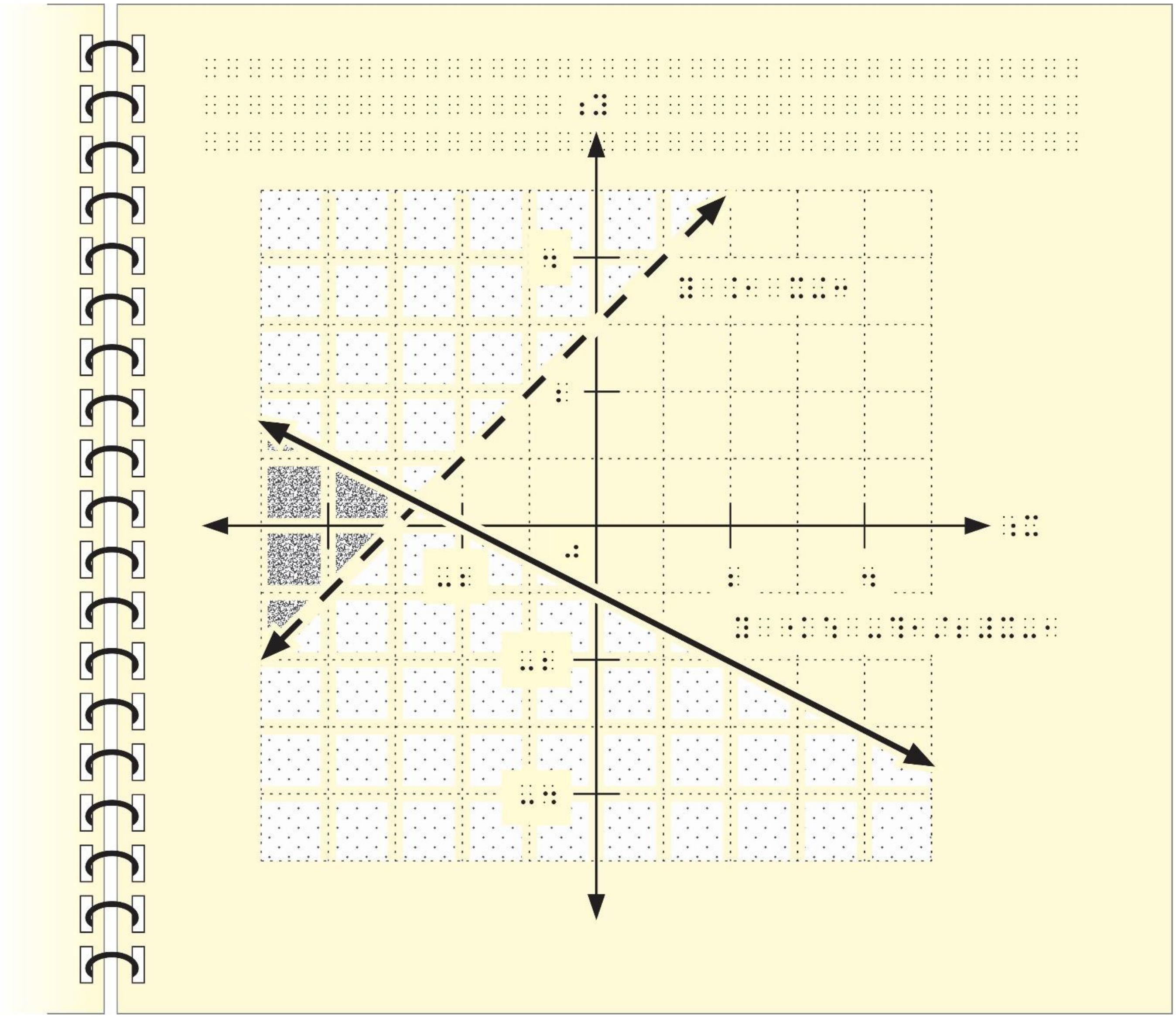
This page is intentionally blank.

Example 6-10 Nemeth: Tactile Graphic Design Points

- Nemeth Braille Code
- non-use of opening Nemeth Code indicator and Nemeth Code terminator (6.6.2)
- elimination of dashed circle surrounding print graphic (2.6, 3.7.2)
- use of blank space behind and around labels, on axis lines, and between shading and grid (2.11)
- the -4 label was omitted on the *y*-axis because it would obscure the information given by the dashed plotted line and the shaded area. (6.6.1.3)
- insertion of key on left-hand facing page (2.20, 5.8.3.2)
- use of a variety of textures to indicate shading (2.22)
- grid lines are discernable within the shaded area (6.6.1.1)
- order of presentation of information: heading, key, tactile graphic (5.2)
- heading is not repeated on second page of graphic (5.3.3)
- use of area textures in key listing (5.9.1.3)
- non-use of numeric indicators for labels on the *x*- and *y*-axes (6.6.2.1)
- varying heights and textures of lines, least distinct (grid lines) to most distinct (plotted lines) (6.6.2.2)
- tick marks straddling the *x*- and *y*-axis lines 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) on each side (6.6.2.2)
- placement of arrowheads on *x*- and *y*-axes placed beyond the boundary of the grid (6.6.2.2)
- importance of making the solid line solid and the dashed line dashed on the braille graphic to communicate the same mathematical concept being shown in print (6.6.2.2)
- alignment of numeric axis labels in relation to grid lines (6.6.2.3)
- placement of *x*- and *y*-labels for axis lines (6.6.2.3)

Example 6-10 Nemeth: Shaded Cartesian Graph

Example 6-10 Nemeth: Shaded Cartesian Graph (cont.)



6.6.2.1 Numeric indicators are shown on horizontal- and vertical-axis values for all single-quadrant Cartesian graphs. It is permissible to omit the numeric indicator due to space constraints. A transcriber's note is required to explain the omission.

6.6.2.2 **Lines**

- Grid lines should be the least distinct lines on the graph.
- The *x*-axis (horizontal) and *y*-axis (vertical) lines must be tactually distinct and stronger than the grid lines.
- Tick marks on the horizontal and vertical axis lines may be the same line strength as the horizontal and vertical axis lines. They should cross the axis lines 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) on either side of axis lines. If tick marks are shown in print, they should be shown in braille.
- Axis lines with arrows indicating the indefinite nature of the axes of the graph should be positioned so that the arrowheads are outside the boundary of the grid. If space does not permit the placement of the arrowheads outside the grid, the tips of the arrowheads may be positioned to reach the outermost grid lines.
- The plotted lines should be the strongest and most tactually distinct lines on the graph.
- The plotted lines should be solid unless the print shows a broken line. The style of the plotted lines in print may have mathematical significance and should be maintained on the tactile graphic.
- Each plotted line must be tactually distinct for the reader to follow it easily. Tooling on foil (See Appendix D.) or collage (See Appendix D.) production methods provide the clearest results if the lines are close together or if there are a number of lines that cross over each other.
- Plotted points on lines or objects must be distinct from the lines or objects on which they are placed. It is especially important for microcapsule and computer-

embossed graphics to use a 1/8-inch (3-millimeter) blank space all around a point to separate it from the surrounding material. The point should not be smaller than 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) in diameter.

6.6.2.3 **Labels**

- The *x*-axis line (horizontal line) should be labeled at the right end of the axis line or, if space does not permit, the *y* can be placed above the *x*-axis line.
- On the *x*-axis, dots 123 of the first digit of the number should align with the grid line or tick mark. If a minus sign is present, it should be placed to the left of the grid line or tick mark.
- The *y*-axis line (vertical line) should be labeled at the top of the axis or, if space does not permit, the *y* can be placed to the left of the *y*-axis line.
- On the *y*-axis, dots 25 of the number should align with the grid line or tick mark.
- If space is needed, some numbers can be omitted from the *x*-axis and *y*-axis lines (e.g., only the even numbers or only the odd numbers are shown). A transcriber's note explaining this modification is not necessary. (See §6.6.1.4.)
- Label the point of origin as shown in print (number 0 or letter O). Place below *x*-axis and to the left of the *y*-axis.
- When determining if the point of origin (in print) is a zero or the letter "O," if there are no numbers on the axes, then the point of origin is the letter O. If there are numbers on the axes, then the origin is the number 0. If the origin is not labeled in print, it should not be labeled in braille.
- Where possible, coordinate point labels such as A, B, C, and D should be placed to the top left of the points to which they refer. Where a label would cover or interfere with vital information (e.g., grid or axis line), the label may be placed to the top right of the point/line. If

neither position is possible, the label should be placed to the bottom left or, lastly, bottom right of the object. (See Supplement Example 9: *Cartesian Graph*.)

- If labels to lines or curves are lengthy, they may be keyed.

6.6.3 Transformations

The four basic transformations are a translation (slide), a reflection (flip), a rotation (turn), and a dilation (shrinking or enlarging). The background grid is usually shown using lines or evenly spaced dots. (See Supplement Example 11: *Transformation*.)

If the transformation is shown on multiple-quadrant Cartesian graphs, the UEB numeric passage indicator and terminator or the open Nemeth switch indicator and terminator are not required. A note is placed on the Transcriber's Notes page indicating the omission.

6.6.3.1 When the transformation is shown on multiple quadrants, the numeric indicator should be omitted from the values on the *x*- and *y*-axis lines.

6.6.3.2 Grid

- On a dotted grid (rather than dashed or solid), small, significantly raised dots should be added at the intersection of horizontal and vertical values. A plotted point, such as the point of rotation, should be larger and more prominent than the background dots.
- To enable easier counting of increments, it is advisable to have at least one empty row and/or one empty column of the grid around the transformation figures if the shape is solid or if the grid is not shown through the shape.
- With younger students, a commercially available geoboard or graph board may be useful to help them understand transformations.

6.6.3.3 **Lines**

- Grid lines should be the least distinct lines on the graph.
- The *x*-axis (horizontal) and *y*-axis (vertical) lines must be tactually distinct and stronger than the grid lines.
- Tick marks on the horizontal and vertical axis lines may be the same line strength as the horizontal and vertical axis lines. They should cross the axis lines 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) on either side of axis lines. If tick marks are shown in print, they should be shown in braille.
- Axis lines with arrows indicating the indefinite nature of the axes of the graph should be positioned so that the arrowheads are outside the boundary of the grid. If space does not permit the placement of the arrowheads outside the grid, the tips of the arrowheads may be positioned to reach the outermost grid lines.
- The plotted lines of the figures should be the strongest lines on the graph.

6.6.3.4 **Labels**

- Numeric indicators should not precede the numbers on the axis lines.
- On the *x*-axis, dots 123 of the first digit of the number should align with the grid line or tick mark. If a minus sign is present, it should be placed to the left of the grid line or tick mark.
- On the *y*-axis, dots 25 should align with the grid line or tick mark.
- Label the point of origin as shown in print (number 0 or letter O). Place below the *x*-axis and to the left of the *y*-axis.
- When determining if the point of origin (in print) is a zero or the letter "O," if there are no numbers on the axes, then the point of origin is the letter O. If there are numbers on the axes, then the origin is the number

0. If the origin is not labeled in print, it should not be labeled in braille.

- If labels to lines or curves are lengthy, they may be keyed. (See §6.6.1.4.)

6.6.3.5 **Plotted Figures**

- The plotted figures should be tactually distinct from the horizontal and vertical axis lines and grid lines as well as all other plotted information on the graph.
- Where possible, outline the shape of the figure rather than making it solid, enabling the grid to be counted inside the figure. Make sure that the outline shape is distinct enough to avoid confusion between the grid and/or the horizontal and vertical axis lines.
- When necessary, differentiate the figures by using different texture fills or by using different line textures. (See Example 6-10 and Supplement 10: *Shaded Cartesian Graph*.)
- Do not place horizontal or vertical coordinate values inside a figure.
- When a detailed drawing is shown in print (e.g., house, sailboat, eagle), a simplified shape should be substituted. When the original print diagram contains a point of rotation (e.g., the chimney on a house) a point of rotation must be retained on the simplified shape. For example, a point or dot could be placed on top of a pentagon (house) to represent the chimney of a house. Therefore, when the pentagon is transformed or rotated around a fixed point or reflected across an axis line, the point of reference is maintained for the reader. A transcriber's note may be included to explain the modification.
- To show direction of movement, use a line texture different from that used for horizontal and vertical axes.

6.6.4 **Line Graphs** (Single-Quadrant Cartesian Graphs)

A line graph is comprised of a horizontal axis and a vertical axis labeled with a word or word(s) (e.g., “time” or “distance”) or a combination of a letter and word(s). For example, “time (t)” or “distance (d)” may be used. Line graphs are usually plotted in the upper right quadrant, or quadrant I. (See Example 6-11: *Line Graph.*)

6.6.4.1 If the values are numeric, use the numeric indicator regardless of whether the graph is transcribed in UEB or Nemeth Code.

6.6.4.2 **Grid**. When it is necessary to track the values of plotted points, it may be helpful to add grid lines even if not shown in print. If grid lines are added, tick marks shown in print may be omitted.

6.6.4.3 **Key**

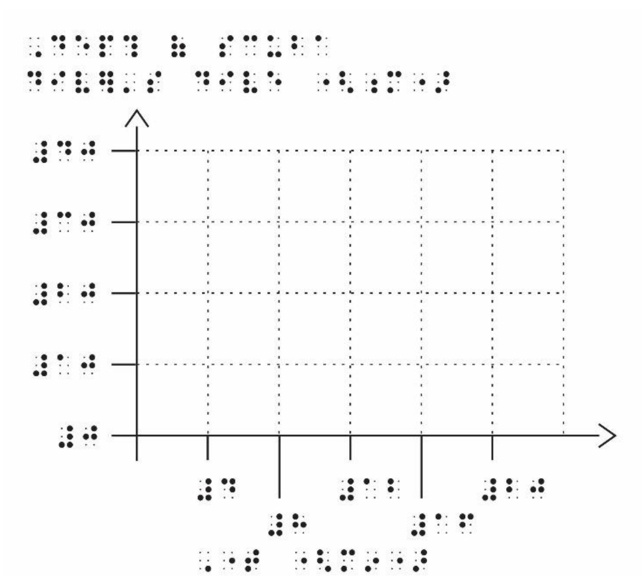
- A key to the different line textures should be placed before the graph. If possible, place the key and the graph on the same page.
- The key should be listed in the order the lines appear from top to bottom or left to right on the graph. (See Unit 5, Braille Formats for Tactile Graphics, §5.7.3.)

6.6.4.4 **Lines**

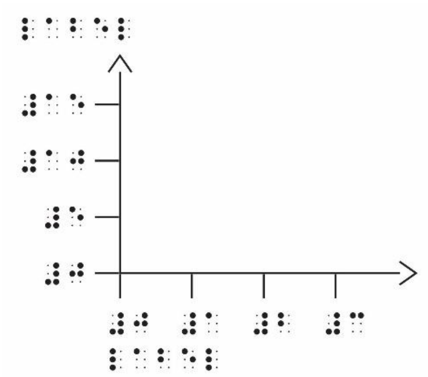
- Grid lines should be the least distinct lines on the graph.
- The *x*-axis (horizontal) and *y*-axis (vertical) lines must be tactually distinct and stronger than the grid lines.
- If tick marks are shown in print, they should be shown in braille. Tick marks on the horizontal and vertical axis lines may be the same line strength as the horizontal and vertical axis lines. They should straddle the axis lines 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) on either side of the axis lines. If grid lines are added, tick marks shown in print may be omitted.

6.6.4.5 **Labels**

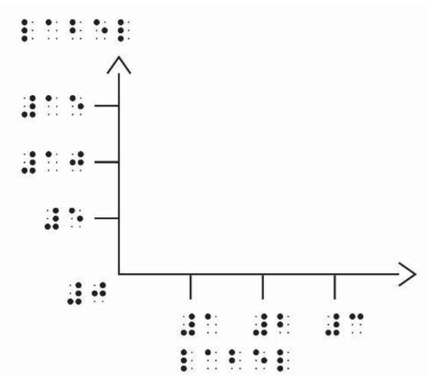
- The heading label for the horizontal values should be placed below the values and should be left-justified with the first cell of the first horizontal value. A blank line is not required between the values and the label.
- The heading for the vertical values should be aligned with the first cell of the vertical values. If the label is more than 20 cells, divide the label between lines. The runover should be left-aligned with the first label line. A blank line is not necessary following the label.
- On the horizontal axis, dots 456 of the first cell of the value should be lined up with the vertical grid line or tick mark and be spaced 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) from the tick mark or axis line. If the value is a negative number, the minus sign will be placed to the left of the vertical grid line or tick mark.
- It may be necessary to stagger the horizontal values, placing alternating values one or two lines below the horizontal line comprising the bottom edge of the graph. When this practice is used, it also may be necessary to use a lead line from the horizontal axis to the values that are placed on the lower line of the staggered labels. (See §6.6.1.4.)



- On the vertical axis, dots 25 should be aligned with the grid line or tick mark on the vertical axis line and be spaced 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) from the tick mark or axis line.
- Numerical values for the vertical axis line should be equally spaced and right-aligned.
- Follow print for the placement of the zero when both the *x*-axis and *y*-axis lines are labeled.



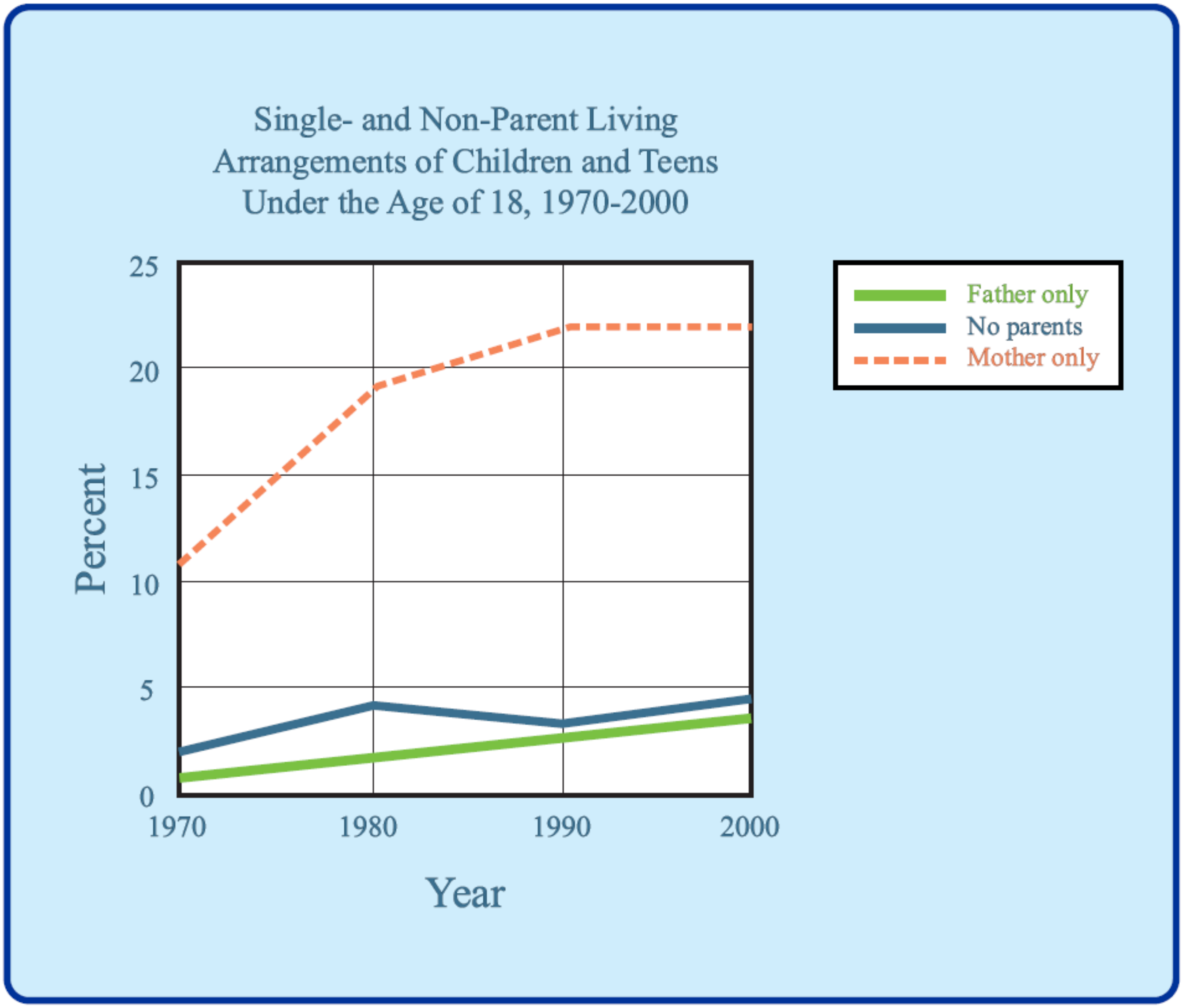
- When a single zero applies to both the *x*-axis and *y*-axis lines, the zero is placed to the left and below the origin. No tick mark is required. The heading label for the horizontal values should be placed below the values and should be left-justified with the first cell of the value after zero.



6.6.4.6 **Plotted Lines**

- The plotted lines should be the strongest and most tactually distinct lines on the graph.
- Plotted lines must be tactually distinct from each other for the reader to follow them easily. Tooling on foil (See Appendix D.) or collage (See Appendix D.) production methods provide the clearest results if the lines are close together or if a number of lines cross over each other. Alternatively, the graph may have to be shown in two parts as long as the concept of the graph remains clear.

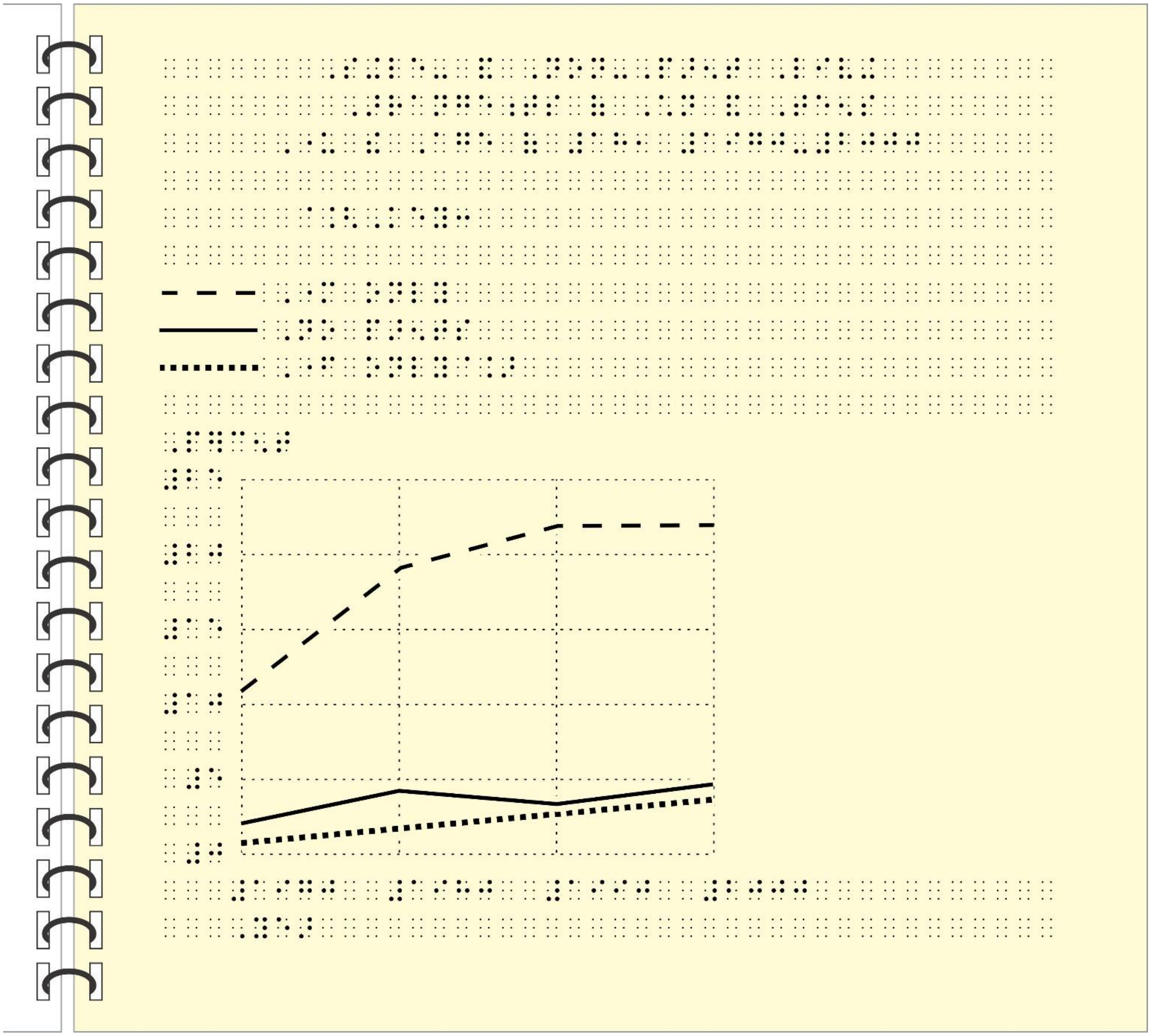
Example 6-11: Line Graph



Example 6-11 UEB: Tactile Graphic Design Points

- UEB code
- use of numeric indicators on value labels (6.6.4.1)
- inclusion of grid lines as shown in print (6.6.4.2)
- title, key, and line graph on one braille page (6.6.4.3)
- listing of keyed line symbols in order of appearance on the graph from top to bottom, not in alphabetic order (6.6.4.3)
- non-use of tick marks as in print (6.6.4.4)
- spacing between value labels and the axis line at least 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) (6.6.4.5)
- placement of the vertical axis heading label aligned with the first cell of vertical values (6.6.4.5)
- placement of vertical axis values right-justified and dots 25 lined up with grid lines (6.6.4.5)
- placement of the horizontal axis heading label aligned with the first cell of horizontal value (6.6.4.5)
- placement of horizontal axis values aligned with dots 456 of grid lines (6.6.4.5)
- varying heights and textures used for grid lines and plotted lines (6.6.4.6)

Example 6-11 UEB: Line Graph



6.6.5 **Scatter Plots** (Single-Quadrant Cartesian Graphs)

A graph showing a set of points, each based on a pair of data, is called a scatter plot. (See Supplement Example 13: *Scatter Plot*.)

6.6.5.1 If the values are numeric, use the numeric indicator regardless of whether the scatter plot is transcribed in UEB or Nemeth Code. It is permissible to omit the numeric indicators due to space constraints.

6.6.5.2 It is essential that the exact distribution and number of dots presented in the print be replicated in the tactile version of a scatter plot.

6.6.5.3 Numerical values are usually not shown on the axis lines, but if shown, their placement should be produced as described in Line Graphs. (See Unit 6, Diagrams for Technical Material, §6.6.4.)

6.6.5.4 **Grid**. The purpose of scatter plots is to show correlations; therefore, there is usually no need to add grid lines.

6.6.5.5 **Lines**

- The horizontal and vertical axis lines should be the same texture.
- If the label for the vertical axis line is placed to the left of the line, the line must be at least 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) away from the label. If the label is placed above the vertical axis line, the line should be indented two braille cells from the first cell of the label.

6.6.5.6 **Labels**

- The heading label for the horizontal axis should line up with (start below) the vertical axis line.
- The heading label for the vertical axis line can be placed to the left of and midway down the vertical axis line. It may also be placed to the left of and above the vertical axis line. If the label is more than 20 cells, divide the label between lines. The runover should be left-aligned with the first label line. A blank line is not necessary following the label.

6.6.5.7 **Plotted Points**

- The size of the plotted point symbol will be determined by the spacing required between the plotted points.
- Do not use the 1/8-inch blank space around the points if it distorts the distribution of the clustered (plotted) points.
- Plotted points may overlap.

6.6.6 **Bar Graphs** (Single-Quadrant Cartesian Graphs)

A bar graph uses the lengths of bars to represent the quantitative relationship between horizontal and vertical values. The values on one of the axes are often numeric with the other values being descriptive. The orientation of the bars may be horizontal or vertical. (See Supplement Example 14: *Bar Graph*.)

6.6.6.1 The orientation of the graph should always match that of the print unless it is impossible to do so. If the orientation is changed in braille to accommodate the graph, a transcriber's note must be added explaining this change. Sample transcriber's note.

> In print, bars are shown vertically. In braille, the bars are shown horizontally.

6.6.6.2 If the values are numeric, use the numeric indicator regardless of whether the bar graph is transcribed in UEB or Nemeth Code.

6.6.6.3 **Grid**. When it is necessary to be able to track the values of the bars, it would be helpful to add grid lines that are perpendicular to the bars, even if not shown in print. If grid lines are added, tick marks shown in print may be omitted.

6.6.6.4 **Key**

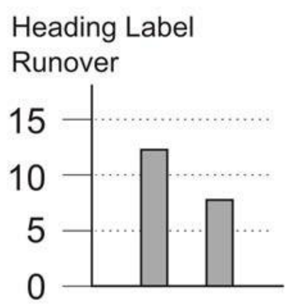
- A key to the different bar textures should be placed before the graph. If possible, place the key and the graph on the same page.
- The key should be listed in the order the bars appear from top to bottom or left to right on the graph. (See Unit 5, Braille Formats for Tactile Graphics, §5.7.3.)

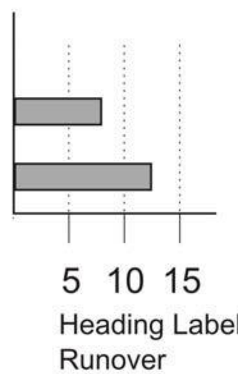
6.6.6.5 **Lines**

- Grid lines should be the least distinct lines on the graph.
- The *x*-axis (horizontal) and *y*-axis (vertical) lines must be tactually distinct and stronger than the grid lines.
- If tick marks are shown in print, they should be shown in braille. Tick marks on the horizontal and vertical axis lines may be the same line strength as the horizontal and vertical axis lines. They should cross the axis lines 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) on either side of the lines. If grid lines are added, tick marks shown in print may be omitted.

6.6.6.6 **Labels**

- The heading label for the horizontal values should be placed below the values and should be left-justified with the first cell of the first horizontal value.





- The heading label for the vertical values should be aligned with the first cell of the vertical values. If the label is more than 20 cells, divide the label between lines. The runover should be left-aligned with the first label line. A blank line is not necessary following the label. This placement should be consistent throughout a text. (See Supplement Example 15: *Histogram*.)
- Vertical Scale

If the bars are depicted horizontally, the labels should be centered with the width of the bar or set of bars, and runovers, if necessary, are left-justified with the line above.

If the labels are descriptive (i.e., words) the descriptions should be left-aligned, with an appropriate number of guide dots inserted between shorter words and the vertical axis line. Leave one blank cell before inserting a minimum of two unspaced guide dots (dot 5s).

EXCEPTION: When producing a bar graph using braille symbols, the runover is indented two cells to the right of the line above, as described in 6.6.6.7 below.

If the labels are numeric, align according to place value.

If the bars are depicted vertically, dots 25 of the value should be aligned with the horizontal grid line or tick mark.

- Horizontal Scale

If the bars are depicted vertically, the labels should be centered with the width of the bar or set of bars. If the label does not fit within the width of a bar, place alternate labels on the line below. A lead line is required from an additional row(s) of labels to the bar or set of bars to which it pertains.

If the bars are depicted horizontally, dots 456 of the first cell of the value should be aligned with the vertical grid line or tick mark. It may be necessary to stagger the horizontal values, placing the values one or two lines below the horizontal axis. A lead line from those values not directly under their corresponding grid line or tick mark will be necessary. (See §6.6.1.4.)

- A minimum space of 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) is required between the values or labels and the axis line, grid line, or tick mark.
- If values are lengthy, they may be keyed. (See §6.6.1.4.)

6.6.6.7 Bars in a Tactile Graphic

- The bars should be separated or joined in braille as they are in print. The bars or sets of bars should be separated enough to be able to read the background grid, yet close enough to readily compare the overall length of bars.

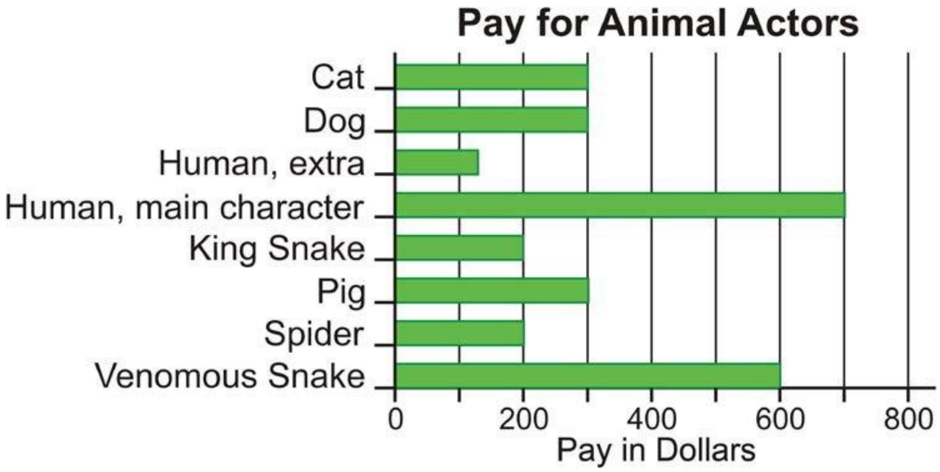
- The bars should be a minimum of 3/8 inch (1 centimeter) wide, regardless of what is shown in print. The bars should be a maximum of 1 inch (2.5 centimeters) wide. This guideline does not apply to histograms.
- If it is necessary to distinguish between different sets of bars (e.g., bars with different shading in print), tactually distinct area textures must be used.
- Care must be taken in choosing the texture for the bars so that the texture in the key matches the density of that shown on the bar itself.

6.6.6.8 **Bars Using Braille Symbols**

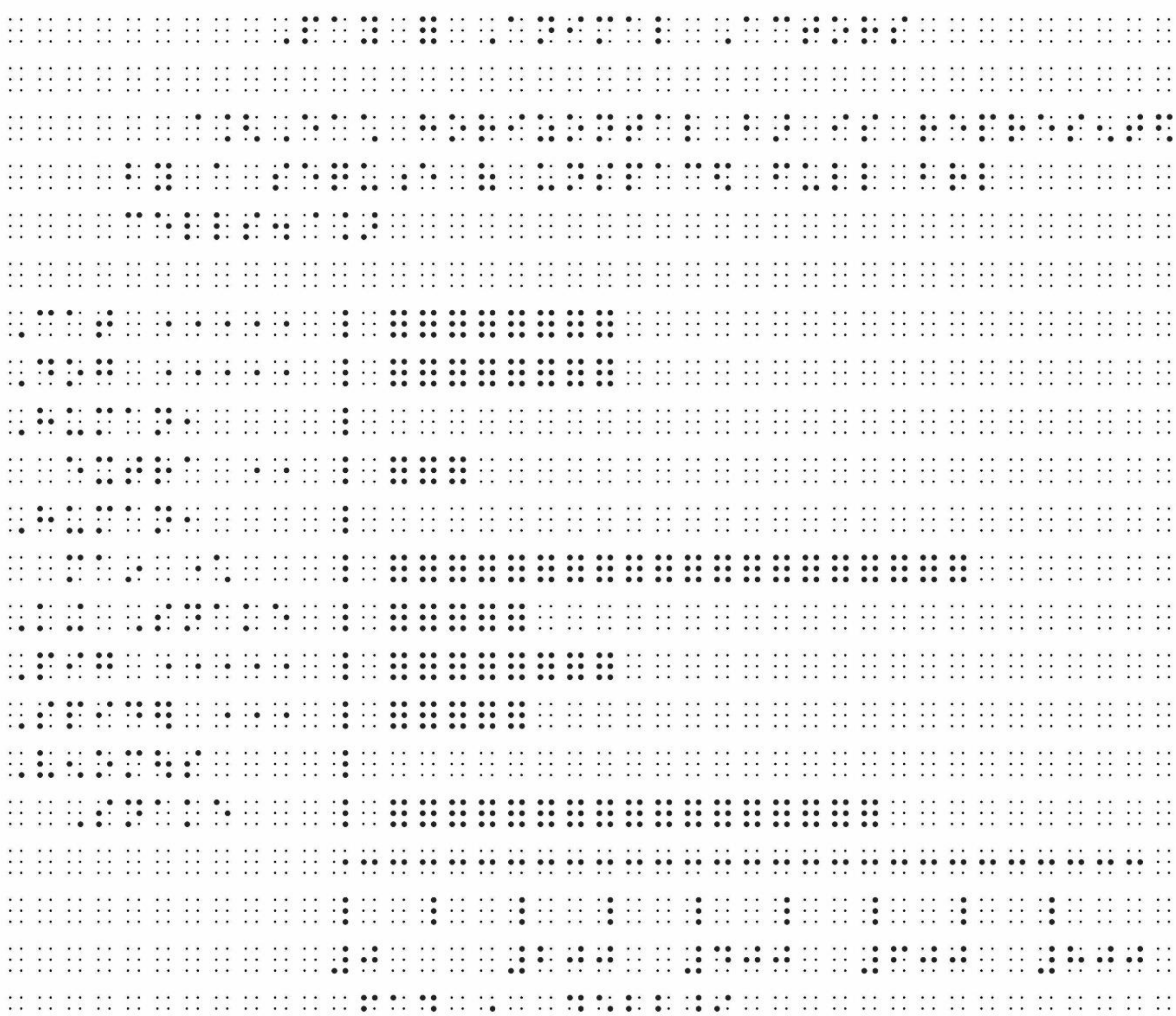
- The use of braille symbols to represent bars should be used only for grades 4 and up.
- Simple bar graphs that have only whole units may be transcribed using braille symbols.
- No grid lines are shown.
- The vertical axis line should be represented by a vertical line of unspaced braille symbols (dots 456). One blank cell should precede and follow the vertical line.
- The horizontal axis line should be represented by the horizontal line mode or separation line (dot 5 and an unspaced series of dots 25). No blank line is required above or below this axis line.
- Runovers of labels for the horizontal bars are indented two cells to the right of the line above.
- The value of each bar should consist of unspaced full braille cells (123456) and should be explained in a transcriber's note before the graph. Grade 1 passage indicators are not required.

- Tick marks are omitted on the vertical axis, and the label (or runover if present) is centered with the bar.
- Tick marks for the horizontal axis are shown by using dots 456 below the line, and the first cell of the value is lined up with the tick mark.

Example 6-12: Pay for Animal Actors Bar Graph



Example 6-12 UEB: Pay for Animal Actors Bar Graph



6.6.7 **Histograms** (Single-Quadrant Cartesian Graphs)

A histogram is a bar graph that combines data into equal intervals. (See Supplement Example 15: *Histogram*.)

6.6.7.1 If the values are numeric, use the numeric indicator regardless of whether the histogram is transcribed in UEB or Nemeth.

6.6.7.2 The shape of the print graphic display is important and should not be distorted.

6.6.7.3 If the bars are depicted vertically, align the value at the left edge of the bar since each bar represents a range of values on the horizontal scale.

6.6.7.4 No space must be left between adjacent bars, as the data are continuous. It is not necessary to show the variance in color.

6.6.7.5 The tactile rendition of a histogram should be based on the same criteria that apply to bar graphs. (See Unit 6, Diagrams for Technical Material, §6.6.6.)

6.6.8 **Graphing Calculators**

6.6.8.1 Calculator keys should not be reproduced as a tactile graphic. Keys that are represented as shapes with interior print signs should be transcribed following either *UEB Guidelines for Technical Material* or *Graphing Calculator Guidelines* (when transcribing in Nemeth Code).

6.6.8.2 Graphing calculator screens may show many graphs that should be reproduced.

6.6.8.3 When print shows the graphic displays such as geometric shapes or plotted graphs that are generated by graphing calculators or computer screens, a tactile graphic representation must be provided in braille. When the displayed information on the screen shows only data or tables, no tactile graphic is required.

6.6.8.4 When the screen display uses an “x” to show a plotted point, the tactile graphic should use a solid dot.

6.6.8.5 The *x*-axis and the *y*-axis should be clearly shown in the tactile graphic even if obscured in the digital display.

6.6.8.6 On the screen display in print, the labels for the vertical and horizontal axes are placed differently depending on the software used. In the tactile graphic, these labels should always be placed as indicated in Unit 6, Diagrams for Technical Materials, 6.6.1.3.

6.6.8.7 When both “Pencil and Paper” and electronic graphs are shown, a border indicating the electronic screen may be placed around the digital display to differentiate between the two types of graphs.

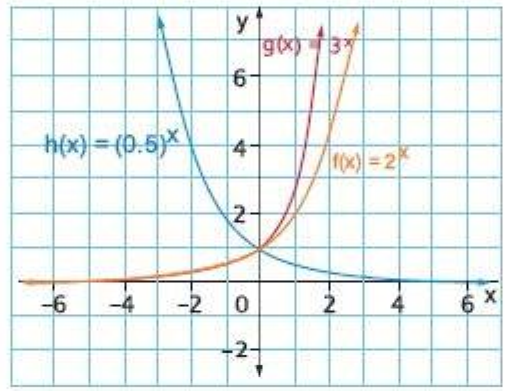
Examples for 6.6.8: Both Method 1 and Method 2 must be shown as tactile graphics according to 6.6 Graphs.

SOLUTION

Method 1: Use Pencil and Paper

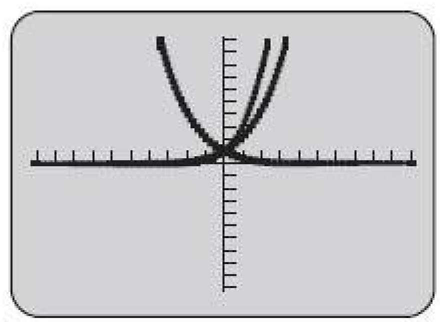
Create a table of values, then sketch each graph.

x	f(x)	g(x)	h(x)
-3	0.3125	0.037037	8
-2	0.25	0.111111	4
-1	0.5	0.333333	2
0	1	1	1
1	2	3	0.5
2	4	9	0.25
3	8	27	0.125



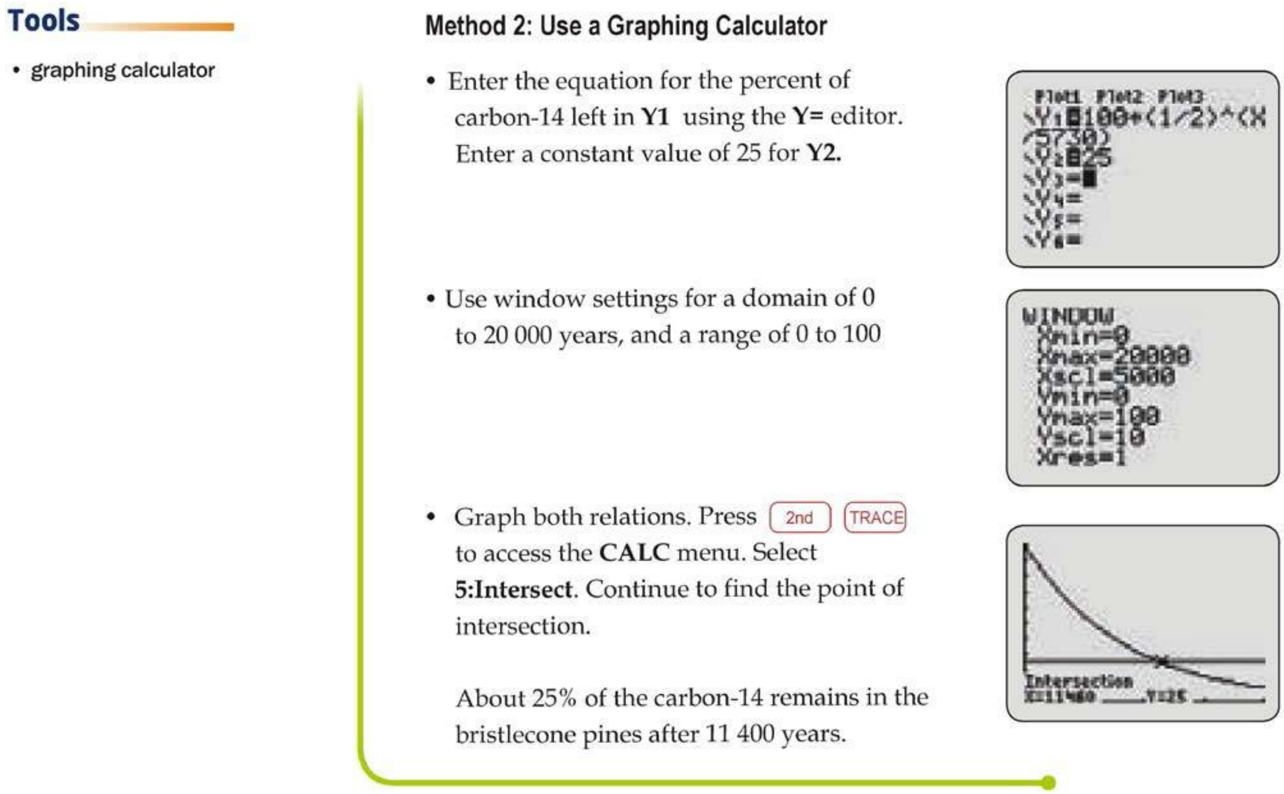
Method 2: Use a Graphing Calculator

Use the **Y=** editor to enter the three functions. Press GRAPH to display the graphs. Once you have entered the functions, press 2nd, then GRAPH to access the table of values.



From: McGraw-Hill Ryerson, Functions and Applications 11
Copyright © 2008

In the example below, **only** the third graphing calculator screen should be rendered as a tactile graphic.



Tools

- graphing calculator

Method 2: Use a Graphing Calculator

- Enter the equation for the percent of carbon-14 left in **Y1** using the **Y=** editor. Enter a constant value of 25 for **Y2.**
- Use window settings for a domain of 0 to 20 000 years, and a range of 0 to 100
- Graph both relations. Press 2nd TRACE to access the **CALC** menu. Select **5:Intersect**. Continue to find the point of intersection.

About 25% of the carbon-14 remains in the bristlecone pines after 11 400 years.

From: McGraw-Hill Ryerson, Functions and Applications 11 Copyright © 2008

6.7 Pictographs

Pictographs represent numeric data through use of pictures, partial pictures, or both.

6.7.1 If the values are numeric, use the numeric indicator regardless of whether the pictograph is transcribed in UEB or Nemeth Code.

6.7.2 The explanation for a pictograph tells the number that each picture represents and is often placed below the graph in print. Move the explanation above the graph. Begin in cell 1 and use the wording shown in print.

6.7.3 The print information should be transcribed in braille without interpretation because additional information may “give away” an answer.

6.7.4 A frame may surround the data in the print graph.

If the tactile graphic is produced as embossed braille, the top line is represented by a top box line (2356), and the bottom line is represented by a bottom box line (1245). (See Example 6-13: *Average Life Span Pictograph*.)

If the pictograph is produced as a tactile graphic, the frame is not included.

6.7.5 The row heading must begin in cell 1 with runovers in cell 3. Determine where the longest row heading ends. Space over one cell width and begin the pictures or symbols for all braille lines in the cell that vertically aligns with this one.

6.7.6 Guide dots may be inserted at the end of a row heading. Leave one blank cell before inserting a minimum of two unspaced guide dot symbols (dot 5s).

6.7.7 One blank cell must be left between each picture or symbol.

6.7.8 When representing a partial picture, maintain the orientation and proportion of the picture.

6.7.9 For kindergarten through grade 3, pictographs must be produced as a tactile graphic. (See Unit 11, Graphics for Early Grades; Supplement Example 16: *Dinosaur Pictograph*.)

6.7.9.1 In braille, when it is not practical to produce the picture used in print, simple geometric shapes should be substituted. A transcriber's note explaining the change is not required.

6.7.9.2 The symbols should be horizontally centered with the row heading.

6.7.9.3 When print tells the number that each picture represents, it should be provided in braille beginning in cell 1 with runovers in cell 3. Transcriber's note indicators are not required.

If the picture used in print is referred to in surrounding text and there is no explanation provided in print, insert a description enclosed in transcriber's note indicators starting in cell 7 with runovers in cell 5.

6.7.10 **For grades 4 and up:**

6.7.10.1 Simple pictographs may be embossed using braille symbols rather than shown as a tactile graphic. (See Example 6-13: *Average Life Span Pictograph*.)

6.7.10.2 Braille symbols can be used on pictographs only when whole or half units are being represented.

6.7.10.3 When print tells the number that each picture represents, it should be provided in braille beginning in cell 1 with runovers in cell 3. Transcriber's note indicators are not required.

If the picture used in print is referred to in surrounding text and there is no explanation provided in print, insert a description enclosed in transcriber's note indicators starting in cell 7 with runovers in cell 5.

6.7.10.4 Each whole unit should be represented by full braille cells. Each half unit should be represented by dots 123.

6.7.10.5 When partial units are shown, a tactile graphic must be produced. The exception is when 1/2 a unit is shown. If only whole and half units are shown with an explanation given for only the whole units, it is not the responsibility of the transcriber to indicate the value of the half unit. It is the responsibility of the reader to determine the value of half of a whole unit. (See Example 6-13: *Average Life Span Pictograph*.)

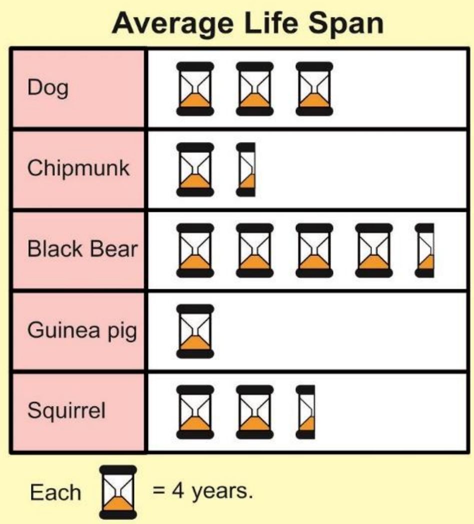
Example 6-13: Average Life Span Pictograph

PRACTICE

A Skills and Understanding

Use the pictograph for 4-7.

4. What does each  on the graph represent?
5. What is the average life span of a dog?
6. Which lives longer, a black bear or a squirrel?
7. Do any of the animals on the graph have the same average life span? How do you know?



Example 6-13 UEB: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- UEB code
- placement of the explanation and value of the symbol before the pictograph (6.7.2, 6.7.10.3)
- dot locator for mention inserted before the full cell in the explanation of value and in question 4 to show that it is a symbol rather than a word
- addition of a half unit explanation not provided in braille, none in print (6.7.3, 6.7.10.5)
- use of top box lines (2356) and bottom box lines (1245) for the graph as framed in print (6.7.4)
- use of guide dots (6.7.6)
- spacing between picture symbols (6.7.7)
- use of embossed braille symbols allowed for grades 4 and up (6.7.10.1)
- substitution of braille dot configurations for the hourglass shown in print, whole symbol (123456) and half symbol (123) (6.7.10.5)

Example 6-13 UEB: Average Life Span Pictograph

Example 6-13 Nemeth: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- Nemeth Braille Code
- placement of the explanation and value of the symbol before the pictograph (6.7.2, 6.7.10.3)
- use of Nemeth for the equation in the explanation of the value
- dot locator for mention inserted before the full cell in question 4 to show that it is a symbol rather than a word
- addition of a half unit explanation not provided in braille, none in print (6.7.3, 6.7.10.5)
- use of top box lines (2356) and bottom box lines (1245) for the graph as framed in print (6.7.4)
- use of guide dots (6.7.6)
- spacing between picture symbols (6.7.7)
- use of embossed braille symbols allowed for grades 4 and up (6.7.10.1)
- substitution of braille dot configurations for the hourglass shown in print, whole symbol (123456) and half symbol (123) (6.7.10.5)

Example 6-13 Nemeth: Average Life Span Pictograph

6.8 Counting Symbols

6.8.1 Pictures to be counted

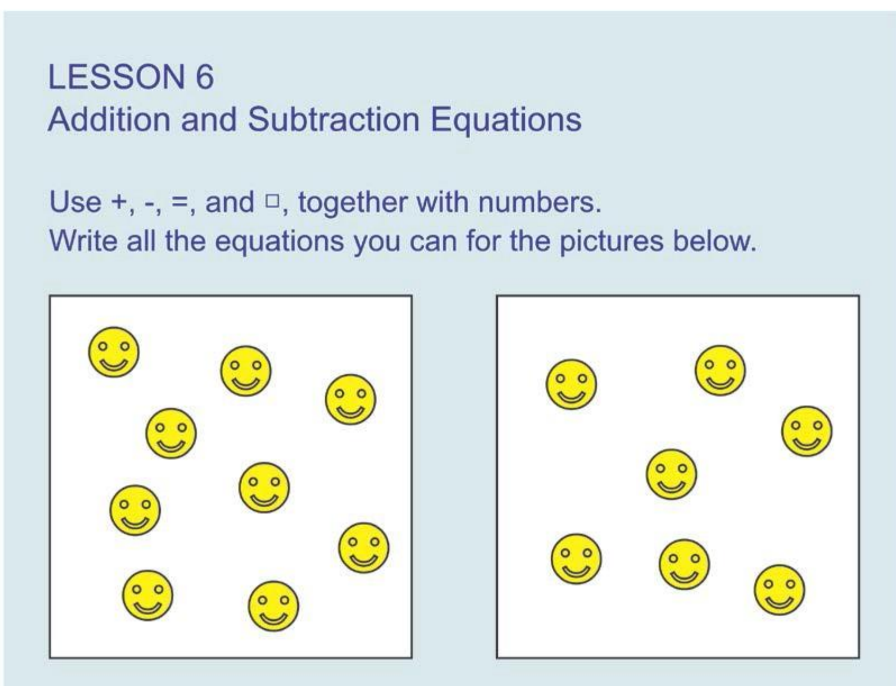
In early elementary grade texts, counting objects are often shown as detailed pictures (e.g., butterflies, flowers, cars).

Ideally, tactile shapes to be counted are grouped just as they are grouped in print with 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) between individual shapes and 3/4 inch (2 centimeters) between groups of shapes.

Manipulatives are used for introducing counting concepts.

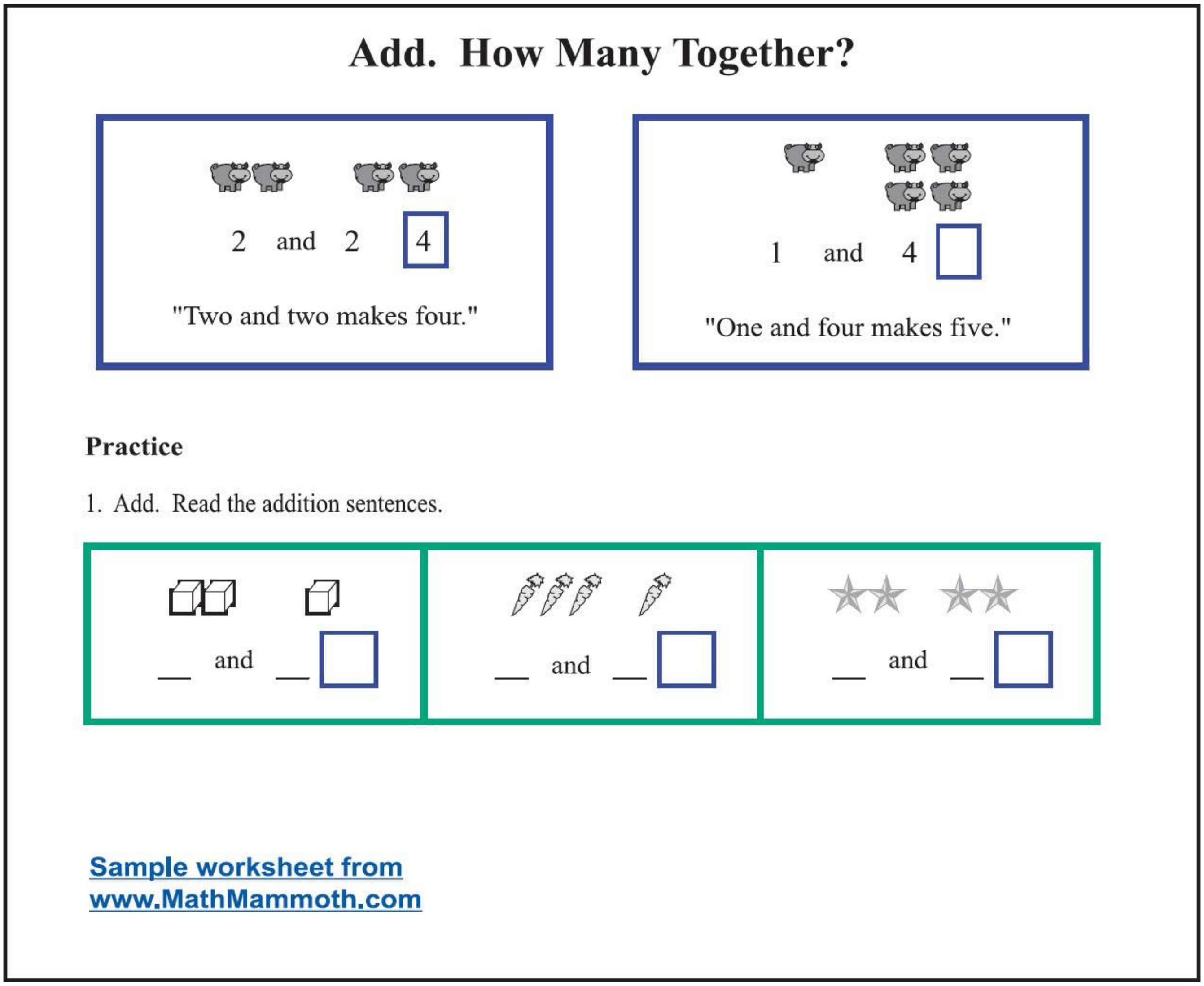
6.8.1.1 For kindergarten through grade 3:

- Picture objects (puppies, bunnies, flowers, etc.) should be represented by solid (filled) simple tactile shapes (circles, squares, or triangles), not by braille shape indicators.
- If the print shows random order, the order should be maintained in the tactile graphic and not changed to linear order. This gives the reader practice in developing strategies that are necessary to keep track of which items have been counted and which have not been counted.



- If a sign of operation or comparison is shown (e.g., +, -, or =), these signs should be aligned, using the full braille cell as a reference, with the top of the shape (and on the top row if more than one row of shape is depicted). A space of a full braille cell or 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) must be left before and after a sign of operation or comparison.
- A blank line must precede and follow this spatial arrangement.
- If there is an exercise identifier (number or letter), the picture objects may start on the same line.

Example 6-14: Counting Symbols



Add. How Many Together?

2 and 2 $\boxed{4}$

"Two and two makes four."

1 and 4 $\boxed{}$

"One and four makes five."

Practice

1. Add. Read the addition sentences.

__ and __ $\boxed{}$	__ and __ $\boxed{}$	__ and __ $\boxed{}$

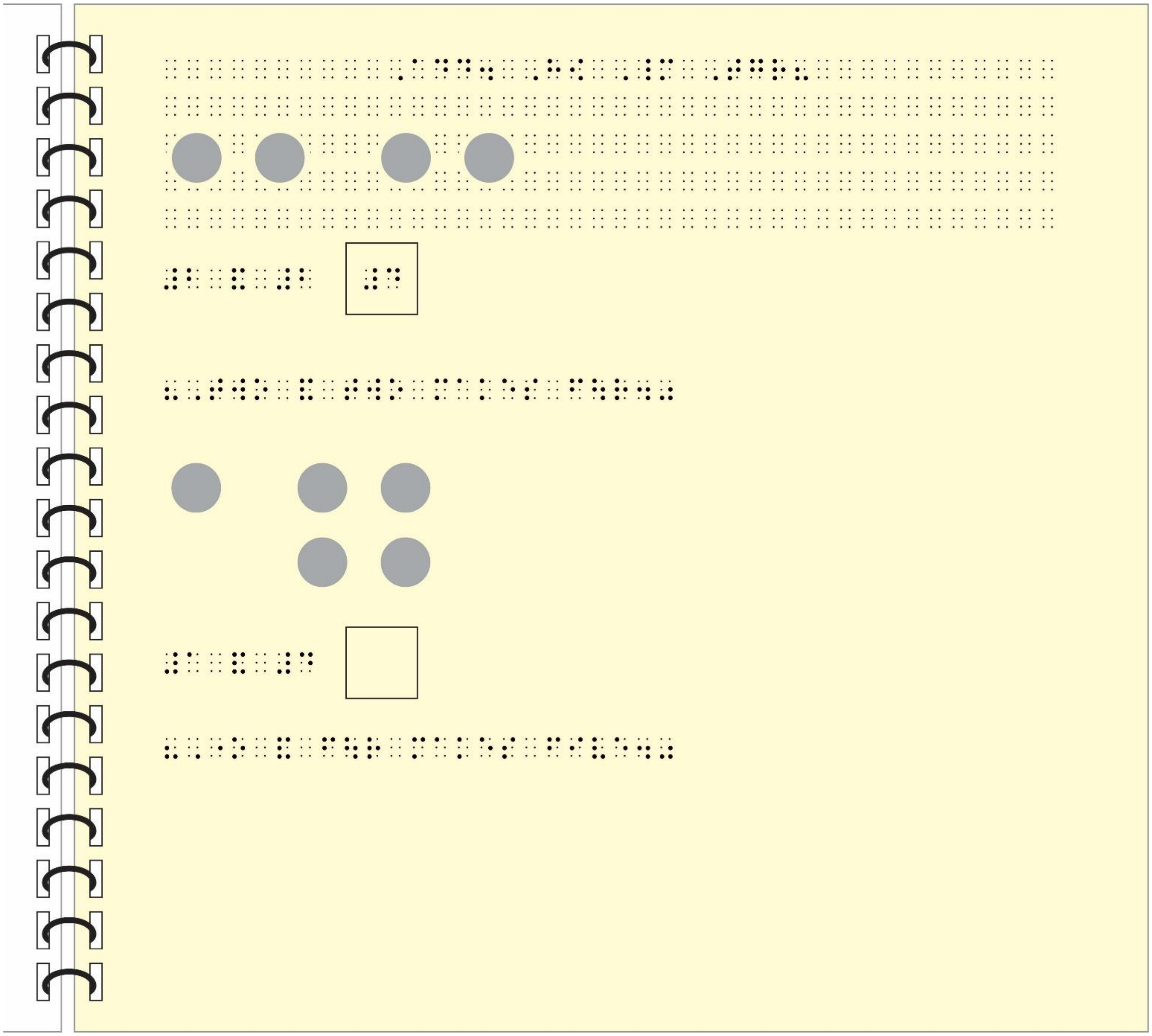
Sample worksheet from
www.MathMammoth.com

Example 6-14 UEB: Tactile Graphic Design Points

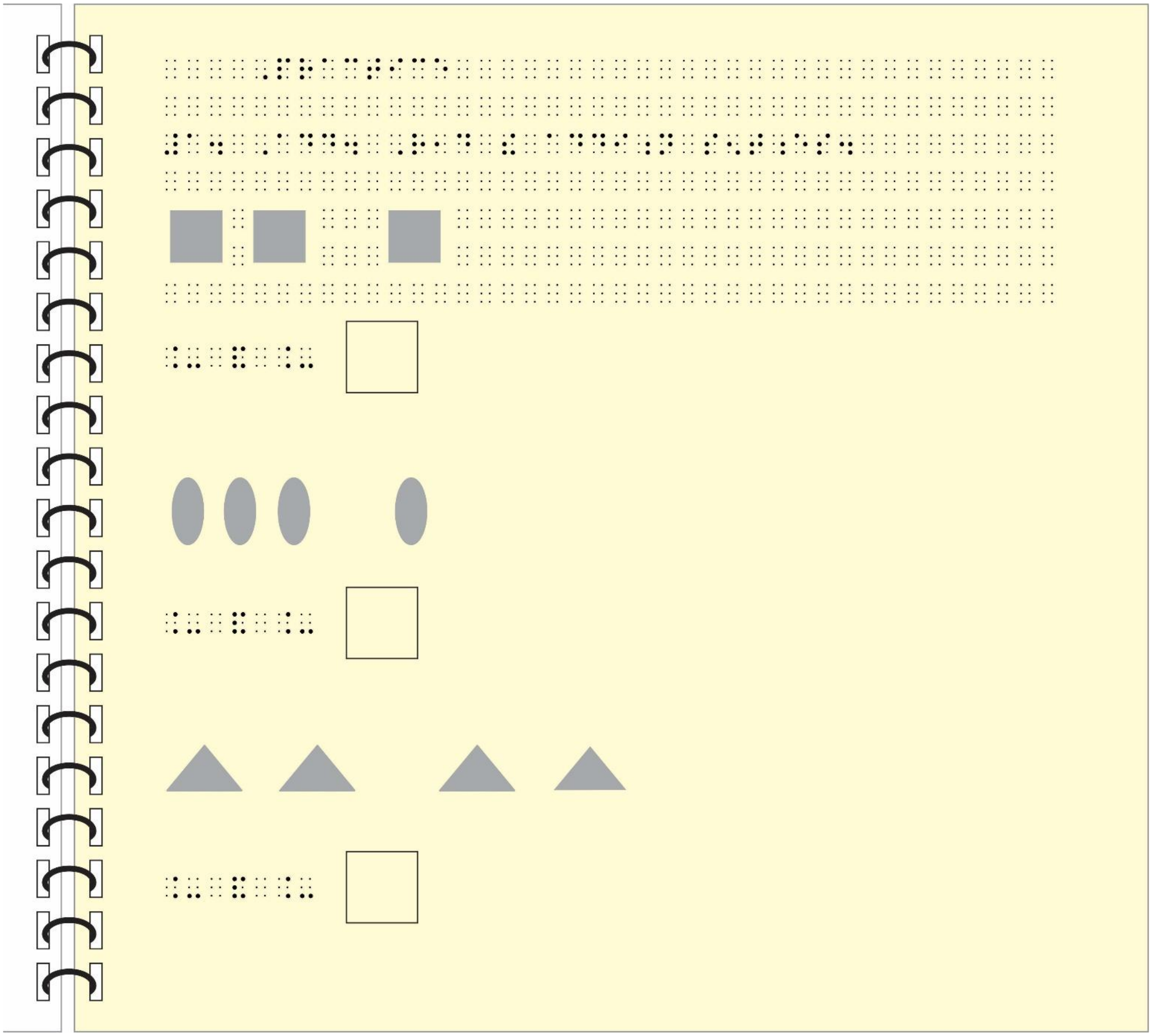
The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- UEB code
- use of open squares big enough to include a possible braille answer (2.1)
- use of double-spaced format for first-grade material (2.3)
- omission of print image outlines (2.6)
- spatial format of individual symbols and groups of symbols (6.8.1.1)
- use of solid squares for shapes (6.8.1.1, 6.11.1.2)
- substitution of simple shapes—not braille cells—for complex print shapes for kindergarten to third-grade materials (6.8.1.1, 11.2.2)
- simplification of three-dimensional figures to two-dimensional figures for young readers (11.2.2)

Example 6-14 UEB: Counting Symbols



Example 6-14 UEB: Counting Symbols (cont.)



6.8.1.2 **For grades 4 and up:**

- A picture object can be represented by braille cells. If an explanation for the print picture or symbol is provided in print, a full braille cell (123456) representing a whole item or half a braille cell (123) representing one half of an item can be substituted without requiring a transcriber's note. (See Example 6-13: *Average Life Span Pictograph*.)
- If the surrounding text or questions refer to the actual print object, a note explaining the substitution is required.
- If no explanation of the picture or symbol is provided in print, insert a transcriber's note with an explanation.
- One blank cell must be left between the symbols. When items to be counted are shown in groups, three blank cells must separate the groups.
- When the combination of symbols cannot be accommodated on one braille line, transition to another braille line may take the place of the required space. No space should be left between a group of braille counting symbols and a braille indicator, a sign of grouping, or a punctuation mark applying to it. In Nemeth, a multipurpose indicator (dot 5) is not required before the punctuation indicator.
- One blank cell must be left before and after a group of symbols even when the group is preceded or followed by a sign of operation or comparison.
- A blank line must precede and follow this spatial arrangement.
- If there is an identifier (number or letter), the braille symbols may start on the same line.

6.8.2 Counting Groups of 1s, 10s, 100s (See Example 6-15: *Blocks of One Hundred*; Supplement Example 17: *Place Value with Hundreds*.)

In early elementary grade texts, numeric place values are often shown as individual items to represent ones or items grouped together to represent tens or hundreds. In print, these place values are shown as pictures of blocks, stacks, bundles, or boxes. Manipulatives are available for introducing this concept.

6.8.2.1 **For kindergarten through grade 3:**

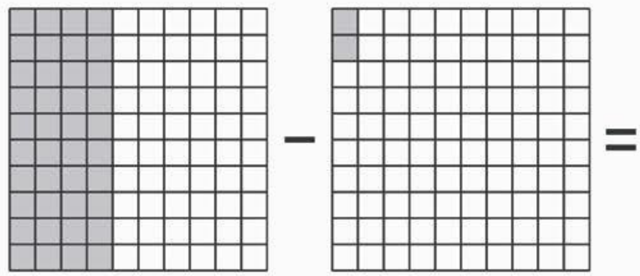
- Counting blocks should be shown as a tactile graphic. Blocks should be no smaller than 3/8-inch (1-centimeter) squares. Groups of blocks must be grouped just as they are grouped in print, with 1/8-1/4 inch (3-6 millimeters) between individual blocks and 3/4 inch (2 centimeters) between groups of blocks.
- If a sign of operation or comparison is shown (e.g., +, -, or =), these signs should be aligned, using the full braille cell as a reference, with the top of the block (and on the top row if more than one row of blocks is depicted). A space of a full braille cell or 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) must be left before and after a sign of operation or comparison.
- A blank line must precede and follow spatial arrangements.
- If there is an exercise identifier (number or letter), the picture objects may start on the same line.
- For problems involving whole numbers and decimals, it may be necessary to use more than one braille page to depict the tactile graphic. A transcriber's note should be inserted before the start of the tactile graphic, telling the reader how many pages the tactile graphic involves.
- Sample transcriber's note.

In braille, the counting blocks for this question are divided over three pages.

This page is intentionally blank.

Example 6-15: Blocks of One Hundred

25 $0.40 - 0.02 =$



A 0.02

B 0.38

C 0.42

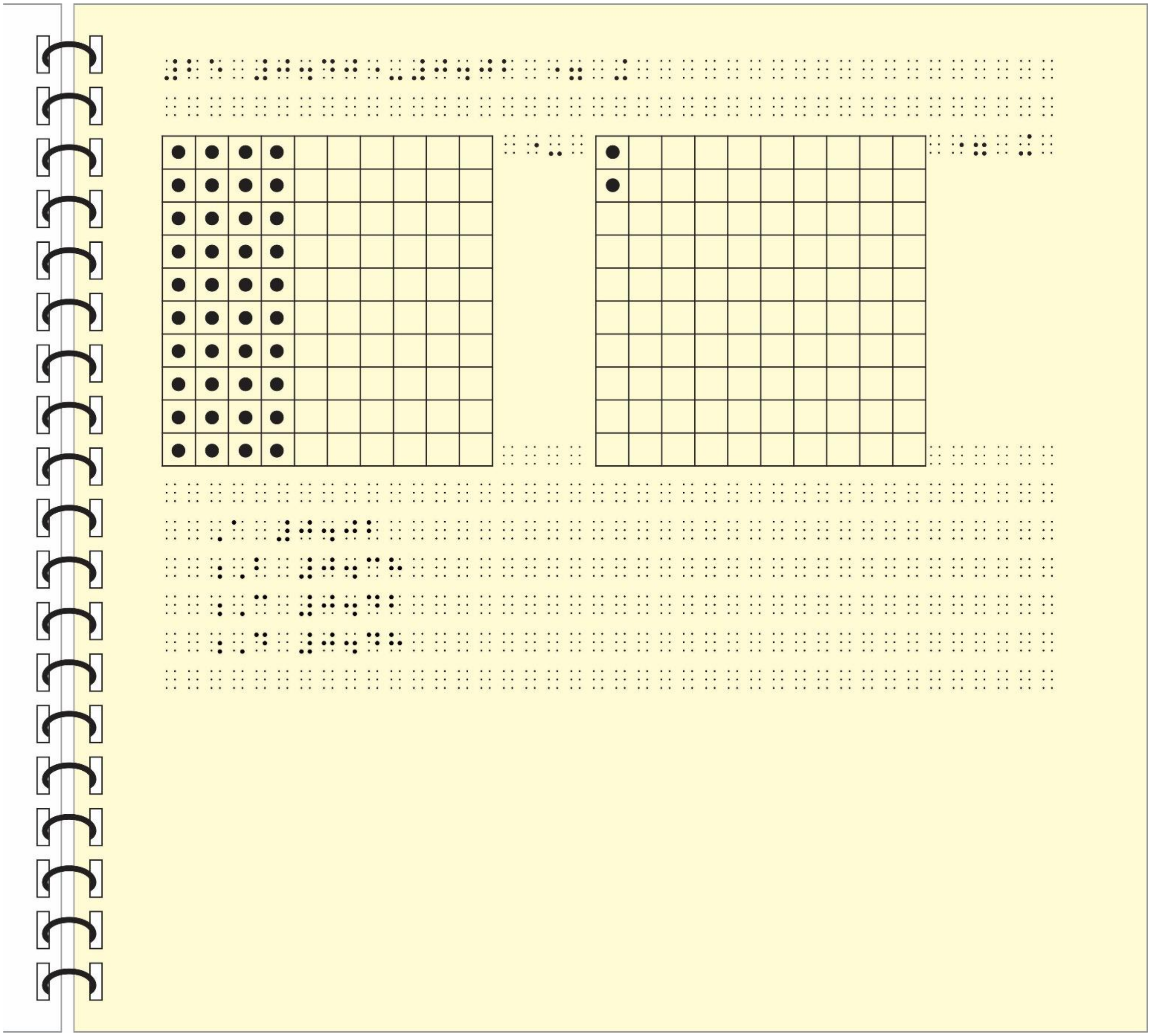
D 0.48

Example 6-15 UEB: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- UEB code
- spatial format for the operation sign (minus) between blocks, one blank braille cell on either side (6.8.2.1)
- use of a full braille cell as a reference, so the operation signs and the signs of comparison are aligned with the top of the block (6.8.2.1)
- spatial format for the comparison sign (equals) after blocks, one blank braille cell between the block and the equals sign (6.8.2.1)
- size of squares minimal to allow blocks and signs to fit side by side (6.8.2.1)
- use of a shading technique (single dot larger than one braille dot) for blocks (6.8.3.2)

Example 6-15 UEB: Blocks of One Hundred

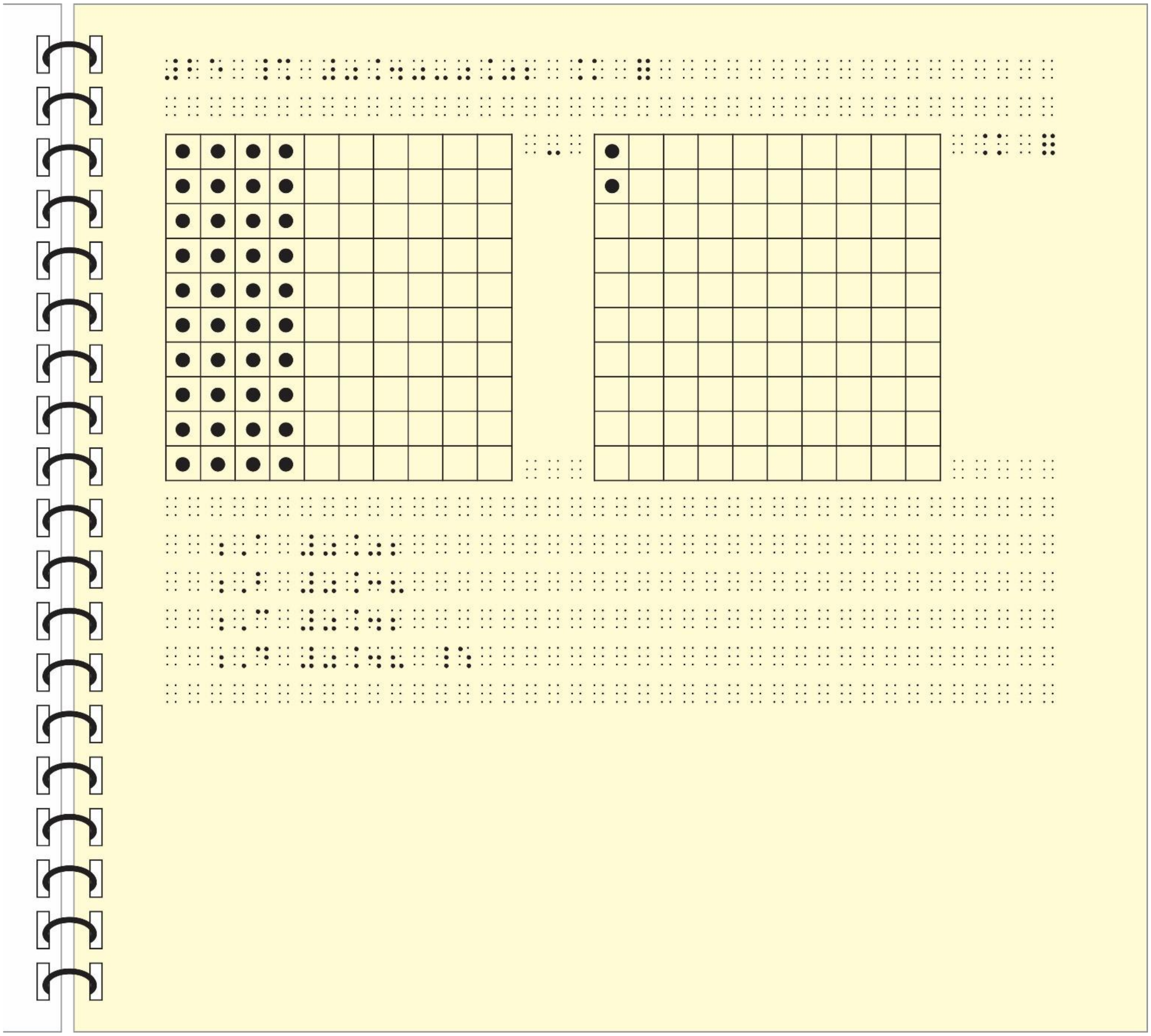


Example 6-15 Nemeth: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- Nemeth Braille Code
- use of Nemeth switch indicators to denote the change into and out of the Nemeth Braille Code
- spatial format for the operation sign (minus) between blocks, one blank braille cell on either side (6.8.2.1)
- placement of dots 14 of the operation sign even with the top of the block. Using a full braille cell as a reference, dots 36 of the minus sign is lower than the block. (6.8.2.1)
- spatial format for the comparison sign (equals) after blocks, one blank braille cell between the block and the equals sign (6.8.2.1)
- placement of dots 13 of comparison (equals) even with the top of the block (6.8.2.1)
- size of squares minimal to allow blocks and signs to fit side by side (6.8.2.1)
- use of a shading technique (single dot larger than one braille dot) for blocks (6.8.3.2)

Example 6-15 Nemeth: Blocks of One Hundred



6.8.2.2 **For grades 4 and up:**

- Counting items can be represented by using the letters "on" for one, "tn" for ten, "hn" for hundreds, "th" (uncontracted) for thousands. A transcriber's note must be added explaining the use of braille symbols as a representation of the print object.
- When items to be counted are shown in groups, group them in braille as in print, with one blank cell between symbols and three blank cells separating the groups.
- One blank cell must be left before and after a group of symbols, even when the group is preceded or followed by a sign of operation or comparison.
- If there is an exercise identifier (number or letter), the braille symbols may start on the same line.

6.8.3 **Decimal and Fractional Representations**

In early elementary grade texts, concepts of decimal notation are shown as grids of 100 individual squares or 10 strips of 10, with various amounts of shading. (See Supplement Example 18: *Shading of Tenths Strips*.)

6.8.3.1 Grids should be shown as a tactile graphic. Grids must be grouped just as they are grouped in print with 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) between individual grids.

6.8.3.2 Squares should be no smaller than 3/8 inch (1 centimeter) on a side. A single raised dot (larger than a braille dot) can be used to show the shading in a square representing one unit.

6.8.3.3 Strips of 10 should be no smaller than 3/8 inch (1 centimeter) wide. A suitable area texture such as fine dots that are smaller than braille dots can be used to show the shading in strips of 10 or more units. There should be enough blank space around the shading so that the reader can still identify each individual square in the strip of ten.

6.8.3.4 If a sign of operation or comparison is shown (e.g., +, -, or =), these signs should be aligned, using the full braille cell as a reference, with the top of the grid (and on the top row if more than one row of grids is depicted). Where space permits, one blank cell must be left before and after a sign of operation or comparison.

6.8.3.5 A blank line must precede and follow this spatial arrangement.

6.8.3.6 If there is an exercise identifier, the picture objects may start on the same line.

6.8.3.7 For problems involving whole numbers and decimals, it may be necessary to use more than one braille page to depict the tactile graphic. A transcriber's note should be inserted before the start of the tactile graphic, telling the reader how many pages the tactile graphic involves. Sample transcriber's note.

> In braille, the counting blocks for this question are divided over three pages.

6.9 Thermometers

A thermometer is a piece of equipment that measures temperature. (See Example 6-16: *Thermometer*.)

6.9.1 The numeric indicator is not used on values, even values with a minus sign, regardless of whether the thermometer is transcribed in UEB or Nemeth Code.

6.9.2 In print, the degree symbol may be shown with each of the values. In braille, the degree symbol may be shown as a heading instead, above the list of values. Alternatively, the degree symbol may be omitted altogether and a transcriber's note inserted stating that in print the numbers are shown as degrees.

6.9.3 Thermometers usually show the temperature markings too close to be able to make accurate readings tactually. It is permissible to enlarge the thermometer to show small increments of measurement. It is not necessary to include the entire span of the thermometer.

6.9.4 If the print shows a frame surrounding the thermometer, it should be omitted in the tactile version.

6.9.5 The thermometer tube should be a minimum of 3/8 inch (1 centimeter) wide.

6.9.6 Place the tick marks on the left, outside of the tube, regardless of print placement. Any other labels should be placed on the right, outside the thermometer.

6.9.7 If print shows the scale increments on both sides of the thermometer tube, simplify by showing tick marks on only one side. If print shows two different temperature scales (Celsius and Fahrenheit), follow print placement with one scale on the left and one on the right.

6.9.8 When it is required to discern temperatures to the nearest 1 or 2 degrees, place the tick marks no closer than 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) apart. The tick marks representing major increments (10 or 5 degrees) should be longer than those representing smaller increments. Reduce the number of labels to show only the major increments.

6.9.9 There should be 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) between the labeled values and the major tick marks. Dots 25 of the values should be aligned with the tick marks.

6.9.10 Values on the left side of the thermometer should be right aligned. Values on the right side of the thermometer should be left aligned.

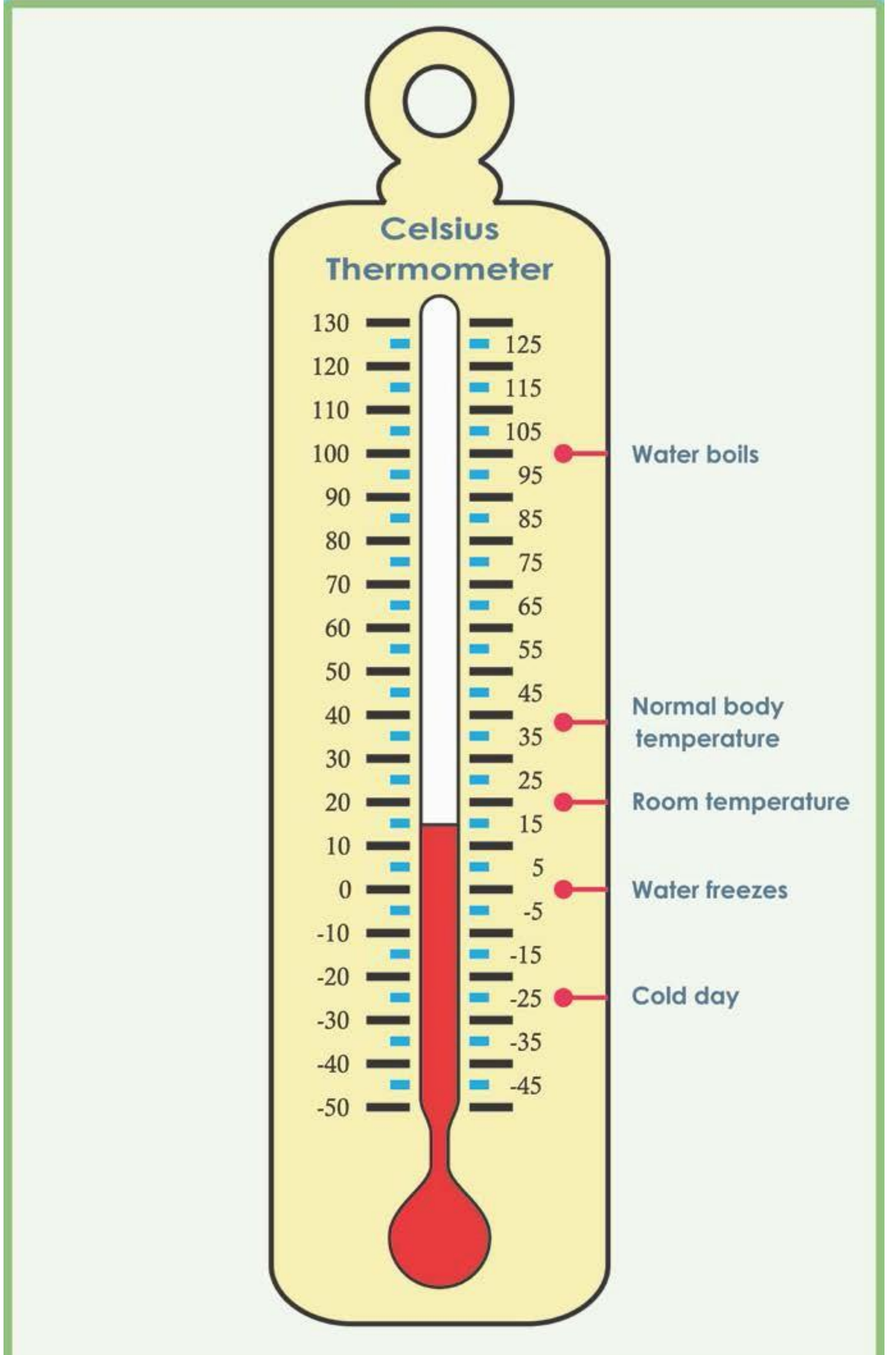
Example 6-16: Thermometer

Question 5

a) What is the temperature shown on the thermometer below?

b) What is the difference in temperature between the boiling point of water and the temperature on the thermometer?

c) Normal body temperature is 17 °C above room temperature; True or False?

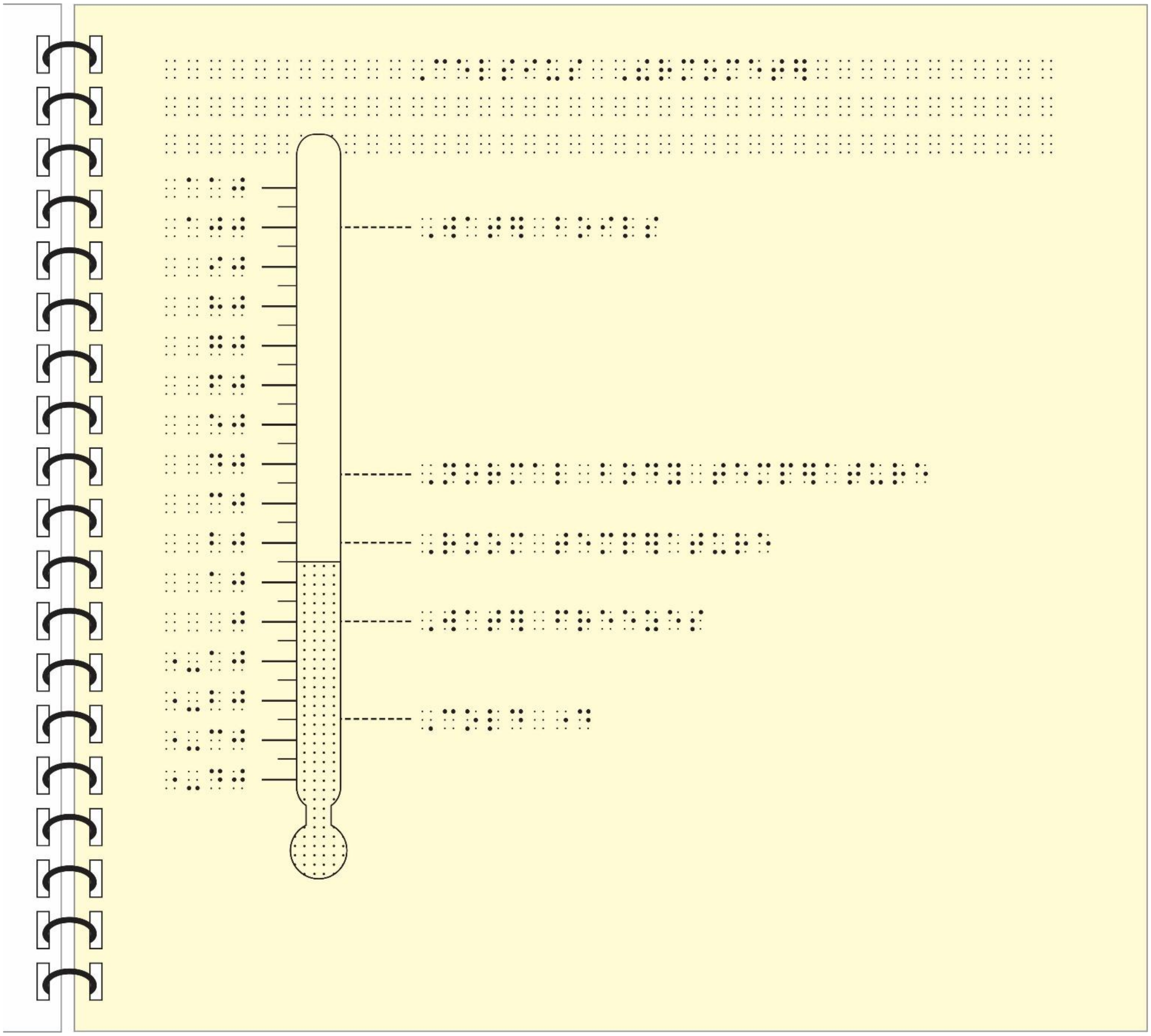


Example 6-16 UEB: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- UEB code
- elimination of the outside frame (2.6, 6.9.4)
- use of lead lines 3/4 inch (2 centimeters) from the label and touching side of thermometer (3.4.3.5)
- cropping of the higher and lower range of temperatures (3.7, 6.9.3)
- non-use of numeric indicators even if the number is negative (6.9.1)
- size of the thermometer tube (6.9.5)
- placement of numbers and tick marks on the left, outside of the thermometer (6.9.6)
- placement of whole-word labels on the right side of the thermometer (6.9.6)
- omission of numbers on the right side of the thermometer (6.9.7)
- use of major and minor tick marks shown in different lengths (6.9.8)
- alignment of numeric labels with tick marks (dots 25) (6.9.9)
- right-alignment of numeric values (6.9.10)
- left-alignment of whole-word labels (6.9.10)

Example 6-16 UEB: Thermometer

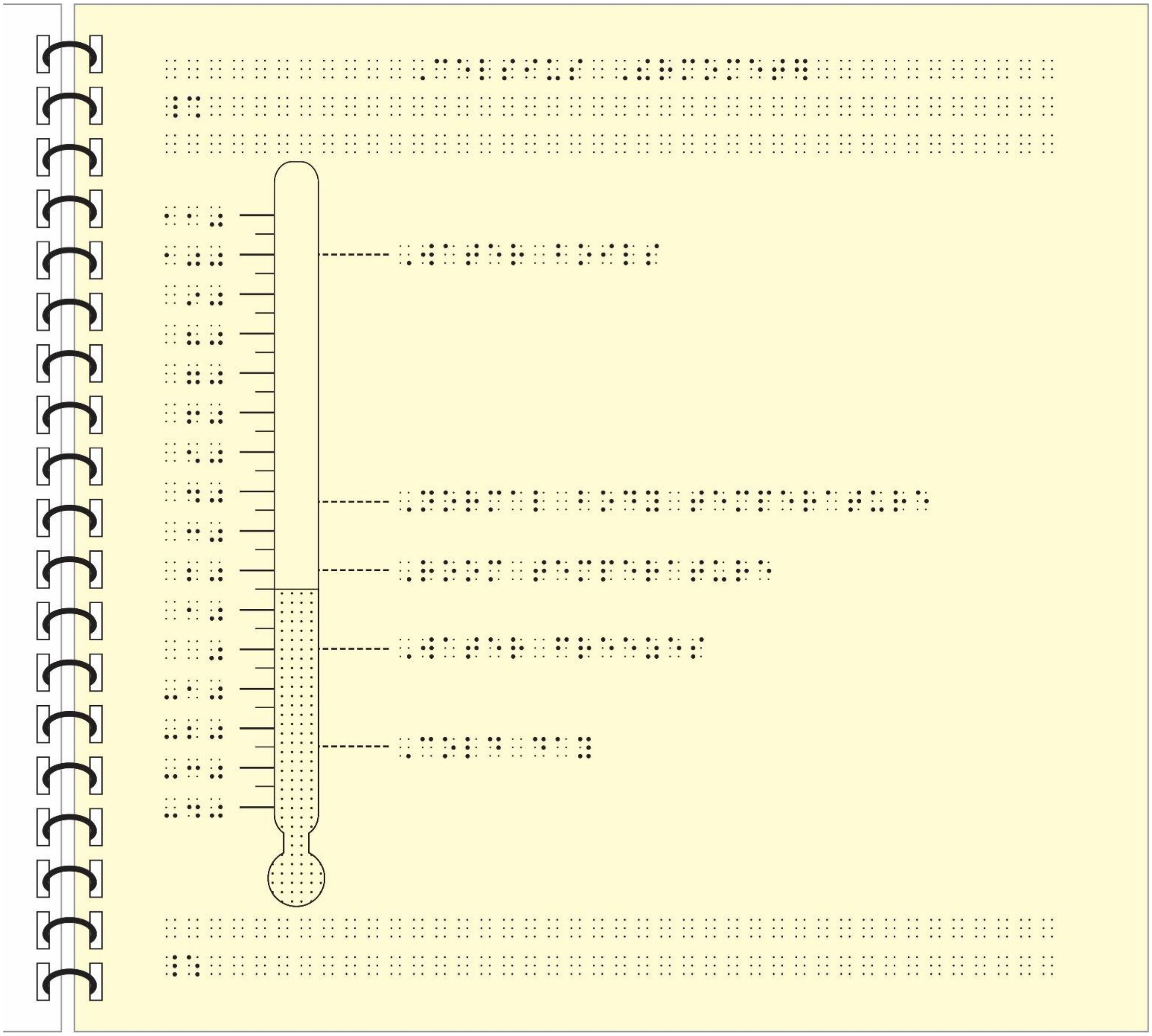


Example 6-16 Nemeth: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- Nemeth Braille Code
- use of Nemeth switch indicators to denote the change into and out of the Nemeth Braille Code
- blank line omitted after the opening Nemeth switch indicator and before the Nemeth Code terminator due to space constraints (2.7, 5.1.2)
- elimination of the outside frame (2.6, 6.9.4)
- use of lead lines 3/4 inch (2 centimeters) from the label and touching the side of the thermometer (3.4.3.5)
- cropping of the higher and lower range of temperatures (3.7, 6.9.3)
- non-use of a numeric indicator even if the number is negative (6.9.1)
- size of the thermometer tube (6.9.5)
- placement of numbers and tick marks on the left, outside of the thermometer (6.9.6)
- placement of whole-word labels on the right side of the thermometer (6.9.6)
- omission of numbers on the right side of the thermometer (6.9.7)
- use of major and minor tick marks shown in different lengths (6.9.8)
- alignment of numeric labels with tick marks (dots 25) (6.9.9)
- right-alignment of numeric values (6.9.10)
- left-alignment of whole-word labels (6.9.10)

Example 6-16 Nemeth: Thermometer



6.10 Measurement Tools

Actual braille rulers and protractors with raised marks do not register small values. Rulers can provide an accurate measurement to within 1/4 inch (6 millimeters). Braille calipers can provide an accurate measurement to within 1/16 inch or 1 millimeter. Protractors can provide an accurate angle measurement to within 5 degrees.

Numeric indicators are not shown with numbers on actual braille rulers, protractors, and calipers regardless of whether the measurement tools are transcribed in UEB or Nemeth Code.

6.10.1 Tactile graphics representing rulers and protractors should not use the numeric indicator.

6.10.2 Be aware that minimal increases in size will occur when a tactile graphic master is either vacuum formed or developed using microcapsule paper.

6.10.3 When accurate measurements are required, the graphic must be of sufficient size and line strength that braille measuring tools (i.e., actual braille ruler, protractor, or caliper) can be used to accomplish the measuring task. The object to be measured must be longer than 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) or have an angle greater than 5 degrees.

6.10.4 Proportions must be accurately reproduced in the tactile graphic.

6.10.5 When a print graphic uses a measurement line to indicate the length of a line, the measurement line need not be shown if it is possible to label the line with its appropriate units within 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) of the line being measured. (See Supplement Example 21: *3-Dimensional Rooftop*.)

When it is not possible to place the measurement label within 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) or when the length of a line is broken into partial measurements, the measurement line should be retained in the tactile graphic. If a print measurement line contains perpendicular lines (endpoint lines) showing the extent of the measure as well as arrowheads, the arrowheads should be omitted. The measurement line should be extended to meet the endpoint lines. The total length of the endpoint lines should be no less than 3/8 inch (1 centimeter) and no more than 1/2 inch (1.25 centimeters). When an angle shows a measurement by means of an arc with an arrowhead, the arrowhead should be omitted. The diagram is read more easily if the kind of line used to show measurement is different from the kind of line that is used for the structure (e.g., dashed versus solid).

6.10.6 Objects to be measured using an actual braille ruler (See Supplement Example 19: *Measuring*.)

6.10.6.1 An object to be measured must not be altered unless it cannot be accurately measured using an actual braille ruler.

6.10.6.2 The object to be measured should be raised sufficiently to allow alignment with an actual braille ruler—at least 1/32 inch (1 millimeter). One inch (2.5 centimeters) should be left on both sides of a line or on all sides of an object to be measured to allow for the placement of an actual braille ruler.

6.10.6.3 When the object to be measured is less than 1/4 inch (6 millimeters), it should be enlarged in whole number increments rather than fractional increments. The whole number increments allow for easier conversion of measurements for the reader. A transcriber's note must explain the exact proportion of change. Sample transcriber's note.

> In braille, the print image has been enlarged to three times the actual size.

6.10.6.4 If raised dots or points are used at the endpoints of lines, these dots or points should be minimal in size so as not to alter the reading of the line measurement.

6.10.7 Angles to be measured using an actual braille protractor

6.10.7.1 The rays of an angle to be measured with a braille protractor must be at least three inches (7.5 centimeters) in length.

6.10.7.2 The rays of an angle to be measured should be raised at least 1/32 inch (1 millimeter) to allow alignment with an actual braille protractor.

6.10.7.3 One inch (2.5 centimeters) should be left on both sides of the angle to be measured to allow for the placement of a braille protractor.

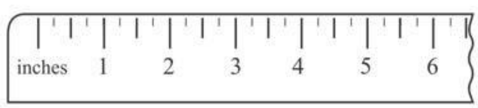
6.10.8 Objects to be measured using a drawing of a braille ruler

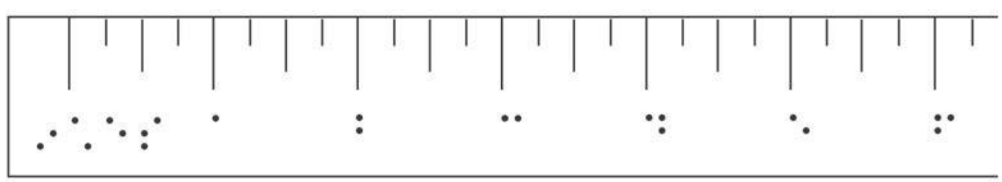
When the concept of measurement is first being taught, a diagram of a ruler is often shown below an object to be measured.

6.10.8.1 It is permissible to enlarge the ruler and object proportionately to show small increments of measurement—for example, 1/32 inch (1 millimeter) or 1/8 inch (3 millimeters). A transcriber’s note must explain any enlargement.

6.10.8.2 The tick marks denoting whole standard or metric increments must be longer than those for the fractional increment tick marks.

6.10.8.3 Dots 123 of the first digit of the number should align with the tick mark and be placed 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) from the tick mark.





6.10.9 Angles to be measured using a drawing of a braille protractor (See Supplement Example 20a: *Protractor*; Supplement Example 20b: *Angle to be Measured*.)

When the concept of measurement is first being taught, a diagram of a protractor is often shown with an angle to be measured.

6.10.9.1 It is permissible to enlarge the diagram of the protractor and angle proportionately to show small increments of degrees.

6.10.9.2 The tick marks denoting major degree marks must be longer than those for the minor degree marks. (See Unit 6, Diagrams for Technical Materials, Clocks §6.1.1.4.)

6.10.9.3 The numbers on the protractor should be placed both inside and outside the circle as space allows, with either the beginning or the end of the label 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) to 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) from the tick mark.

6.11 Two-Dimensional and Three-Dimensional Drawings

The vertical and horizontal aspect of the print graphic should be maintained in the tactile graphic. The tactile graphic needs to be large enough for the reader to interpret the details. Lead lines should be avoided when possible. Labels can be keyed if space is limited.

When a print graphic uses a measurement line to indicate the length of a line, the measurement line need not be shown if it is possible to label the line with its appropriate units within 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) of the line being measured. (See Supplement Example 21: *3-Dimensional Rooftop*.)

When it is not possible to place the measurement label within 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) or when the length of a line is broken into partial measurements, the measurement line should be retained in the tactile graphic. If a print measurement line contains perpendicular lines (endpoint lines) showing the extent of the measure as well as arrowheads, the arrowheads should be omitted. The measurement line should be extended to meet the endpoint lines. The total length of the endpoint lines should be no less than 3/8 inch (1 centimeter) and no more than 1/2 inch (1.25 centimeters). When an angle shows a measurement by means of an arc with an arrowhead, the arrowhead should be omitted. The diagram is read more easily if the kind of line used to show measurement is different from the kind of line used for the structure (e.g., dashed versus solid).

6.11.1 **Simple Geometric Shapes** (Two-Dimensional)

6.11.1.1 A distinct line texture should be used to separate a shape from surrounding material.

6.11.1.2 Simple shapes should be shown as solid (filled) objects.

6.11.1.3 If enlarging, the print proportion must be retained.

6.11.1.4 Plotted points on lines or objects need to be distinct from the lines or objects on which they are placed. It is especially important for microcapsule and computer-embossed graphics to use a 1/8-inch (3-millimeter) blank space all around a point to separate it from the surrounding material. The point should not be smaller than 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) in diameter. (See Example 6-17: *Angles on Survey Map*.)

6.11.1.5 Labels should be placed outside the shape if possible and 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) away from the shape or point symbol.

6.11.1.6 Labels that are lengthy may be keyed to conserve space.

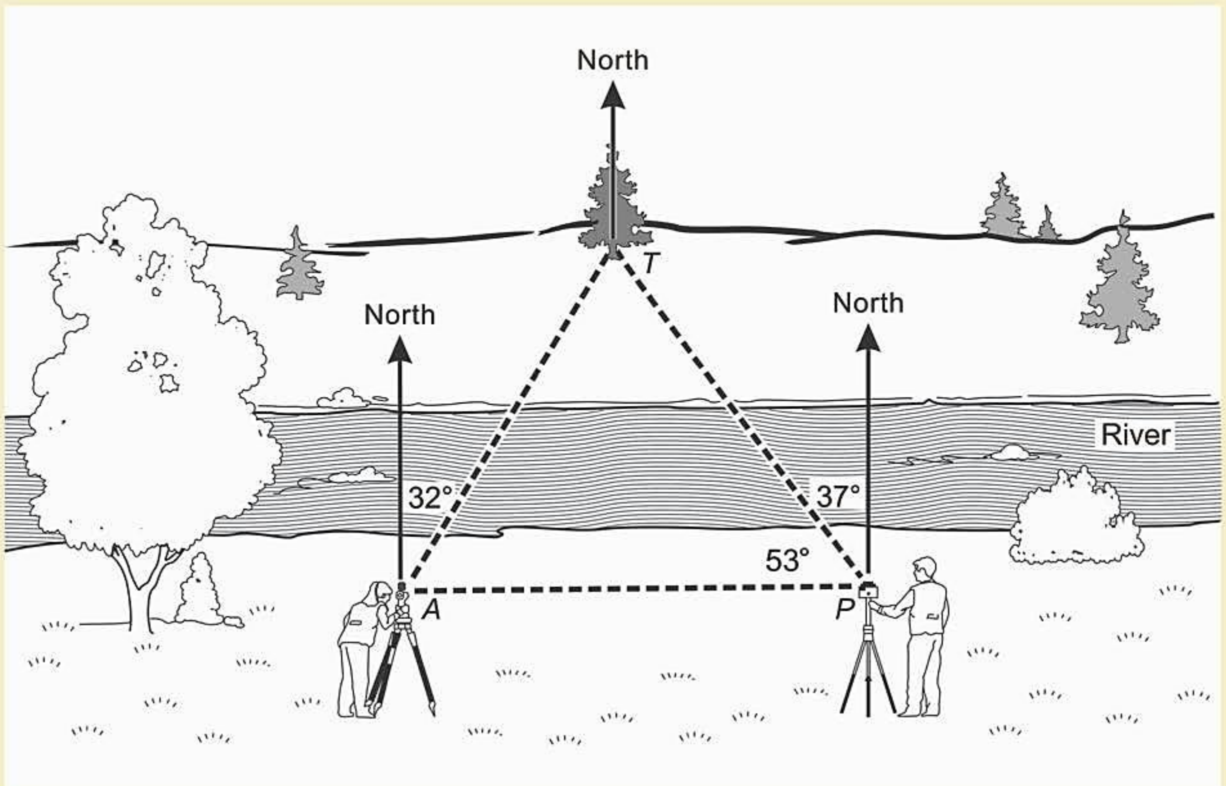
6.11.1.7 In print, the degree symbol may be shown with each angle value; in braille, the degree symbol may be omitted altogether and a transcriber's note inserted stating that in print the angles are shown in degrees.

Example 6-17: Angles on Survey Map

19 The figure below shows the positions of a surveying crew measuring the distance to a tree across the river.

Which of the following best represents the measure of $\angle TAP$?

A 58º
B 69º
C 90º
D 122º

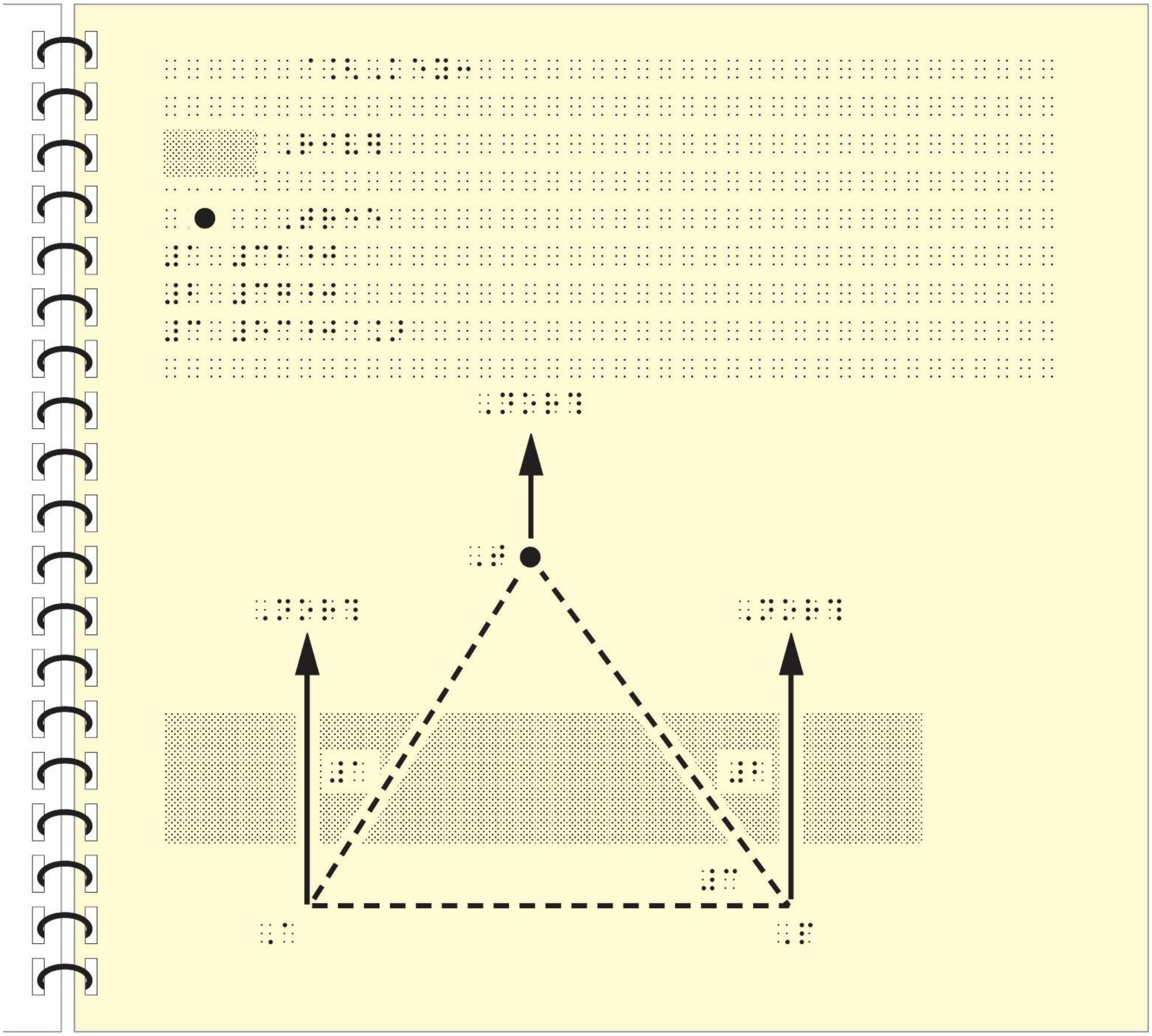


Example 6-17 UEB: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- UEB code
- use of blank space around labels and lines (2.11)
- use of area texture to show print shading (3.1.1, 3.4.3.1)
- use of an arrowhead on directional arrows as in print (3.4.3.7)
- placement of labels for plotted points (3.4.3.11)
- simplification and elimination (3.6, 3.7)
- order of key listing (5.7.1)
- capitalization and non-capitalization of explanations (5.7.4)
- use of the numeric key listing to represent angle measurements (5.8)
- use of area and point symbols in the key listing (5.8.4.3, 5.8.4.4, 5.9.1, 5.9.3)
- non-use of the grade 1 symbol indicator on capitalized letters used for labels (5.10.4)
- use of varying textures of lines (6.11.1.1)
- use of the dashed line texture for the triangle, distinct from solid arrow shafts (6.11.1.1)
- use of keyed labels to conserve space inside angles (6.11.1.6)

Example 6-17 UEB: Angles on Survey Map

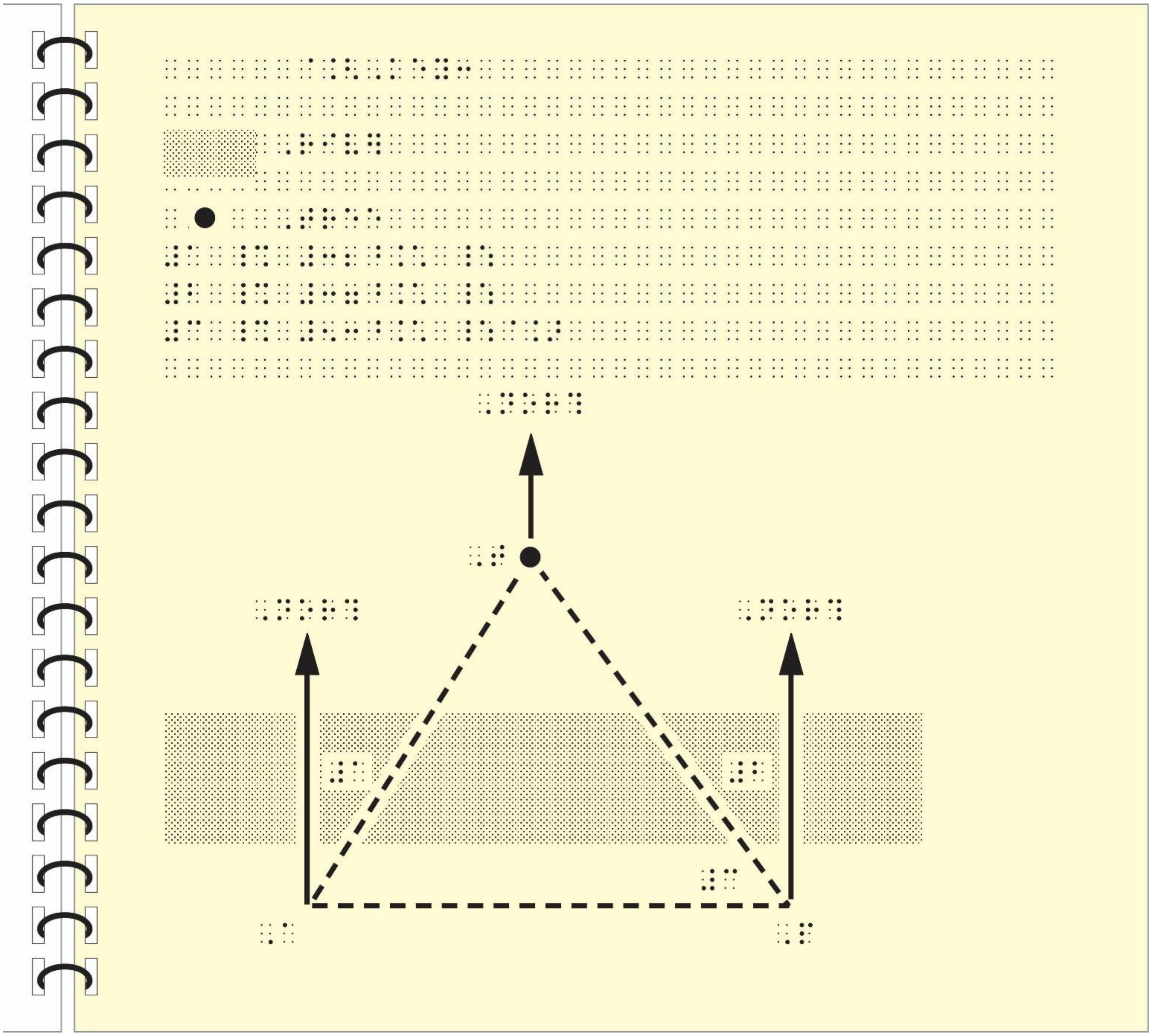


Example 6-17 Nemeth: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- Nemeth Braille Code
- use of Nemeth switch indicators to denote the change into and out of the Nemeth Braille Code
- use of blank space around labels and lines (2.11)
- use of area texture to show print shading (3.1.1, 3.4.3.1)
- use of an arrowhead on directional arrows as in print (3.4.3.7)
- placement of labels for plotted points (3.4.3.11)
- simplification and elimination (3.6, 3.7)
- order of the key listing (5.7.1)
- capitalization and non-capitalization of explanations (5.7.4)
- use of the numeric key listing, numbers of the key symbols are in the upper position of the cell (5.8.2.4)
- use of area and point symbols in the key listing (5.8.4.3, 5.8.4.4, 5.9.1, 5.9.3)
- non-use of the English letter indicator on capitalized letters used for labels (5.10.4)
- use of varying textures of lines (6.11.1.1)
- use of the dashed line texture for the triangle, distinct from solid arrow shafts (6.11.1.1)
- use of keyed labels to conserve space inside angles (6.11.1.6)
- the UEB transcriber's note indicators cannot be used within Nemeth switch indicators (5.6.3)

Example 6-17 Nemeth: Angles on Survey Map



6.11.1.8 **Perimeter lines** of simple rectangular shapes may be prepared using a series of unspaced braille symbols. These braille symbols should be used only for the perimeter of rectangles. Other shapes such as T or L shapes, squares, triangles, parallelograms, etc., should not be shown with braille symbols because the inherent arrangement of dots in the braille symbols cannot successfully create the shapes. Tabular information, such as a Punnett square, should not be shown with perimeter lines.

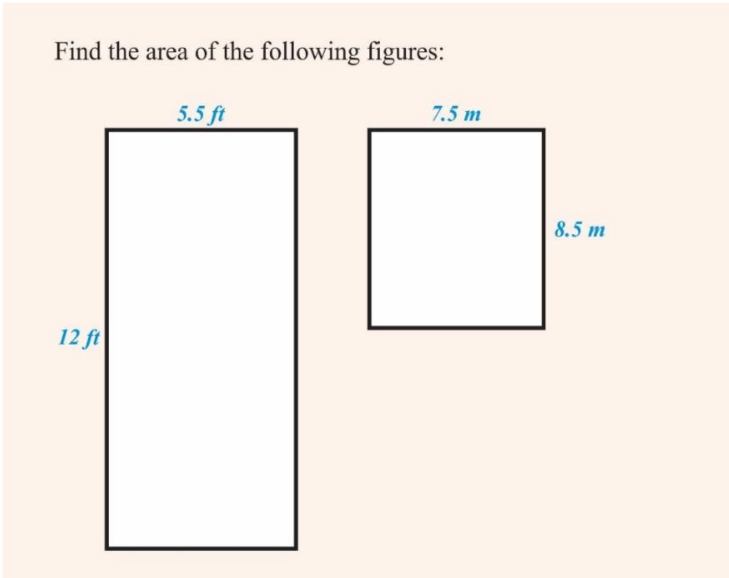
The perimeter symbols are formed with the following braille dots:

UEB Line Mode Symbols (for perimeter)	
⠨⠿⠚	Corner with upward vertical
⠨⠿⠒	Simple (solid single) horizontal line segment
⠨⠿⠲	Corner with downward vertical
⠨⠿⠸	Vertical single solid line segment
⠨⠿⠐⠒	Horizontal line mode indicator

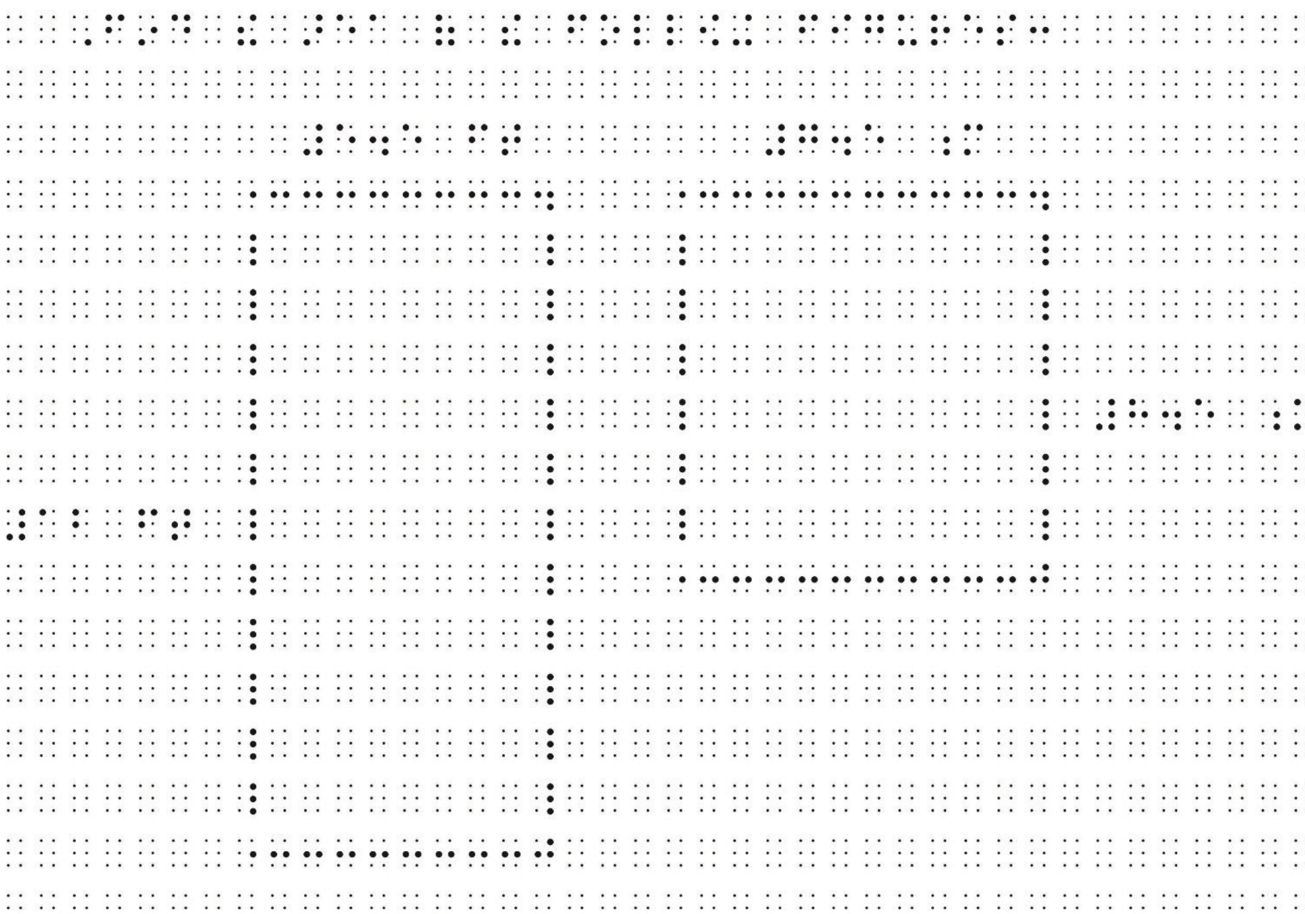
Braille Symbols (for perimeter) **When Using Nemeth Within UEB Contexts**	
⠨⠿⠉	Top line
⠨⠿⠇	Left side line
⠨⠿⠏	Top left corner
⠨⠿⠧	Bottom left corner
⠨⠿⠹	Top right corner
⠨⠿⠼	Bottom right corner
⠨⠿⠤	Bottom line
⠨⠿⠸	Right side line

- Box lines and perimeter lines are not interchangeable. Follow *Braille Formats: Print-to-Braille Transcription* Section 7 Boxed Materials for box lines. Perimeter line symbols are used only when it is necessary to indicate the extent of the entire perimeter of simple rectangular shapes.
- Perimeter symbols must not be used for early-grade materials (kindergarten through grade 3) or in the transcription of standardized state or provincial testing materials.
- Any text transcribed within the perimeter symbols must be preceded and followed by a space, and text immediately to the left or right of the rectangle must be separated by a space from the left or right vertical lines.
- The horizontal space between adjacent shapes should be a minimum of 2 blank cells.
- Text transcribed within the perimeter lines need not be preceded or followed by blank lines. Text, such as labels or measurement values, transcribed above the top line should be centered above the line with no blank line between the text and top line. Labels or measurement values below the bottom line should be centered below the line, with no blank line left between the bottom line and text.
- Any rectangular shape that must be measured with a ruler must be prepared as a raised-line tactile graphic.
- Braille dot symbols for perimeter lines must be listed on the Special Symbols page or in a transcriber's note at the point of use.

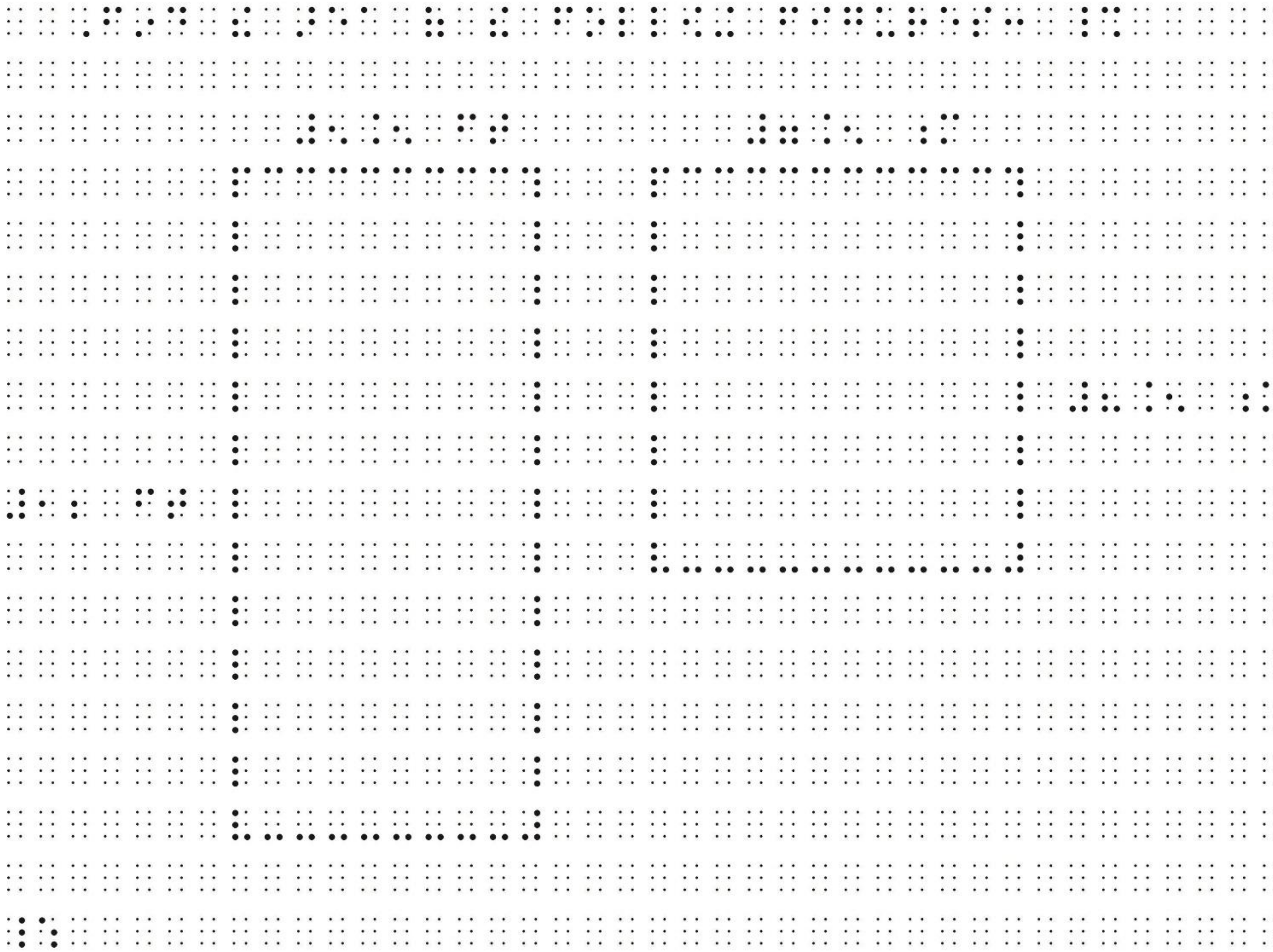
Example 6-18: Perimeter Lines Using Braille Symbols



Example 6-18 UEB: Perimeter Lines Using Braille Symbols



Example 6-18 Nemeth: Perimeter Lines Using Braille Symbols



6.11.2 **Complex Geometric Shapes** (Three-Dimensional)

Tactile three-dimensional drawings are among the most difficult for the reader to interpret. The preferred way for a reader to interpret a three-dimensional drawing is by using manipulatives, especially in a testing situation. For example, give the student a real rectangular prism to explore. However, when transcribing a textbook, the transcriber does not always know whether the reader will have access to such manipulatives and should therefore give the reader a well-planned, two-dimensional drawing of a three-dimensional object. It is permissible to insert a transcriber's note explaining the technique used to present three-dimensional objects such as cubes and cones. Sample transcriber's note.

In these three-dimensional diagrams, the "hidden lines" are shown as broken lines.

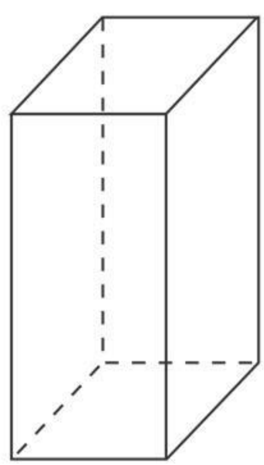
6.11.2.1 There must be a tactile distinction between the visible lines and the lines that are "hidden."

6.11.2.2 If enlarging, the print proportion must be retained.

6.11.2.3 Lines that are "hidden" should be easily discriminable but not as prominent as the visible lines.

6.11.2.4 Solid lines should be used to represent visible lines.

6.11.2.5 Broken lines (dashed or dotted) should be used to represent lines that are "hidden."



6.11.2.6 Shading should be used sparingly and only if required for the understanding of the concept.

6.11.2.7 Many three-dimensional figures can be simplified to two-dimensional figures. (See Supplement Example 21: *3-Dimensional Rooftop*.)

6.11.3 **Nets** (See Example 6-19: *Nets*.)

A net is a pattern that can be cut out and folded into a three-dimensional figure.

6.11.3.1 If enlarging, the print proportion must be retained.

6.11.3.2 Solid lines should be used to represent the outside edges.

6.11.3.3 Folding lines should be tactually distinct from outside lines. Broken lines (dashed or dotted) should be used to represent lines to be folded.

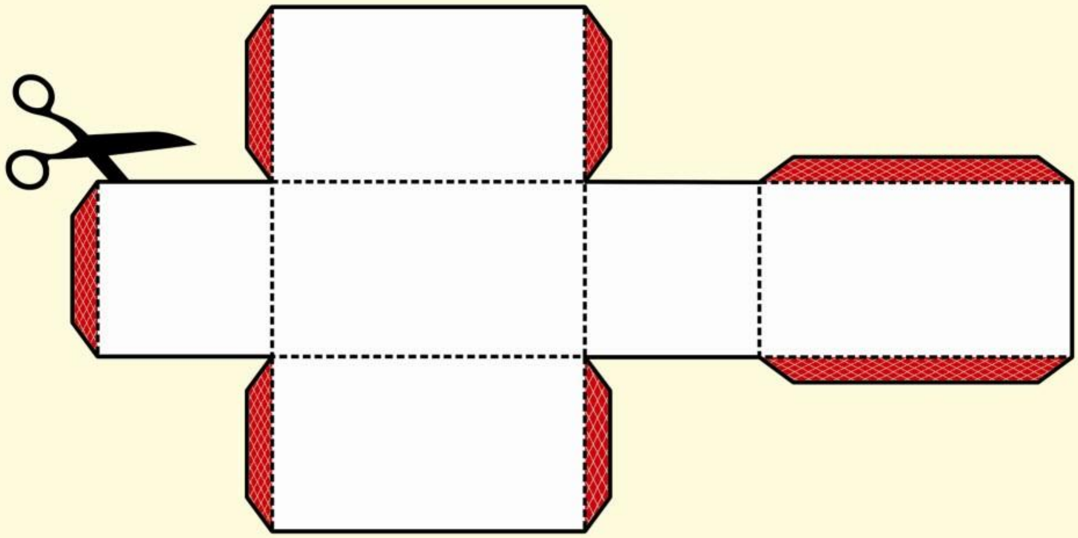
6.11.3.4 If the print graphic shows tab areas for gluing, they should be areas of texture on the tactile graphic.

6.11.3.5 There are manipulatives available for introducing this concept.

This page is intentionally blank.

Example 6-19: Nets

7. Cut along the outline, fold along the dotted lines, and glue the shaded tabs. What geometric shape does this net produce?

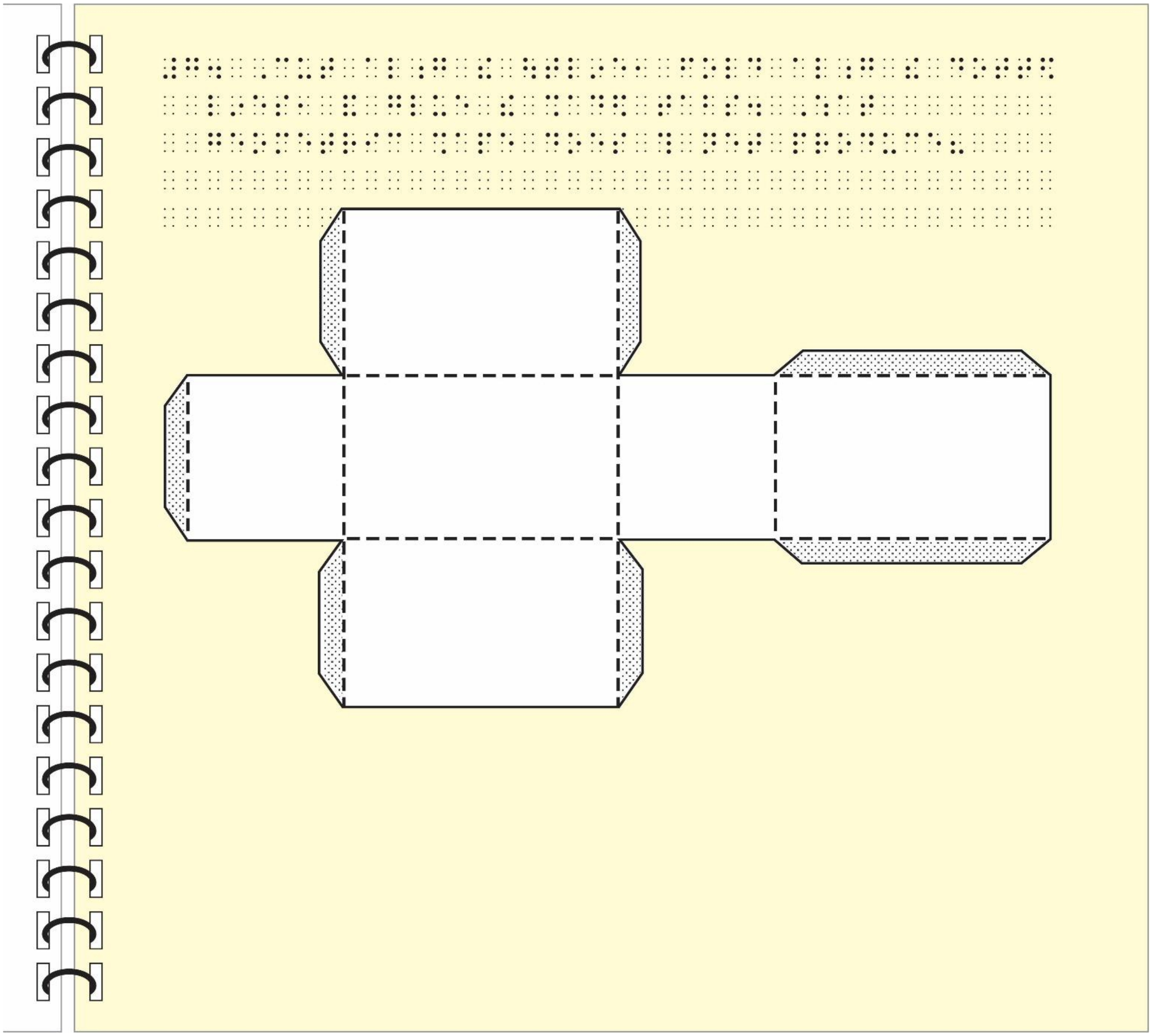


Example 6-19 UEB: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- UEB code
- omission of scissors in the tactile graphic (3.7)
- use of solid lines for the outline and dashed lines for the fold lines (6.11.3.2, 6.11.3.3)
- use of textured areas to show tabs or gluing areas (6.11.3.4)

Example 6-19 UEB: Nets



6.12 Venn Diagrams

A Venn diagram is usually made up of two or more overlapping circles, often used to show relationships between groups of items sharing common properties. Sometimes a rectangle called the "universal set" is drawn around the Venn diagram to represent all possible elements. (See Supplement Example 34: *Venn Diagram*.)

6.12.1 If the values are numeric, use the numeric indicator regardless of whether the Venn diagram is transcribed in UEB or Nemeth Code.

6.12.2 If the rectangle is shown in print, it must be included in the tactile graphic and labeled as in print.

6.12.3 It is helpful to differentiate between each circle by having line textures that are tactually distinct from one another. Each one of the original circles retains its own texture when overlapping occurs.

6.12.4 Labels must be centered within the overlapping circles as shown in print. If labels do not fit, use an alphabetic key rather than using lead lines or texture symbols.

6.13 Tessellations

A tessellation is an arrangement of shapes that forms a repeating pattern. The shapes fit together with no gaps or overlaps. (See Example 6-20: *Tessellation: Polygons*; Supplement Example 22: *Tessellation: Lizard*.)

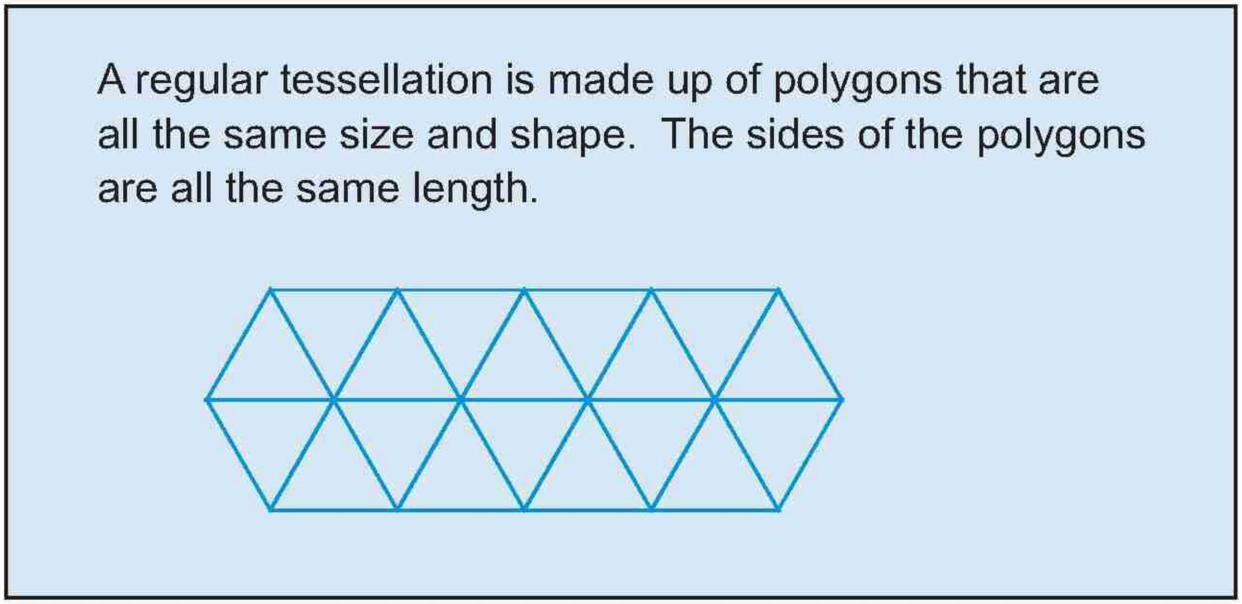
There are manipulatives available for introducing this concept.

6.13.1 Complex patterns should be simplified and enlarged. Show only enough to demonstrate how the shapes adjoin and form a repeating pattern.

6.13.2 The shapes should not make a raised edge by overlapping each other, but should align to form one shared edge or one outline.

This page is intentionally blank.

Example 6-20: Tessellation: Polygons

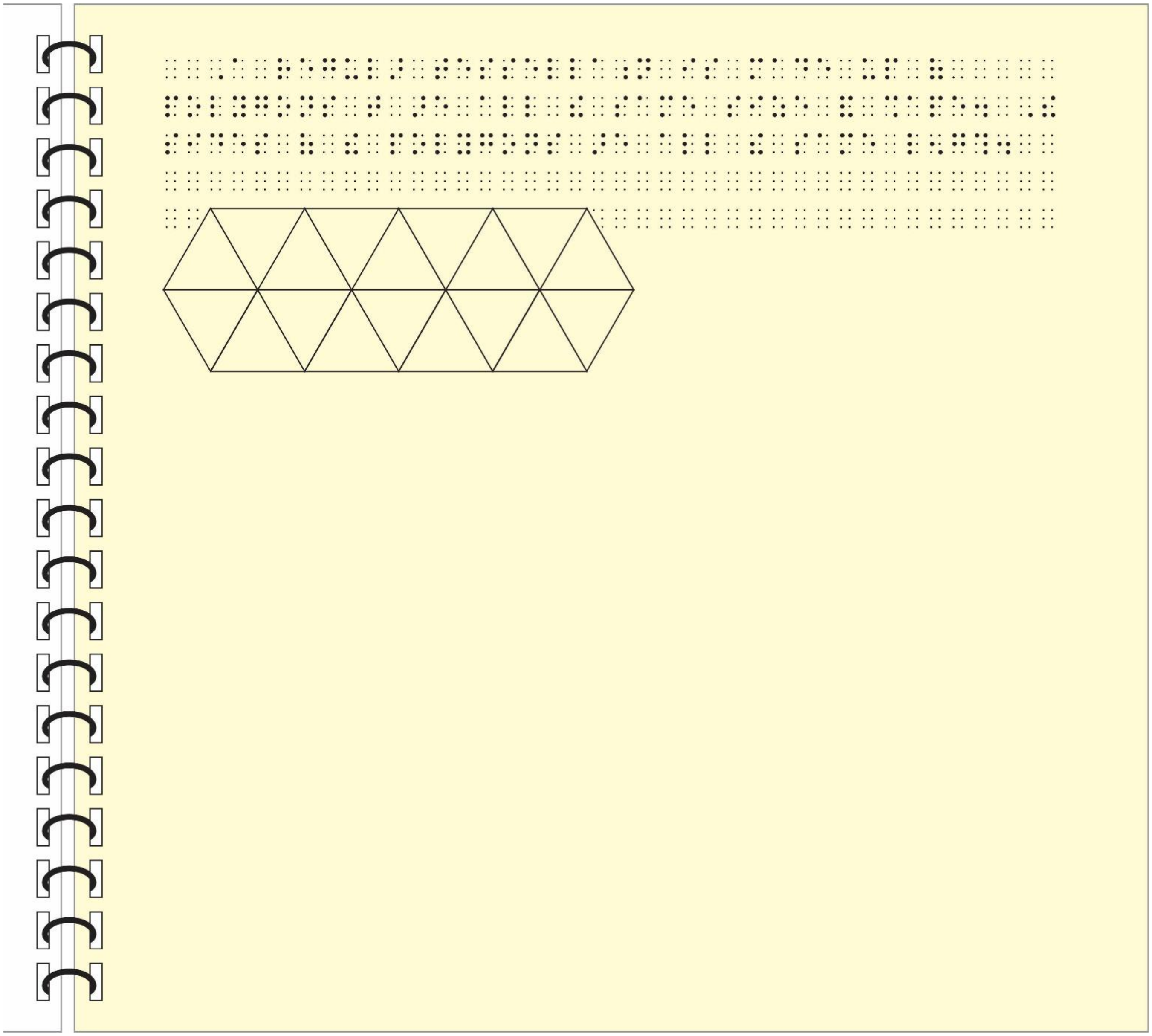


Example 6-20 UEB: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- UEB code
- alignment of individual shapes to form one shared edge (6.13.2)

Example 6-20 UEB: Tessellation: Polygons



6.14 Stem-and-Leaf Plots

A stem-and-leaf plot is a method of showing data distribution. It is a specialized table that is brailled according to the code in use.

When transcribing using UEB, all stem-and-leaf plots must be transcribed between the numeric passage indicator and terminator. No contractions can be used in numeric mode.

When transcribing using Nemeth within UEB contexts, all stem-and-leaf plots must be transcribed within Nemeth switch indicators even though the numbers may not be modified.

A stem-and-leaf plot should not be produced as a tactile graphic. (See Example 6-21: *Stem-and-Leaf Plot*.)

Example 6-21: Stem-and-Leaf Plot

These are Mary's test scores:

72, 49, 62, 58, 73, 55, 78, 83, 57, 63, 73, 73, 75, 85, 85, 64, 61, 67, 75, 91

The stem-and-leaf plot for her scores is shown below.

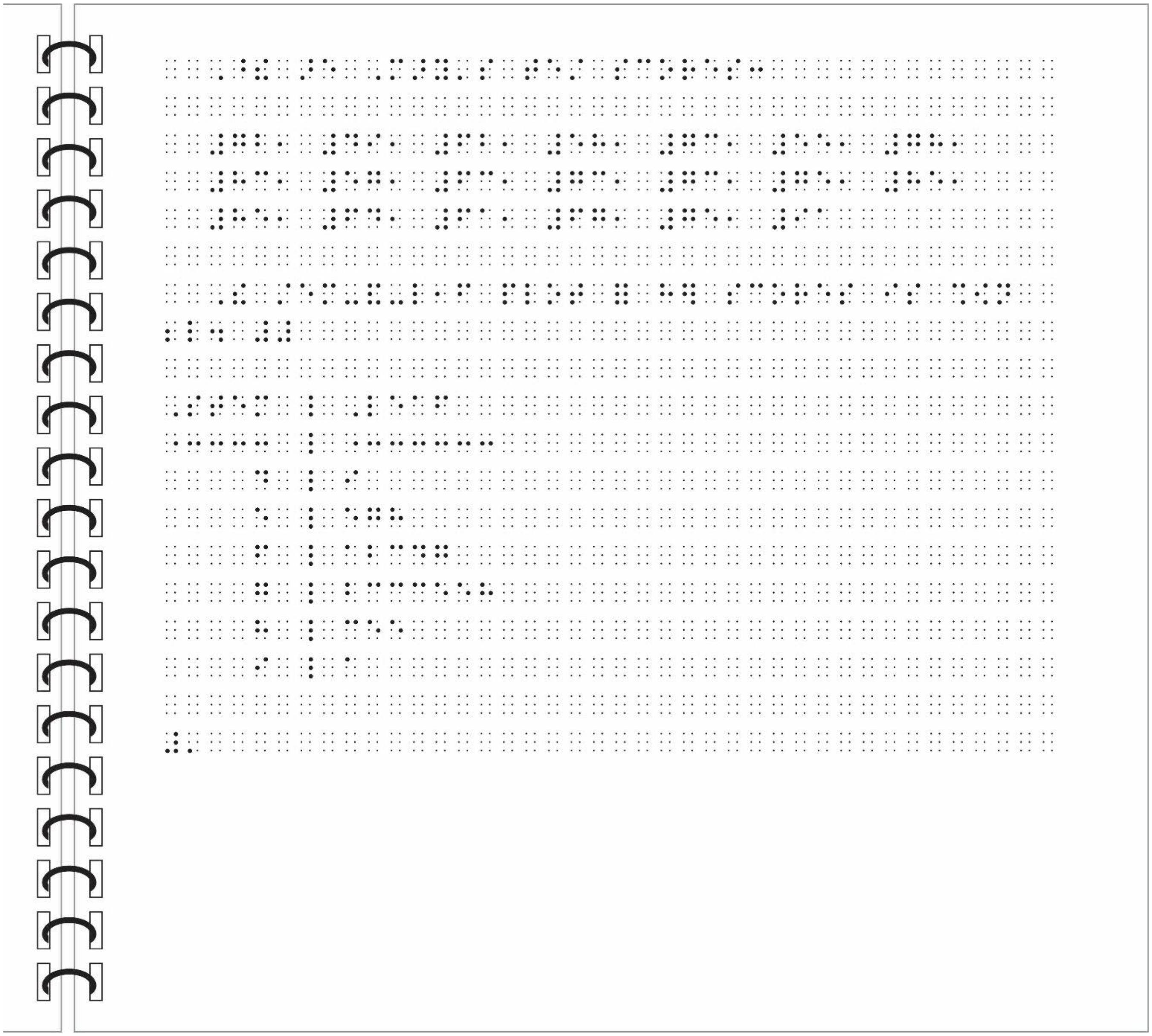
Stem	Leaf
4	9
5	5 7 8
6	1 2 3 4 7
7	2 3 3 3 5 5 8
8	3 5 5
9	1

Example 6-21 UEB: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- UEB code
- use of numeric passage indicators for stem-and-leaf plots when all entries consist entirely of numerals
- blank lines inserted before and after the stem-and-leaf plots
- use of the braille line mode to represent horizontal and vertical lines in print
- use of embossed braille symbols, should not be produced as a tactile graphic (6.14)

Example 6-21 UEB: Stem-and-Leaf Plot

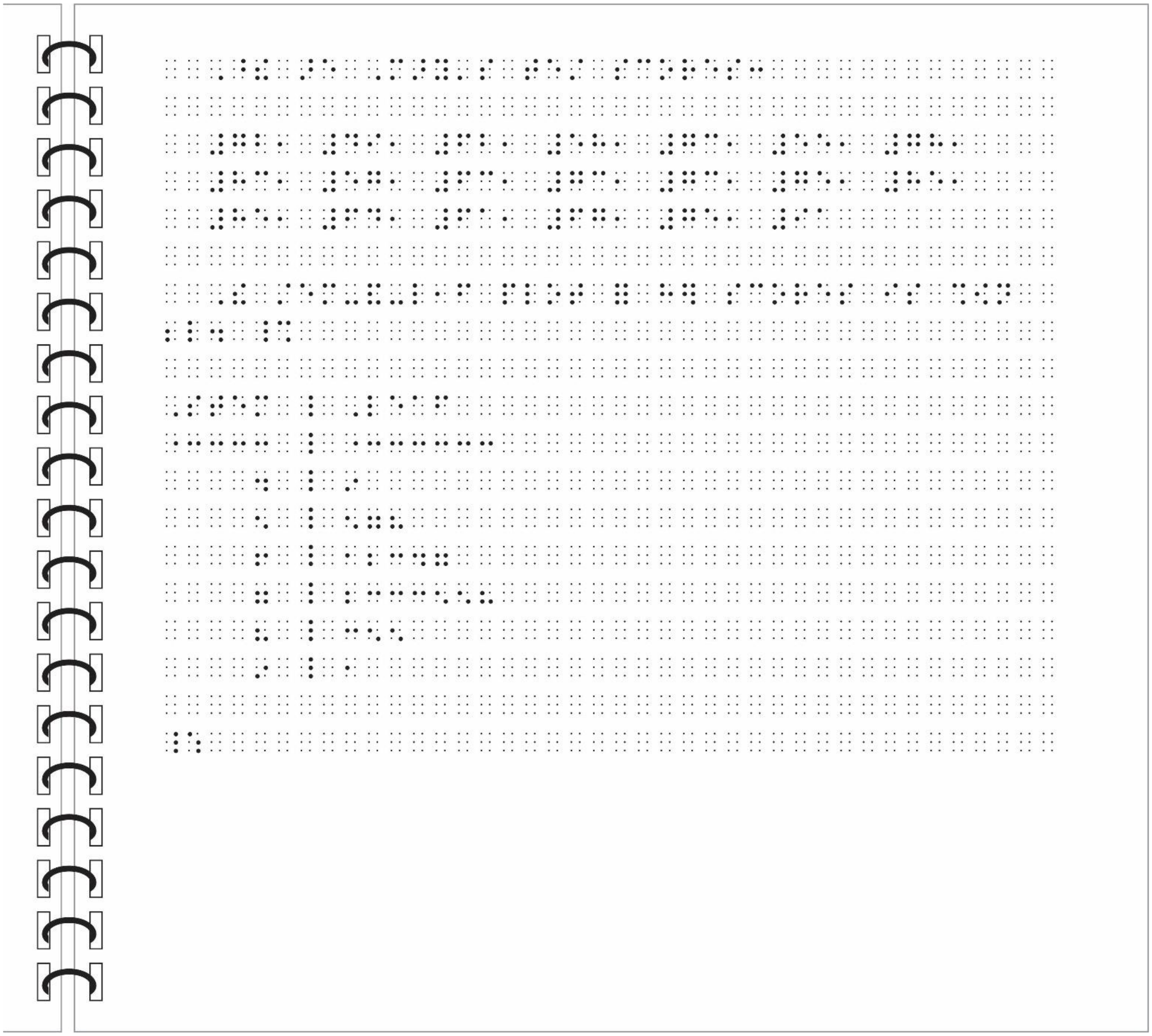


Example 6-21 Nemeth: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

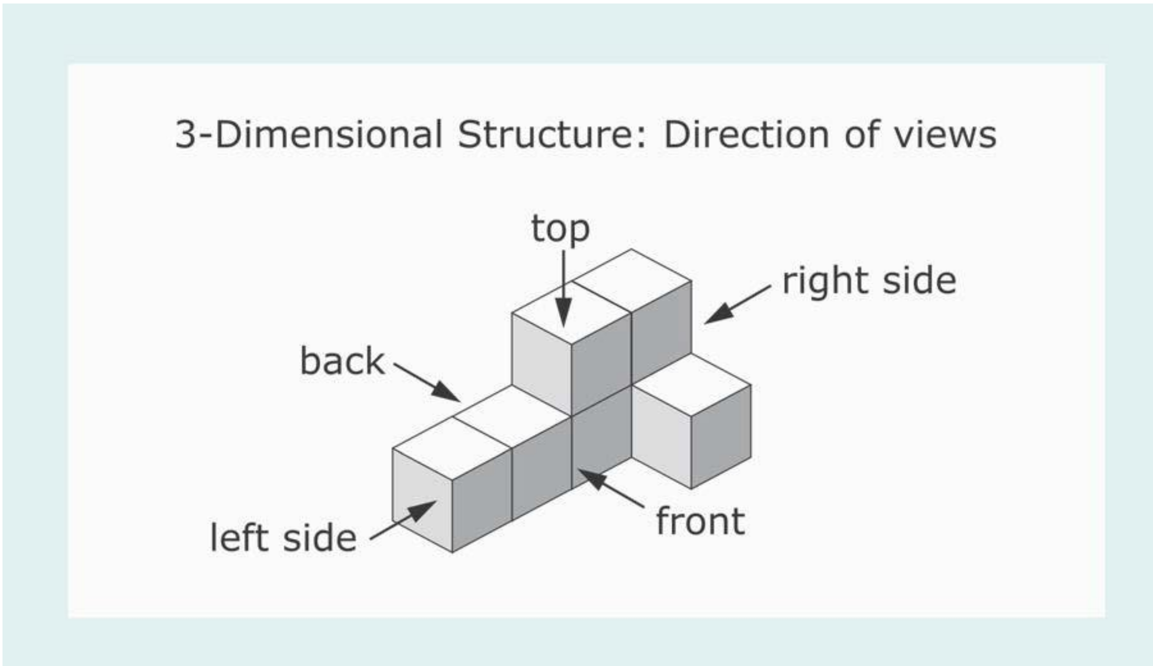
- Nemeth Braille Code
- use of Nemeth switch indicators to denote the change into and out of the Nemeth Braille Code even though the numbers are not modified
- non-use of numeric indicators, Nemeth rule for stem-and-leaf plots when all entries consist entirely of numerals (2.3)
- use of a braille separation line (5, 25) between the column heading and row items, similar to a table (2.3)
- use of a braille separation line (456) between columns, similar to a table (2.3)
- use of embossed braille symbols, should not be produced as a tactile graphic (6.14)

Example 6-21 Nemeth: Stem-and-Leaf Plot



6.15 Orthographic Drawings

An orthographic drawing communicates the shape and size of a three-dimensional object through a series of related two-dimensional views (See example below and Supplement Example 23a: *Orthographic View: Mat Plan*; Supplement Example 23b: *Orthographic View: Layering Method*.)



6.15.1 Orthographic drawings are very difficult to interpret by touch. The preferred way for a reader to interpret orthographic drawings is by using manipulatives (stacked or linking blocks).

6.15.2 A three-dimensional cube structure should not be reproduced in tactile graphic form as shown in print.

6.15.3 An orthographic drawing may be shown as a tactile graphic by using either the Mat Plan or the Layering Method. The Mat Plan is not able to show a block missing underneath a suspended block.

6.15.4 Include a note to explain the format used for orthographic views on the Transcriber's Notes page and/or before the first occurrence. Sample transcriber's note.

In braille, cubes may be presented from a top view in either column or layer form. When a solid structure is shown in print, only a base layer will be shown with a number designating the total cubes stacked in each column. When the print structure is shown with one or more cubes missing (below an upper level), each layer will be shown in order from bottom to top. The shaded area represents the position of a cube.

6.15.5 **Mat Plan** (See Example 6-22: *Orthographic View of Mat Plan*; Supplement Example 23a: *Orthographic View: Mat Plan*.)

6.15.5.1 In addition to the embedded transcriber's note placed within pertinent braille text, the following explanation should also be included on the Transcriber's Notes page or immediately before the first occurrence of the cube structure.

In braille, solid cube structures are presented from a top view in column form. Only a base layer is shown, with a number designating the total cubes stacked in each column.

6.15.5.2 Insert a transcriber's note explaining the Mat Plan format. Sample transcriber's note.

cubes stacked in columns

6.15.5.3 Draw squares showing the base layer of the orthographic drawing. In each square, braille the number of cubes that make up that column.

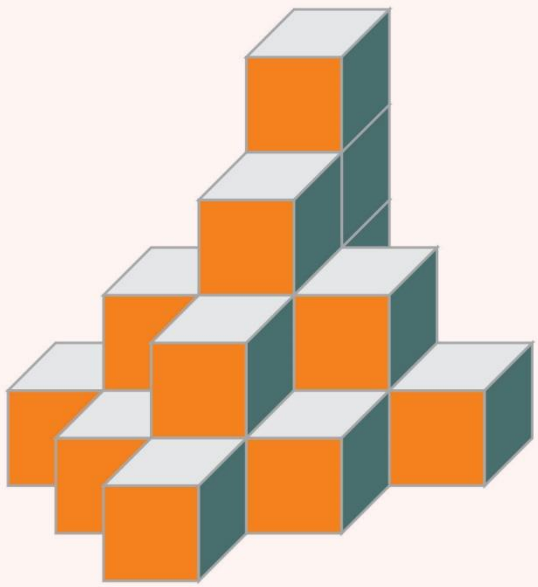
6.15.5.4 Label the Mat Plan with “front,” “back,” “left,” and “right” without transcriber's note indicators (3.1.4).

This page is intentionally blank.

Example 6-22: Orthographic View—Mat Plan

How many blocks are there in this stack of cubes?

If the side of each cube is 2 inches in length, what is the volume of the total structure?



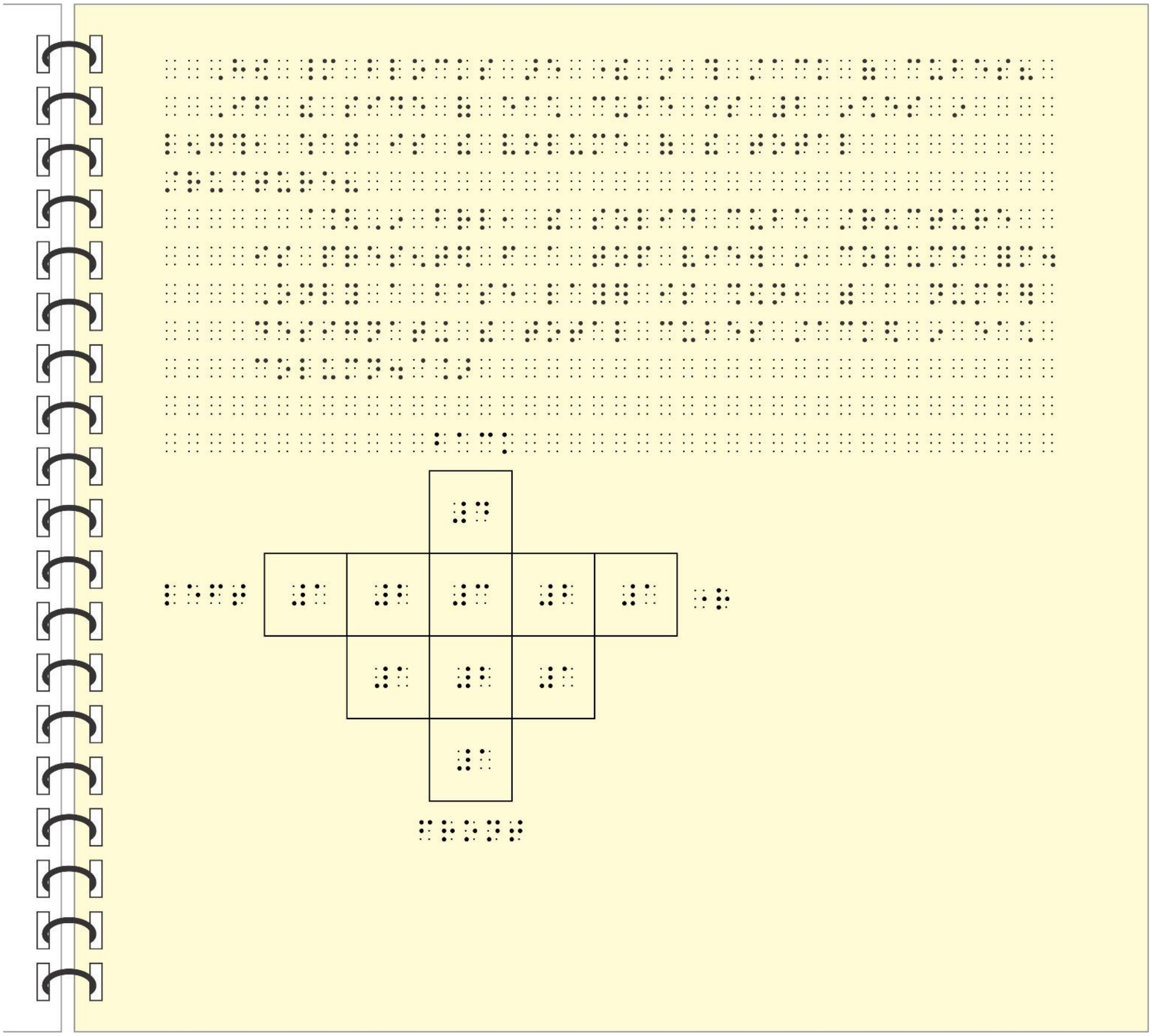
Transcriber's Note:
In braille, the solid cube structure is presented from a top view in column form. Only a base layer is shown, with a number designating the total cubes stacked in each column.

Example 6-22 UEB: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- UEB code
- mat plan used because this structure has no suspended blocks (6.15.3)
- explanation of the format before the diagram (6.15.4)
- drawing of squares showing the base layer of the orthographic drawing. In each square, the number of cubes that make up that column is brailled. (6.15.5.3)
- inclusion of labels for the front, back, left, and right without transcriber's note indicators (3.1.4, 6.15.5.4)

Example 6-22 UEB: Orthographic View—Mat Plan



6.15.6 **Layering Method** (See Example 6-23: *Orthographic View—Layering Method*; Supplement Example 23b: *Orthographic View: Layering Method*.)

6.15.6.1 In addition to the embedded transcriber's note placed within pertinent braille text, the following explanation should also be included on the Transcriber's Notes page or immediately before the first occurrence of the cube structure.

> In braille, solid cube structures with one or more cubes missing (below an upper level) are presented from a top view in layer form. Each layer is shown in order from bottom to top. The shaded area represents the position of a cube.

6.15.6.2 Insert a transcriber's note stating the number of layers in the cube structure. Sample transcriber's note.

> cubes in two layers

6.15.6.3 Insert an additional transcriber's note before each layer (e.g., Layer 1, bottom; Layer 2; Layer 3, top).

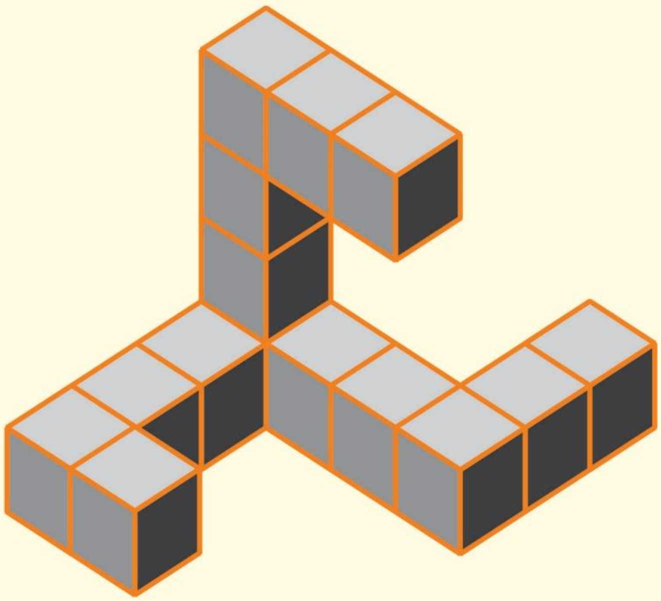
6.15.6.4 Draw an area grid of each layer, texturing each square that contains a block.

6.15.6.5 Label each layer with "front," "back," "left," and "right" without transcriber's note indicators (3.1.4).

This page is intentionally blank

Example 6-23: Orthographic View—Layering Method

Count the cubes and write the volume of the stucture (cubes have side length 1 unit).



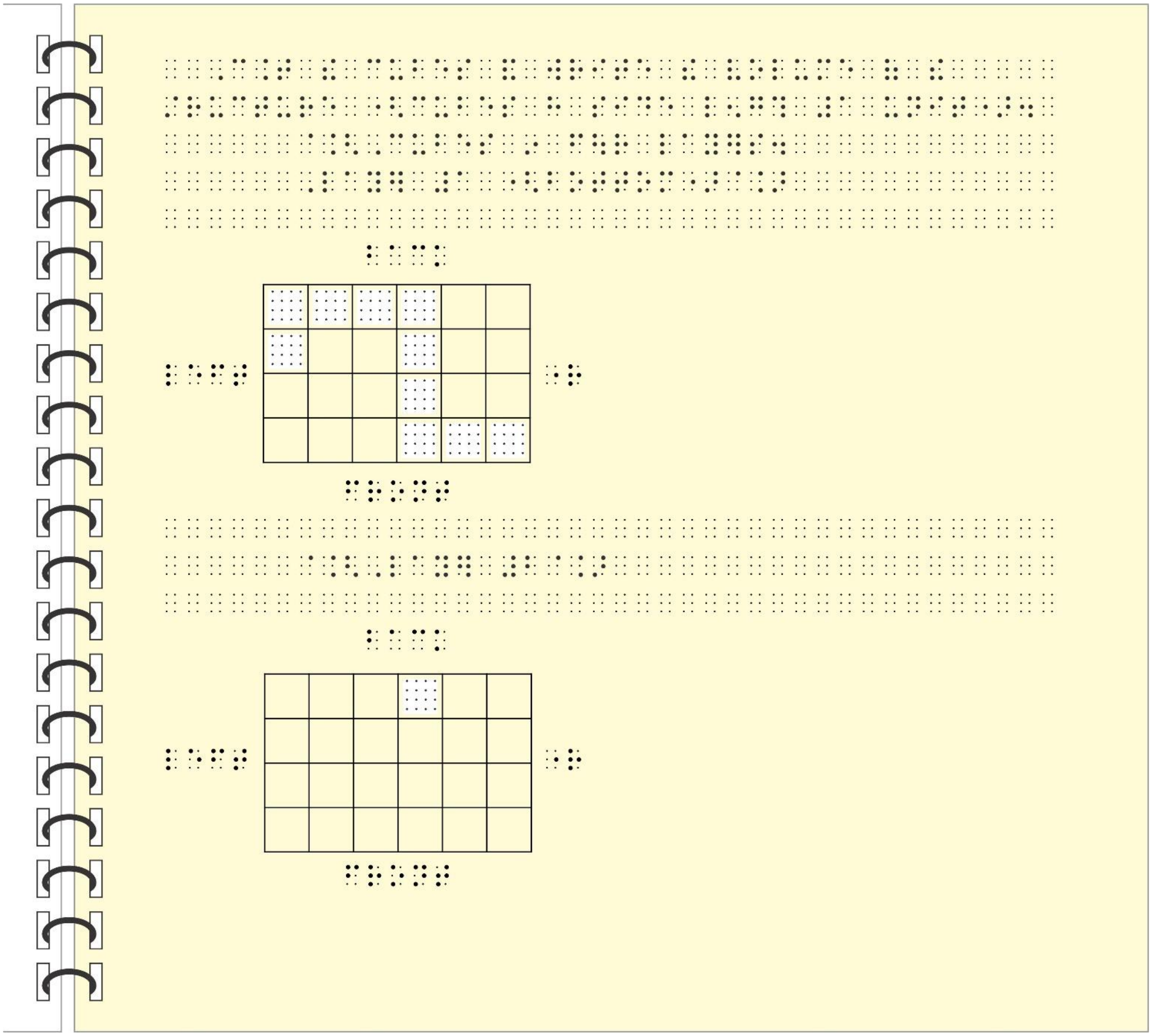
Transcriber's Note:
Cubes in four layers.

Example 6-23 UEB: Tactile Graphic Design Points

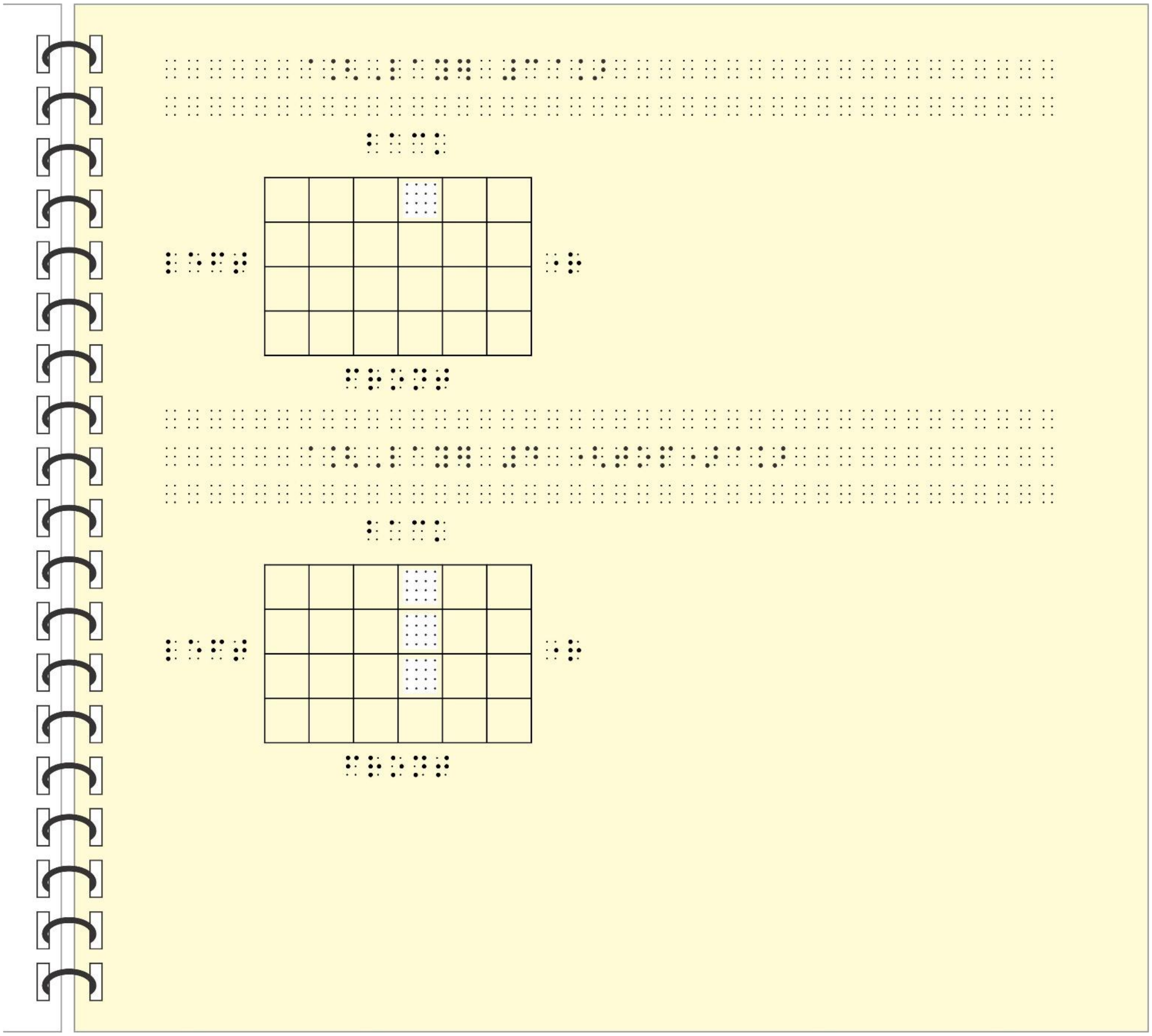
The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- UEB code
- explanation of the format in the (abbreviated) transcriber's note before the diagram states the number of layers in the cube structure (6.15.4) (6.15.6.2)
- layering method used to show the structure because some cubes are suspended (with no cubes below them) (6.15.6)
- texturing of squares containing a cube in the area grid (6.15.6.2)
- layers labeled from bottom to top with the appropriate layer number and the relative position (6.15.6.3)
- inclusion of transcriber’s notes to identify each view shown (6.15.6.2)
- inclusion of labels for the front, back, left, and right without transcriber’s note indicators (3.1.4, 6.15.6.5)

Example 6-23 UEB: Orthographic View—Layering Method



Example 6-23 UEB: Orthographic View—Layering Method (cont.)



6.16 Ancient Numeration Systems

Ancient numeration systems should not be produced as a tactile graphic.

6.17 Chemistry

If transcribing chemistry material in UEB, follow the rules outlined in *Unified English Braille Guidelines for Technical Material*.

If transcribing chemistry material in Nemeth, follow the rules outlined in *Chemistry Notation Using the Nemeth Braille Code, 2022*; *The Nemeth Braille Code for Mathematics and Science Notation, 2022;* and all relevant updates. Note: A switch to Nemeth Code is required if diagrams contain math, chemistry symbols, electron dots, or chemical bonds. The switch to Nemeth is not necessary if a diagram is comprised of only raised lines with no braille symbols.

Specific provisions using braille symbols for the construction of chemical notation, such as bonds, electron dots, ring structures, and arrows, are outlined in the above reference material. When transcribing chemistry, biology, and physics texts, refer to these codes for proper formation of chemical symbols and structures.

If tactile illustrations are necessary, the *Guidelines and Standards for Tactile Graphics* must be followed in preparing such tactile graphics.

6.17.1 When it is necessary to show lead lines, directional arrows, horizontal braces { }, and/or brackets [ ] extending through bonds, they must be shown in tactile form. The embossed symbols for arrows must not be used.

6.17.1.1 When arrows show direction and/or lead from and to operation arrows, show displacement or substitution reactions, and are in an electron configuration (orbitals), a tactile line with an arrowhead must be used.

6.17.1.2 When arrows represent lead lines, a tactile line without an arrowhead must be used.

6.17.1.3 When a brace is used to join a portion of a molecule to its label, a tactile brace must be used.

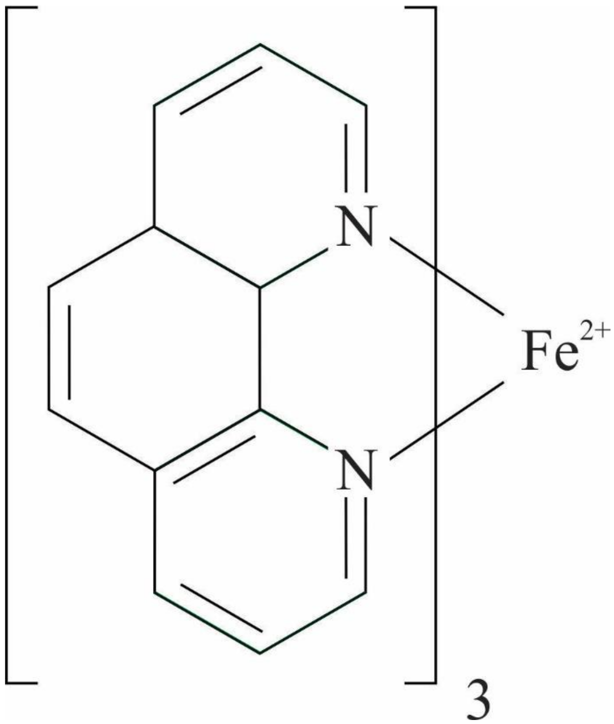
6.17.1.4 A textured line must be drawn when a bracket extends through a bond. (See Example 6-24: *Ring Bond with Bracket*.)

6.17.1.5 Whether transcribing according to UEB or Nemeth within UEB contexts, it is preferred to draw the bonds and arrows as tactile (raised lines) rather than using braille symbols.

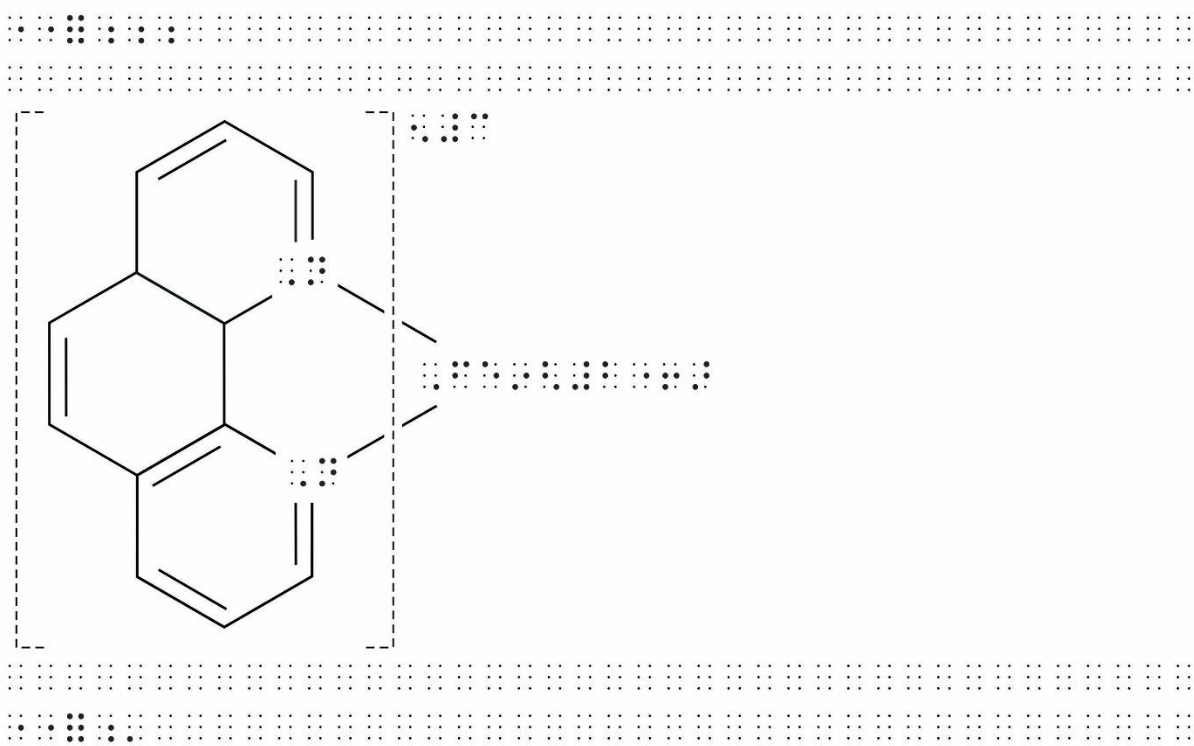
Electron dots must not be shown as tactile dots, but must be shown using the appropriate braille symbols.

If braille symbols are used to represent the chemical structure, the appropriate rules for UEB or Nemeth within UEB contexts must be followed (e.g., grade 1 passage indicators, switch code indicators). These symbols must be listed on the Special Symbols page or explained in a transcriber's note prior to the tactile graphic.

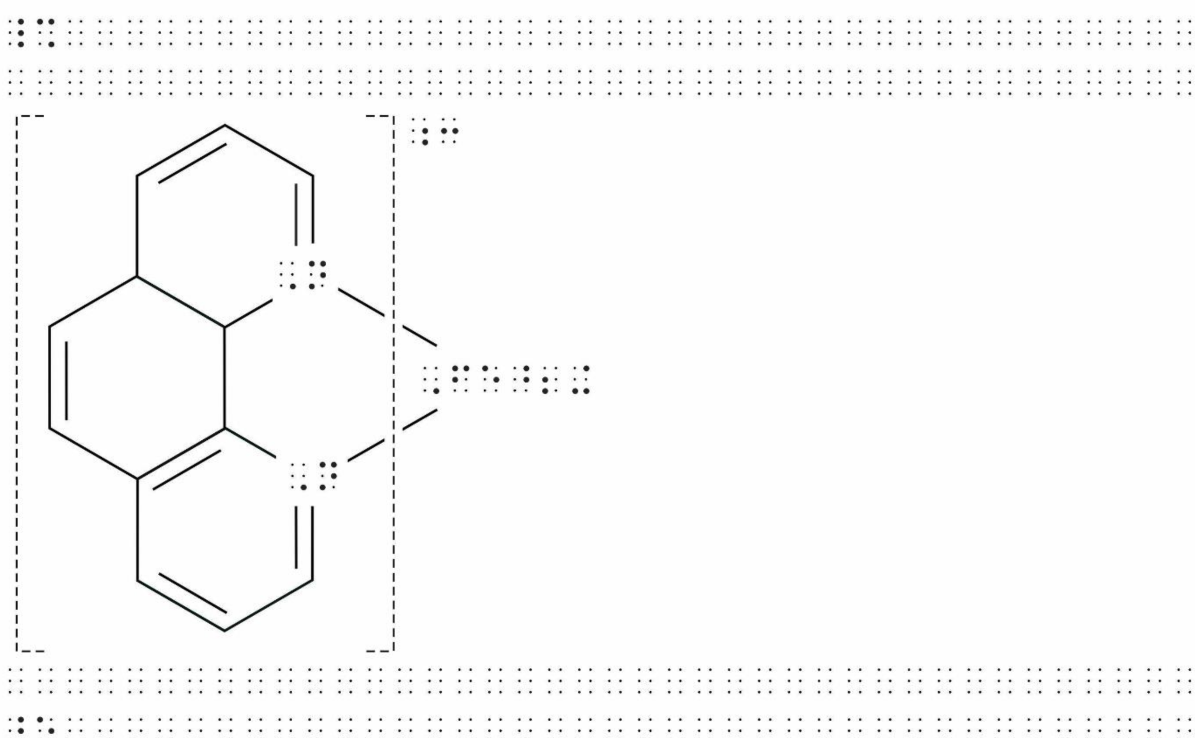
Example 6-24: Ring Bond with Bracket



Example 6-24 UEB: Ring Bond with Bracket



Example 6-24 Nemeth: Ring Bond with Bracket

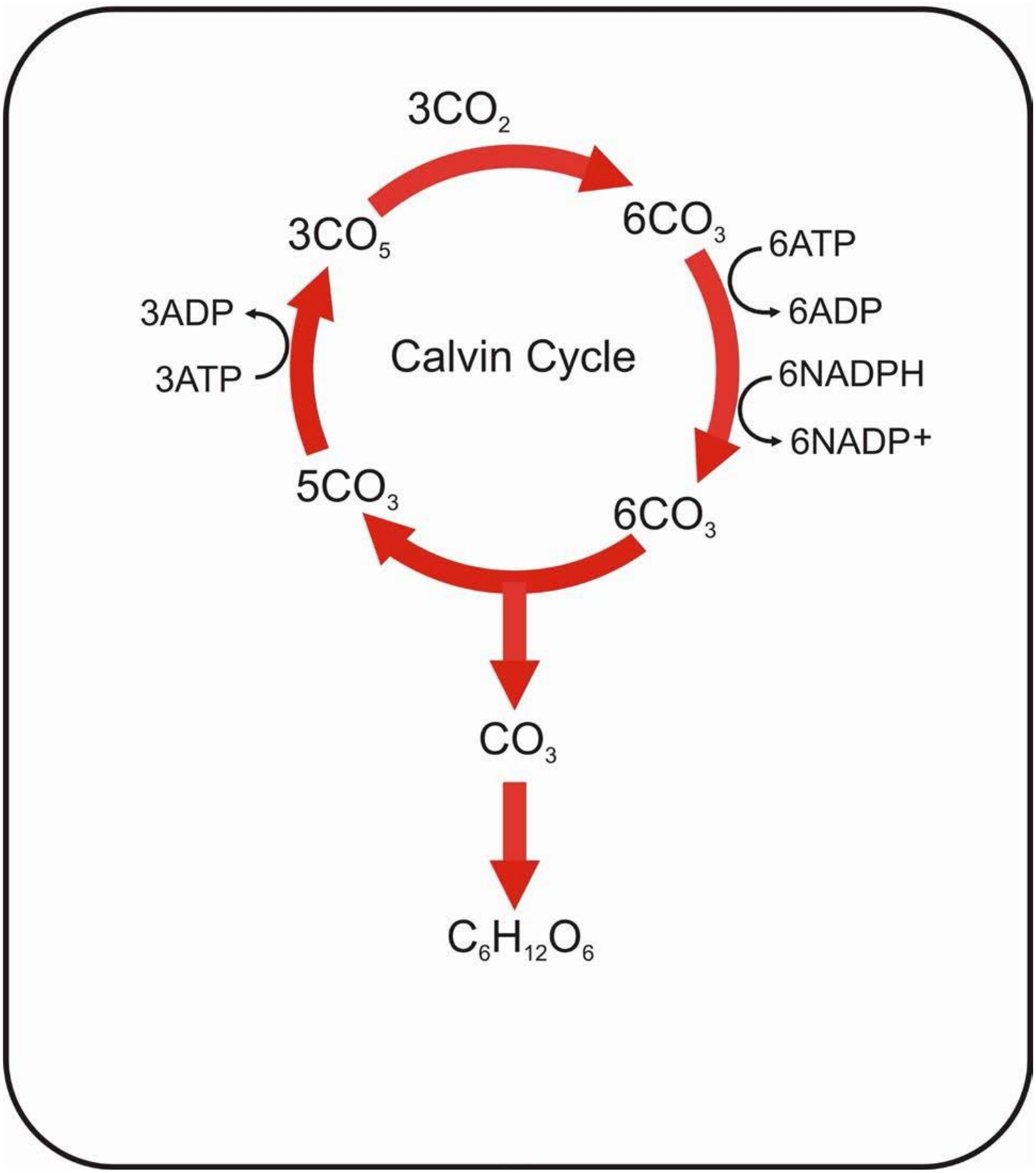


6.17.2 Care must be taken to place labels so they do not interfere with the actual structure and yet make it clear which portion of the structure is being labeled. (See Example 6-25: *Calvin Cycle*.)

When labels apply to only some molecules or to a portion of a molecule, align the label with the molecule or the portion being labeled. The label has to be aligned above the labeled molecule with a tactile lead line added for orientation.

This page is intentionally blank.

Example 6-25: Calvin Cycle

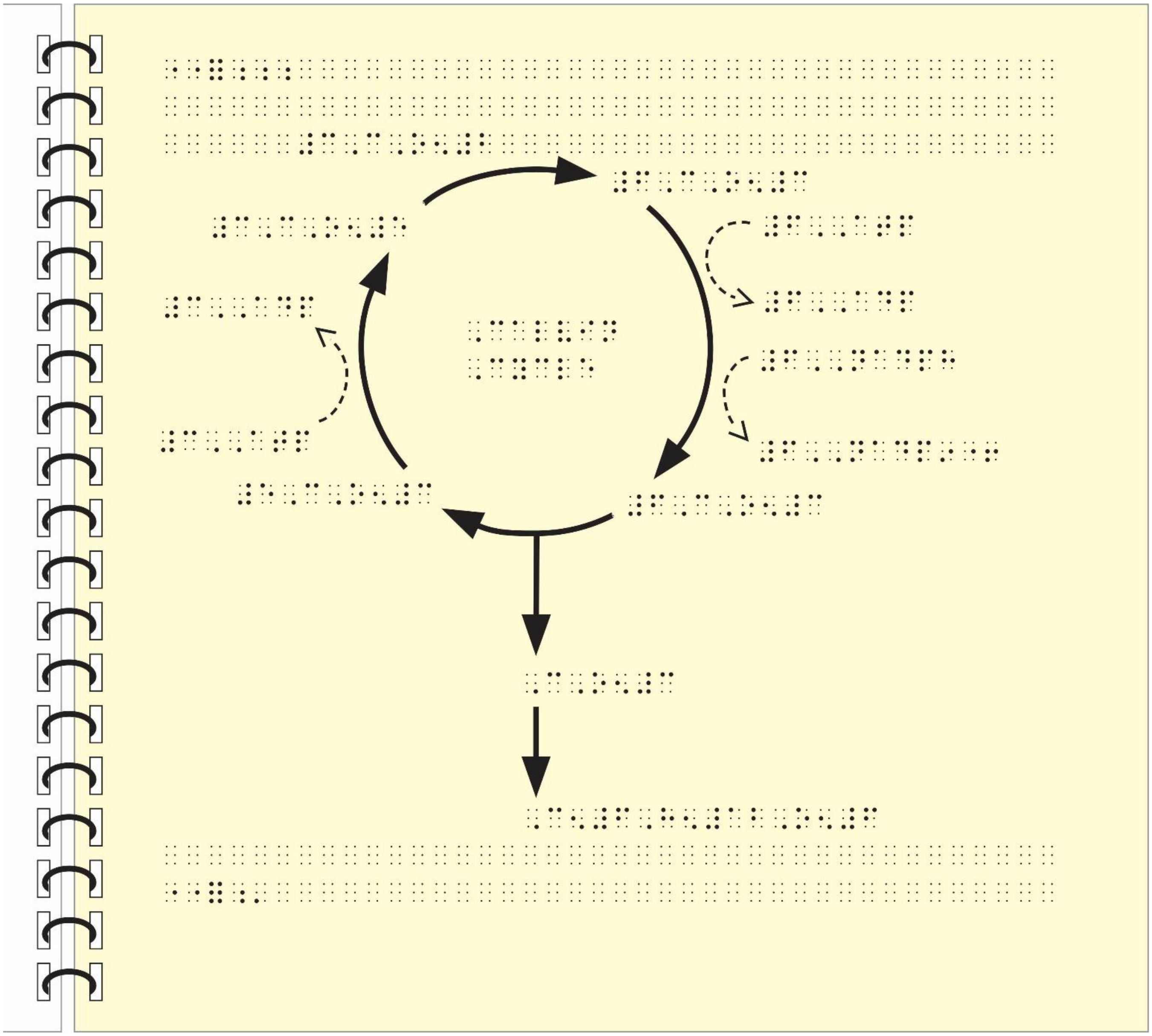


Example 6-25 UEB: Tactile Graphic Design Points

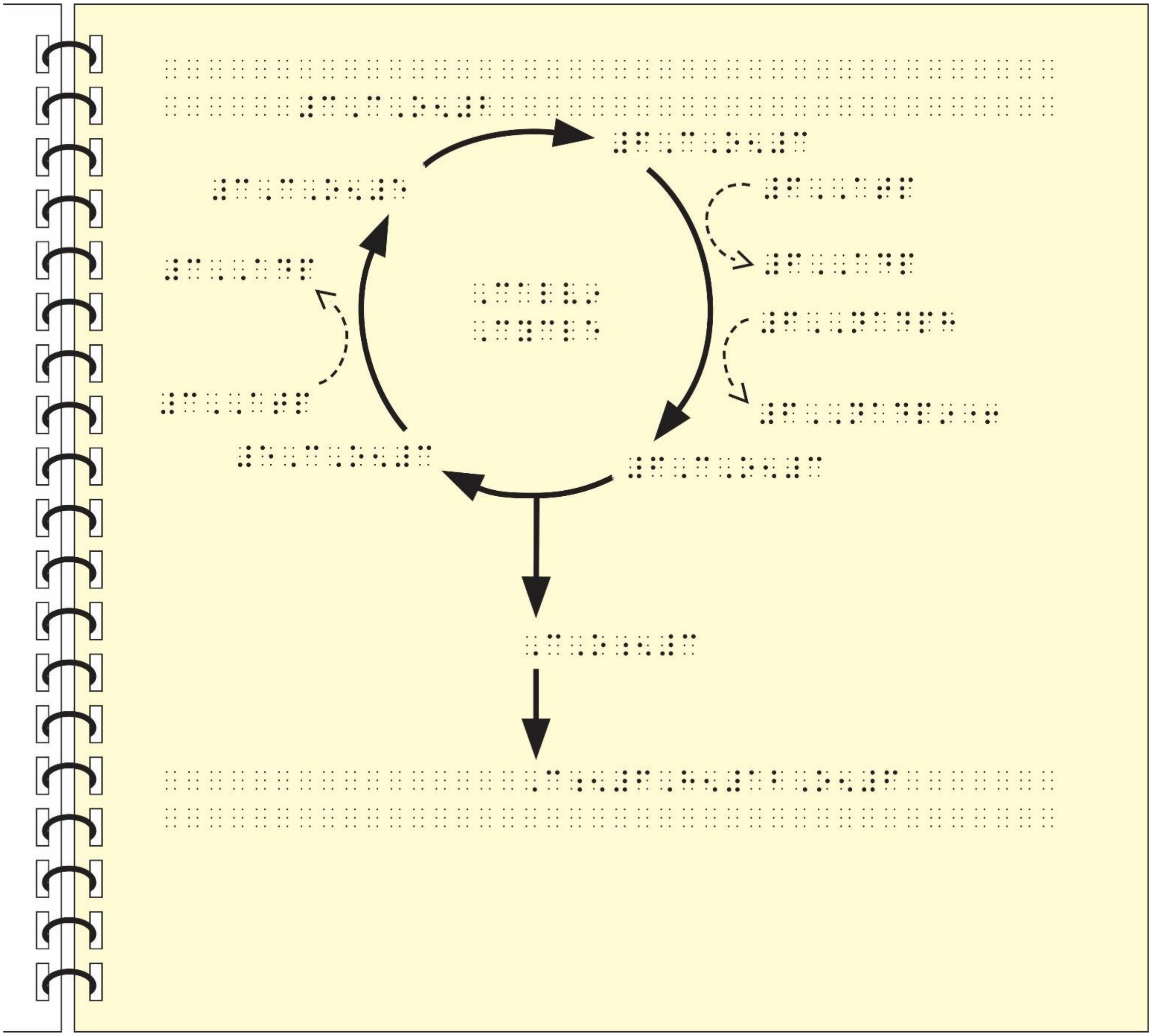
The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- UEB code (shown using 2 different methods)
- use of the grade 1 passage indicator and terminator (Option 1)
- use of the grade 1 symbol indicator on 2 labels where required (Option 2)
- placement of adjacent directional lines 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) apart
- placement of labels for chemical formulae so that the arrow points to the start or end of the chemical formula, similar to the lead line (3.4.3.6)
- use of two different arrowhead styles (3.4.3.7)
- use of different directional line textures (6.17.1.1)
- placement of labels does not interfere with the structure (6.17.2)
- produced as a tactile graphic rather than as a list (7.3.14)

Example 6-25 UEB: Calvin Cycle–Option 1



Example 6-25 UEB: Calvin Cycle–Option 2

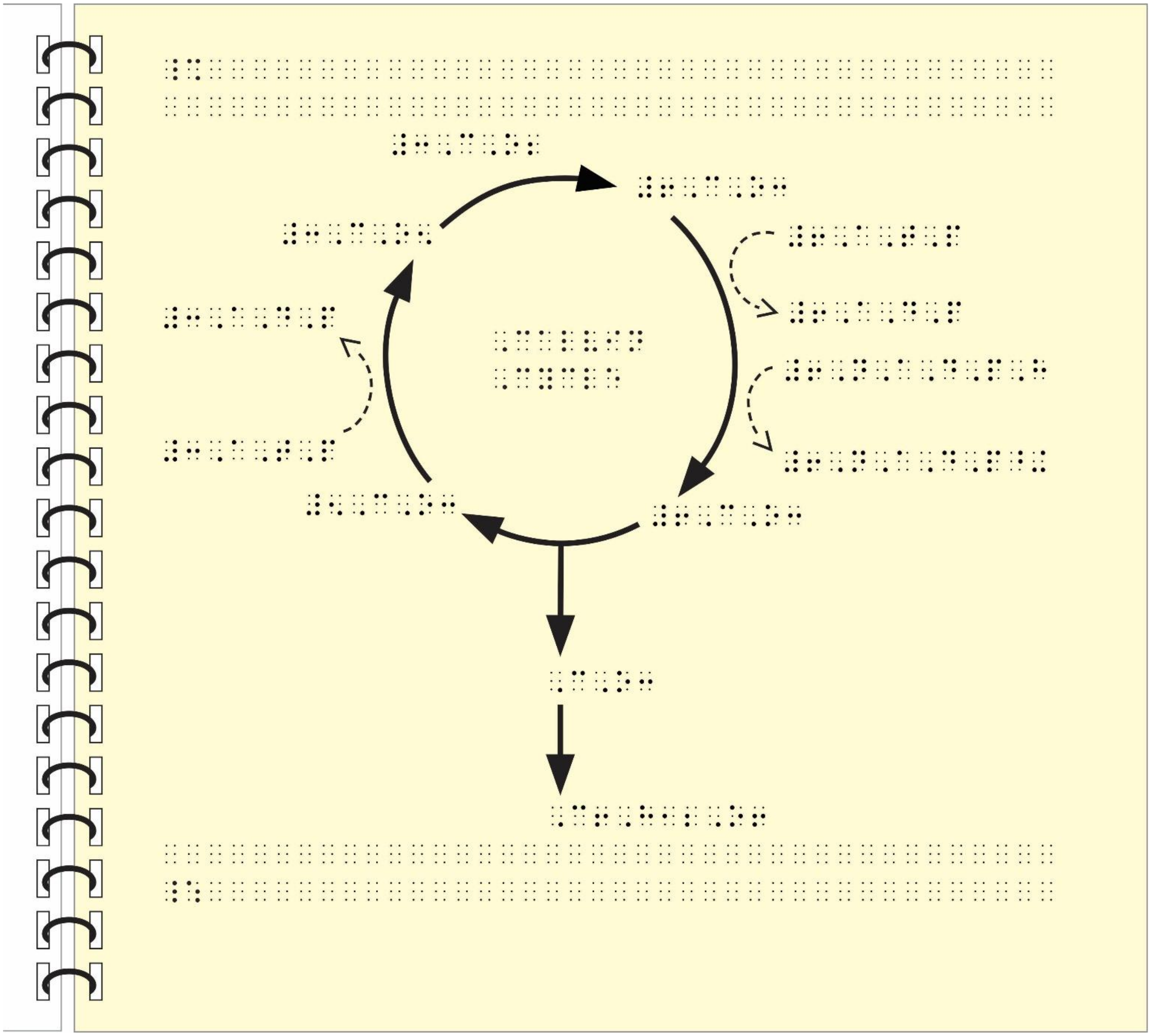


Example 6-25 Nemeth: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

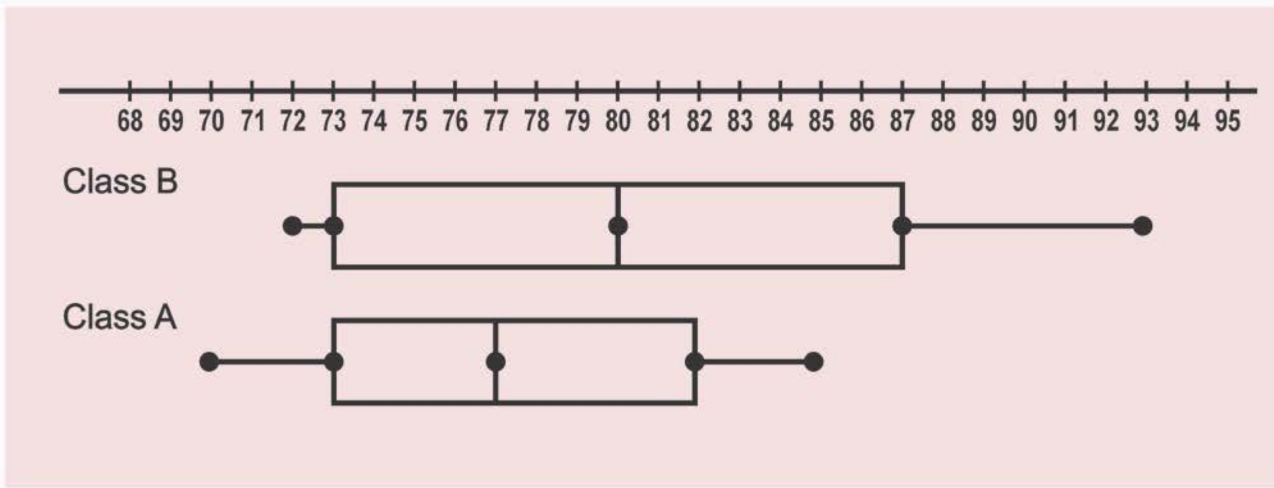
- chemistry braille code
- use of Nemeth switch indicators to denote the change into and out of the Nemeth Braille Code
- placement of adjacent directional lines 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) apart (2.11)
- placement of labels for chemical formulae so that the arrow points to the start or end of the chemical formula, similar to the lead line (3.4.3.6)
- use of two different arrowhead styles (3.4.3.7)
- use of different directional line textures (6.17.1.1)
- placement of labels does not interfere with the structure (6.17.2)
- produced as a tactile graphic rather than as a list (7.3.14)

Example 6-25 Nemeth: Calvin Cycle



This page is intentionally blank.

Example 6-26: Box-and-Whisker Plot (Horizontal)

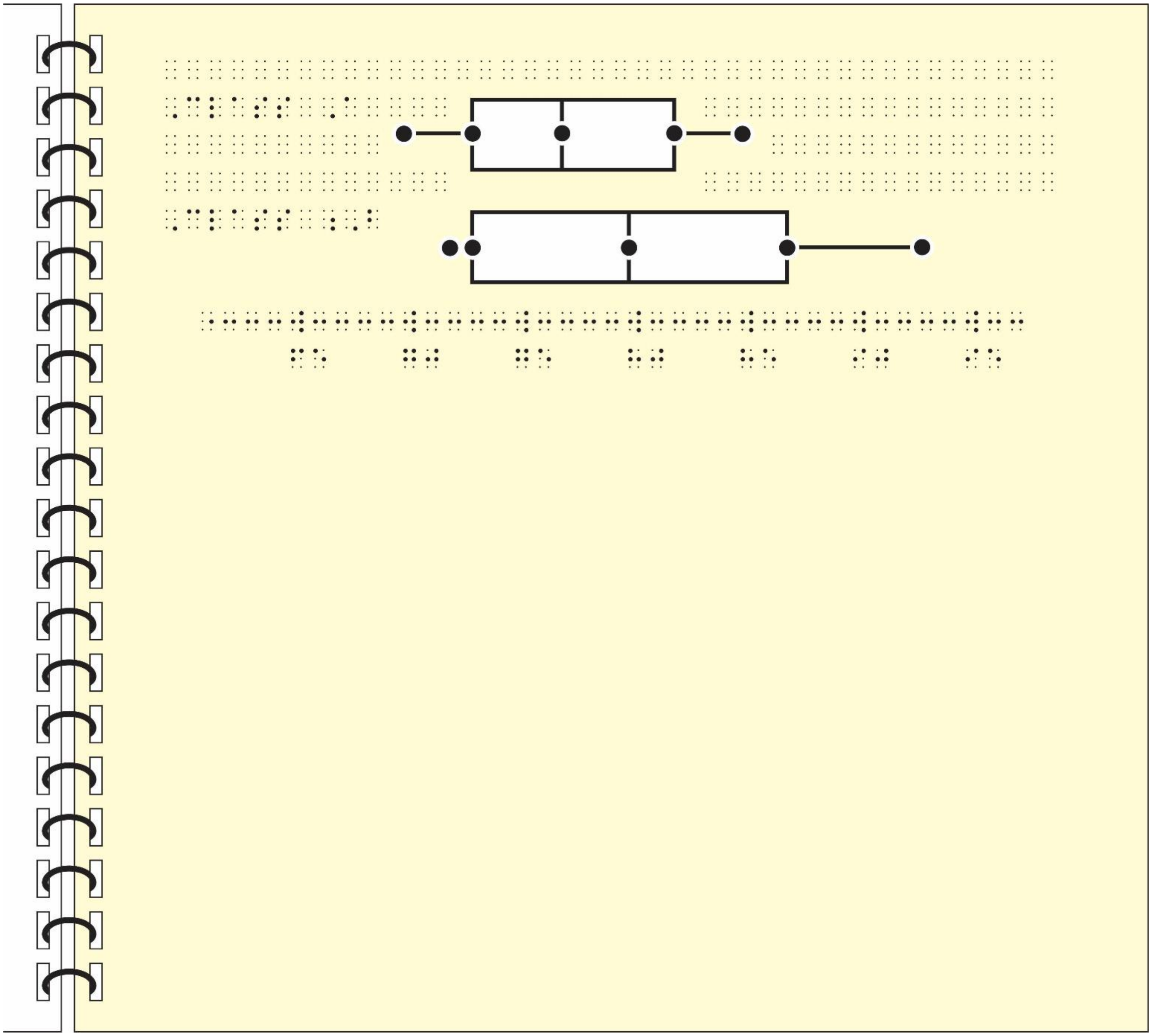


Example 6-26 UEB: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- UEB code
- intervals of 5 units only are labeled to allow more space for braille labeling (2.1)
- addition of value 65 on the number line because values are in intervals of 5; the print number line starts at 68 (2.1)
- placement of box plot labels (Class A and Class B) at the left margin (2.7)
- spacing of at least 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) between each component (number line, box plot, and labels) (2.11)
- use of the Special Symbols page to explain braille dot symbols (5.13, 6.5.1.13)
- non-use of numeric indicators for values on the number line (6.5.1.1)
- non-use of arrowheads on the number line in braille, follows print (6.5.1.3)
- alignment of the first digit of the numeric label with a regular scale mark (6.5.1.8)
- combination of braille symbol representation for the number line and collage or digital file to produce box plots (6.5.3.3)
- movement of box plots above the number line; a mirror image of the box plots below the number line in print (6.5.3.6)
- size of plotted points is uniform and larger than a braille dot (6.5.3.7)
- placement of the box line closest to the number line, no more than 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) from the component (6.5.3.11)

Example 6-26 UEB: Box-and-Whisker Plot (Horizontal)

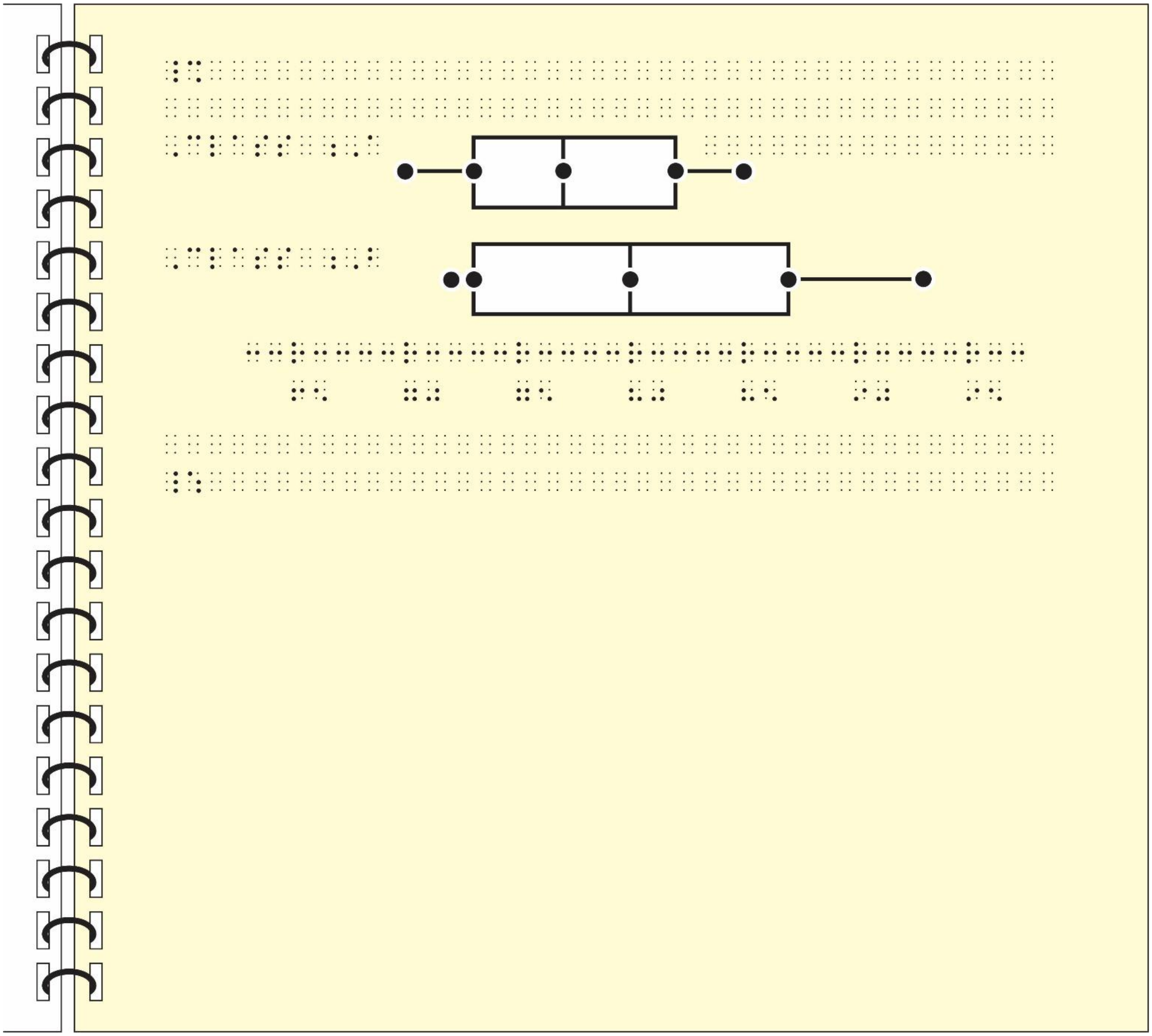


Example 6-26 Nemeth: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

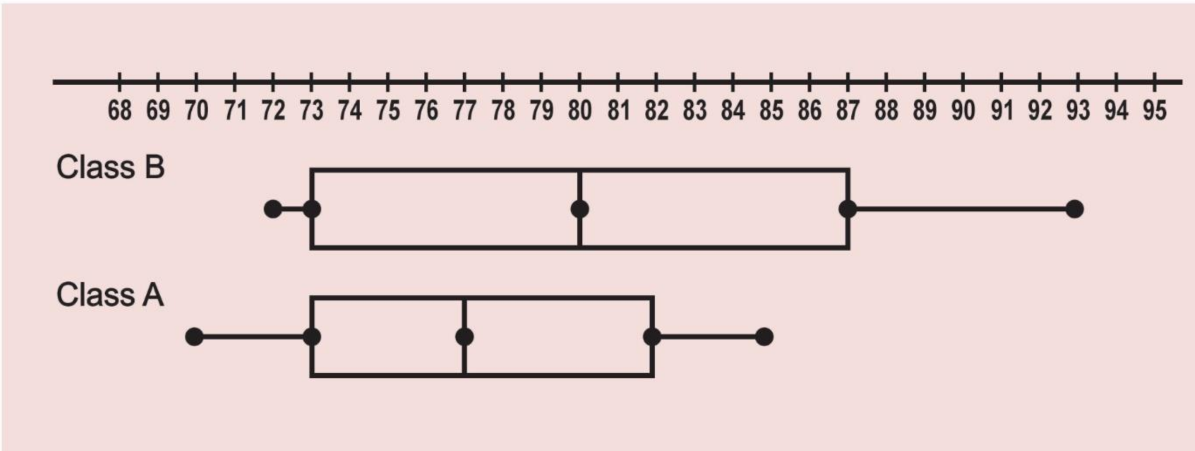
- Nemeth Braille Code
- use of Nemeth switch indicators to denote the change into and out of the Nemeth Braille Code
- intervals of 5 units only are labeled to allow more space for braille labeling (2.1)
- addition of value 65 on the number line, because values are in intervals of 5; the print number line starts at 68 (2.1)
- placement of box plot labels (Class A and Class B) at the left margin (2.7)
- spacing of at least 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) between each component (number line, box plot, and labels) (2.11)
- use of the Special Symbols page to explain braille dot symbols (5.13, 6.5.1.13)
- non-use of numeric indicators for values on the number line (6.5.1.1)
- non-use of arrowheads on the number line in braille, follows print (6.5.1.3)
- alignment of the first digit of the numeric label with a regular scale mark (6.5.1.8)
- combination of braille symbol representation for the number line and collage or digital file to produce box plots (6.5.3.3)
- movement of box plots above the number line; a mirror image of the box plots below the number line in print (6.5.3.6)
- size of plotted points is uniform and larger than a braille dot (6.5.3.7)
- placement of the box line closest to the number line, no more than 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) from component (6.5.3.11)

Example 6-26 Nemeth: Box-and-Whisker Plot (Horizontal)



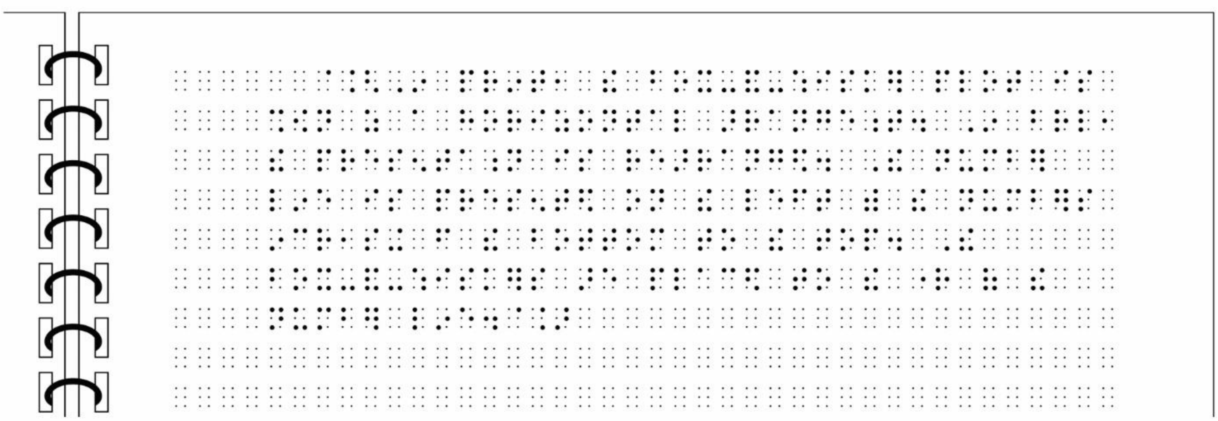
This page is intentionally blank.

Example 6-27: Box-and-Whisker Plot



Transcriber's Note:

In print, the box-and-whisker plot is shown as a horizontal arrangement. In braille, the presentation is rearranged. The number line is presented on the left with the numbers increasing from the bottom to the top. The box-and-whiskers are placed to the right of the number line.

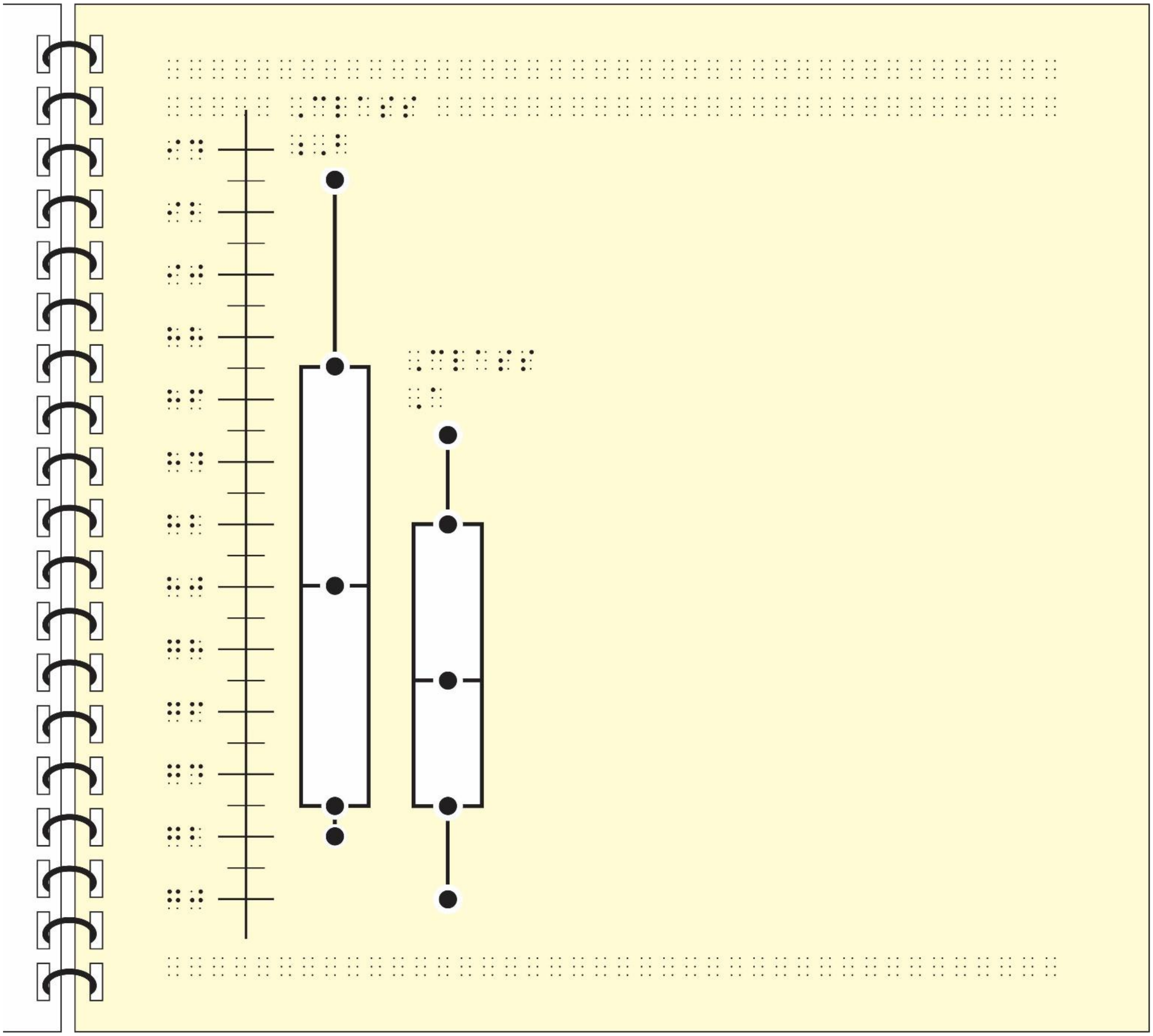


Example 6-27 UEB: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- UEB code
- intervals of 2 units only are labeled to allow more space for braille labeling (2.1)
- use of blank lines before and after the diagram (tactile graphic guidelines and rules for spatial arrangement) (2.7, 5.1.2, 6.5.1.2)
- spacing of at least 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) between each component (number line, box plot, and labels) (2.11)
- use of a transcriber's note to explain rearrangement of box-and-whisker plot (2.14)
- cropping of the number line to allow the box-and-whisker plot to fit on one page (3.7)
- placement of box plot labels (Class A and Class B) above the box-and-whisker plot (5.10.5)
- non-use of numeric indicators for labels on the number line (6.5.1.1)
- non-use of arrowheads on the number line in braille, follows print (6.5.1.3)
- alignment of numeric labels, dots 25 with a scale mark (6.5.1.10)
- use of scale marks that straddle the axis line (6.5.1.12)
- use of collage or digital file to produce both the number line and box plots (6.5.3.3)
- size of plotted points is uniform and larger than a braille dot (6.5.3.7)
- rearrangement of the box-and-whisker plot from horizontal to vertical (6.5.3.12)
- presentation of numeric labels on the left with numbers increasing from bottom to top (6.5.3.12)
- placement of Class B remains closest to the vertical number line, the same position as in the horizontal number line (6.5.3.12)

Example 6-27 UEB: Box-and-Whisker Plot (Vertical)

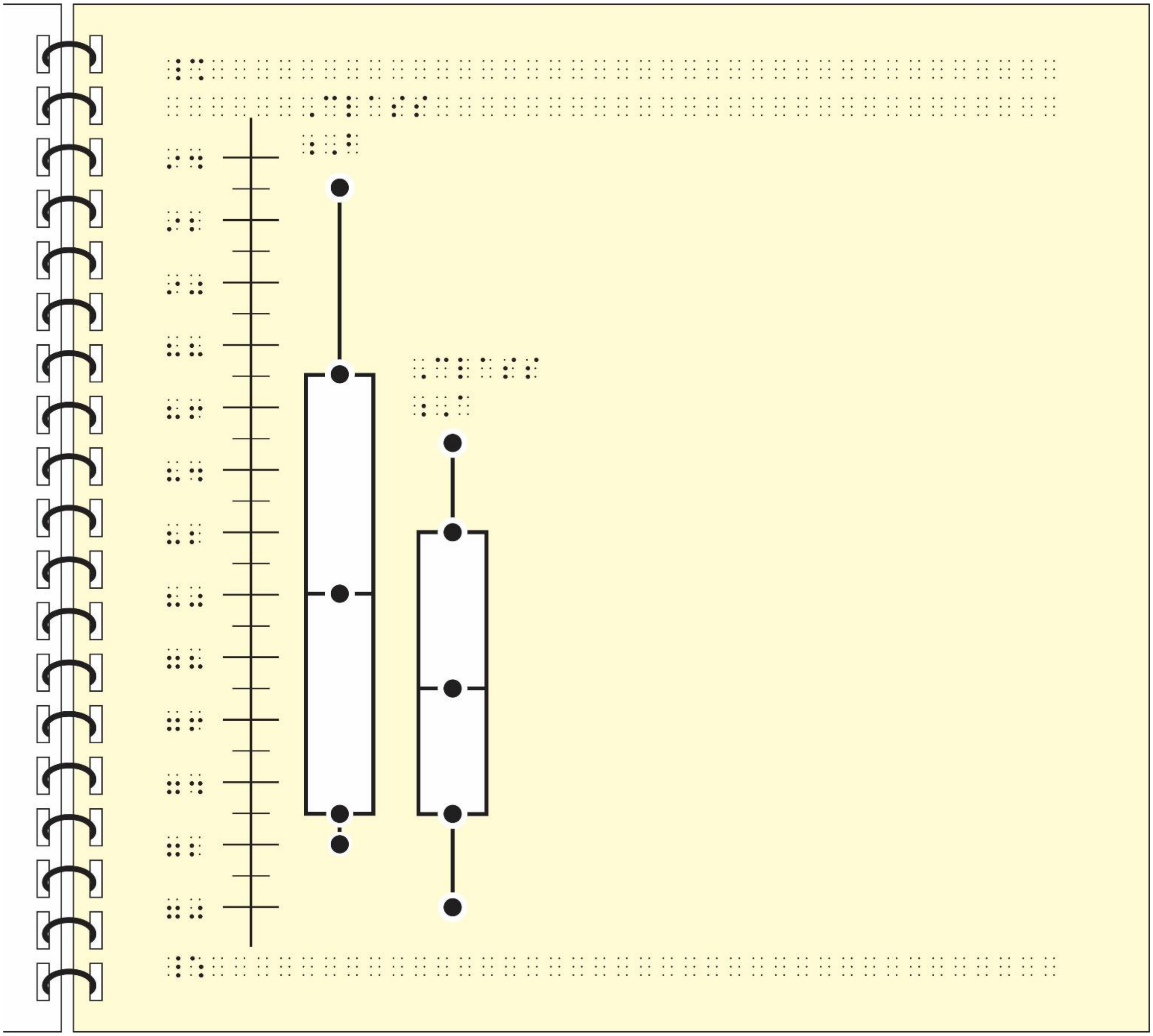


Example 6-27 Nemeth: Tactile Graphic Design Points

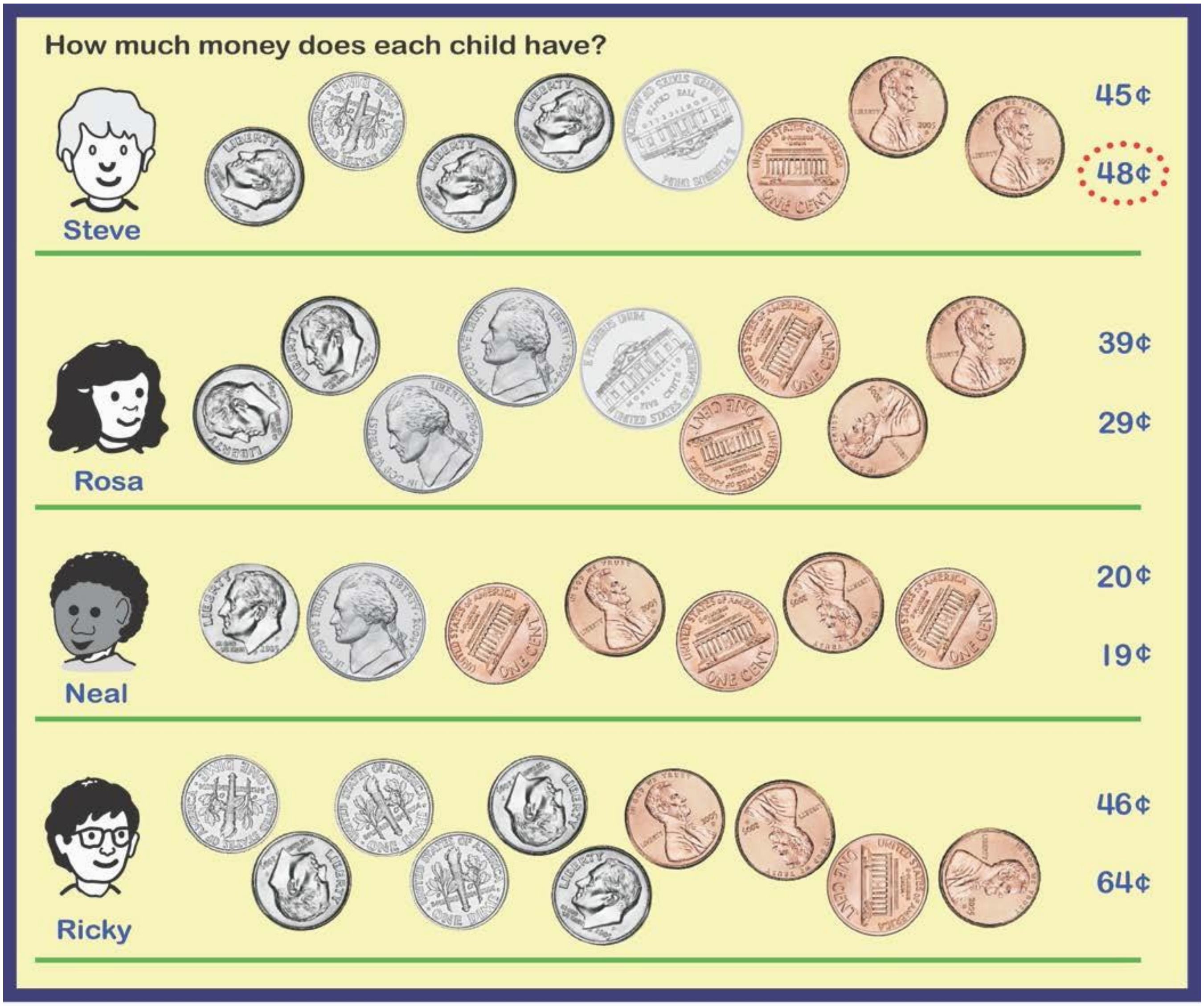
The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- Nemeth Braille Code
- use of Nemeth switch indicators to denote the change into and out of the Nemeth Braille Code
- blank line omitted after the opening Nemeth switch indicator and before the Nemeth Code terminator due to space constraints (2.7, 5.1.2)
- intervals of 2 units only are labeled to allow more space for braille labeling (2.1)
- spacing of at least 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) between each component (number line, box plot, and labels) (2.11)
- use of a transcriber's note to explain rearrangement of the box-and-whisker plot (2.14, 6.5.1.10)
- cropping of the number line to allow the box-and-whisker plot to fit on one page (3.7)
- placement of box plot labels (Class A and Class B) above the box-and-whisker plot (5.10.5)
- non-use of numeric indicators for labels on the number line; non-use of arrowheads on the number line in braille, follows print (6.5.1.1, 6.5.1.3)
- alignment of numeric labels, dots 25 with a scale mark (6.5.1.10)
- use of scale marks that straddle the axis line (6.5.1.12)
- use of collage or digital file to produce both the number line and box plots (6.5.3.3)
- size of plotted points is uniform and larger than a braille dot (6.5.3.7)
- rearrangement of the box-and-whisker plot from horizontal to vertical (6.5.3.12)
- presentation of numeric labels on the left with numbers increasing from bottom to top (6.5.3.12)
- placement of Class B remains closest to the vertical number line, the same position as in the horizontal number line (6.5.3.12)

Example 6-27 Nemeth: Box-and-Whisker Plot (Vertical)



Example 6-28: Value of Coins



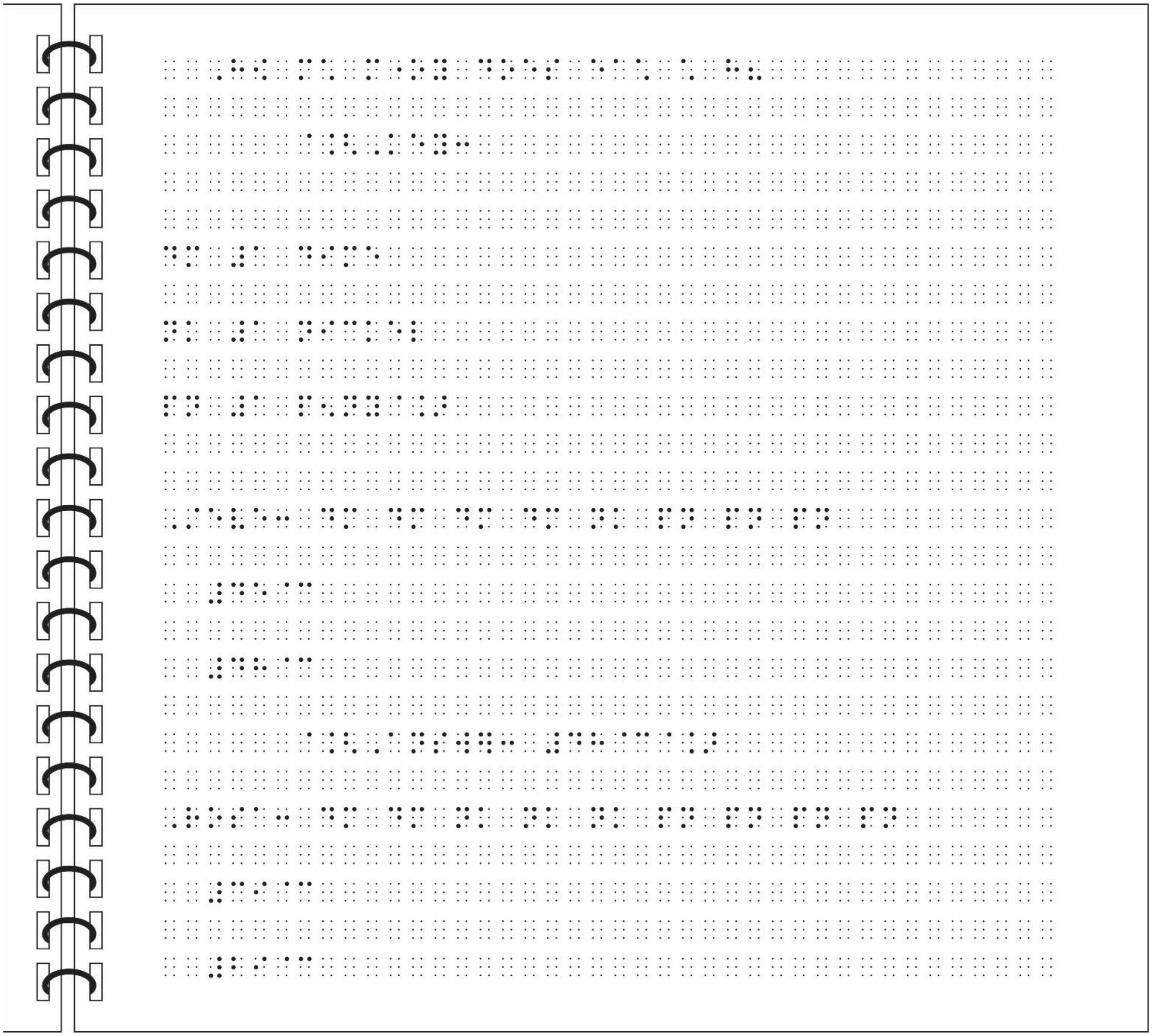
Mathematics Around Us 1 by Bolster, et al. Copyright 1975.
Published by Scott, Foresman and Company, Glenview, Illinois

Example 6-28 UEB: Tactile Graphic Design Points

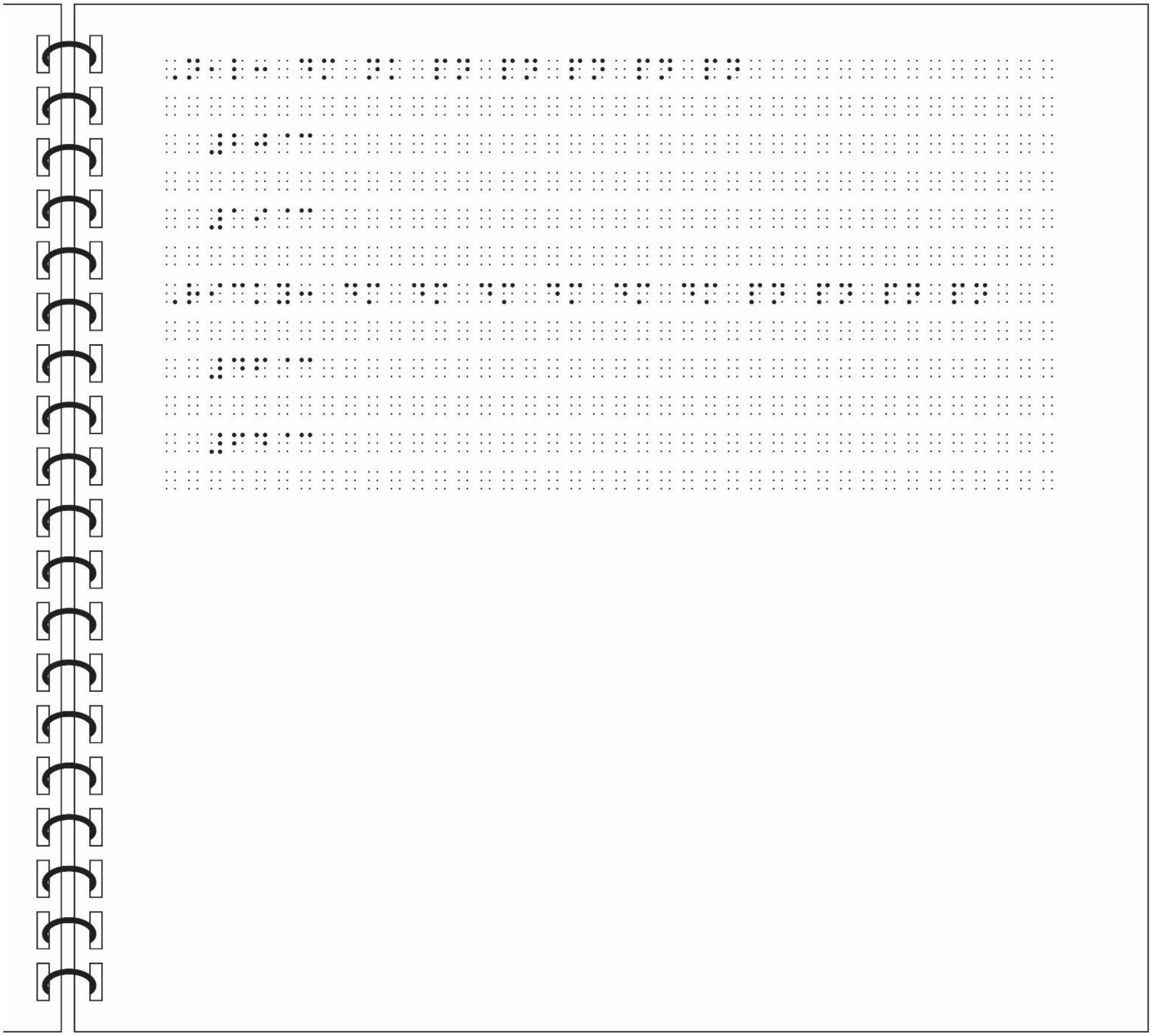
The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- UEB code
- use of the double-spaced format for first-grade material (2.3)
- use of the alphabetic key for coins (6.4.3)
- non-use of a tactile graphic to show coins (11.2.8)
- use of a transcriber's note to explain that the answer is circled in print (11.2.11)

Example 6-28 UEB: Value of Coins



Example 6-28 UEB: Value of Coins (cont.)



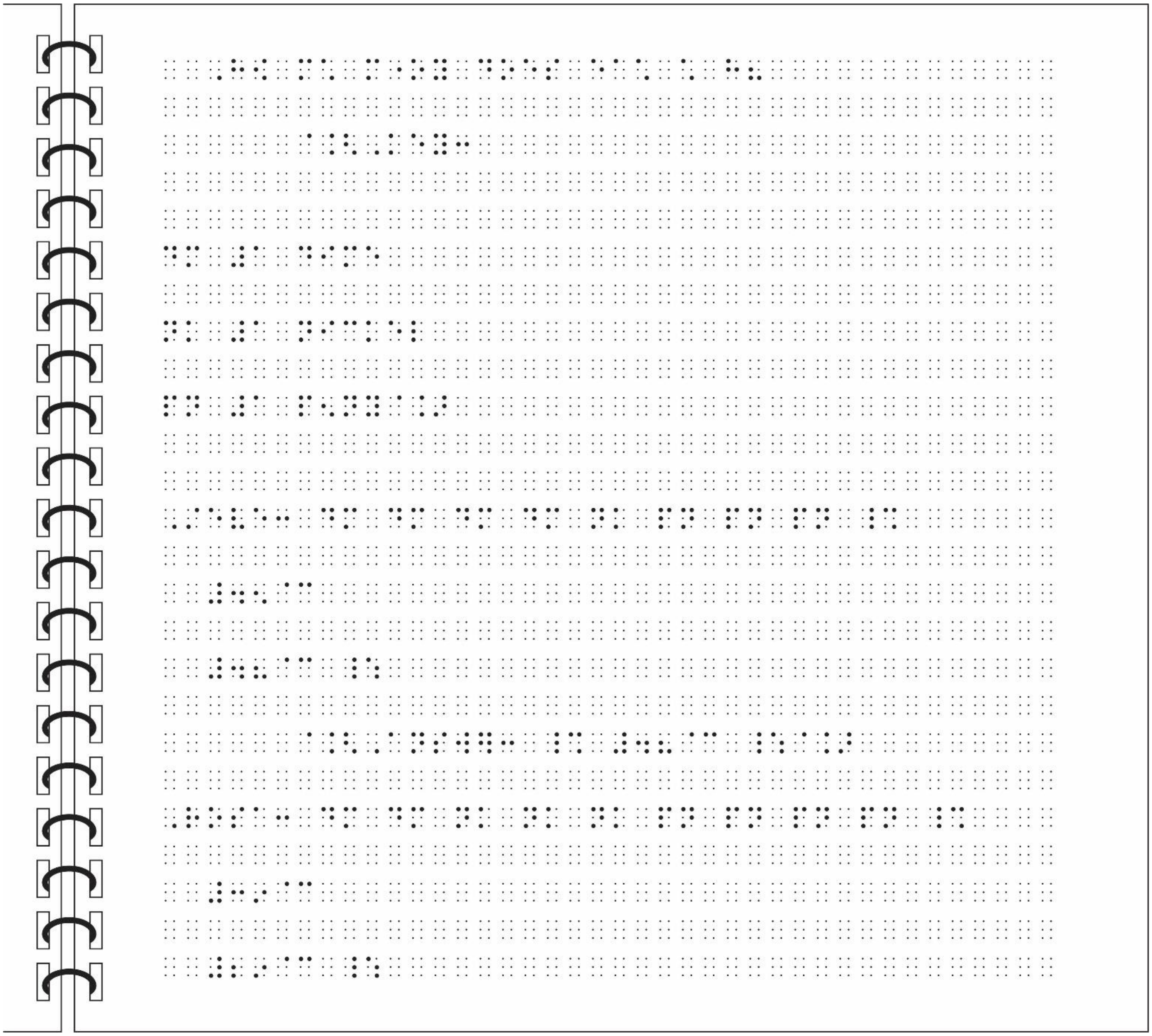
This page is intentionally blank.

Example 6-28 Nemeth: Tactile Graphic Design Points

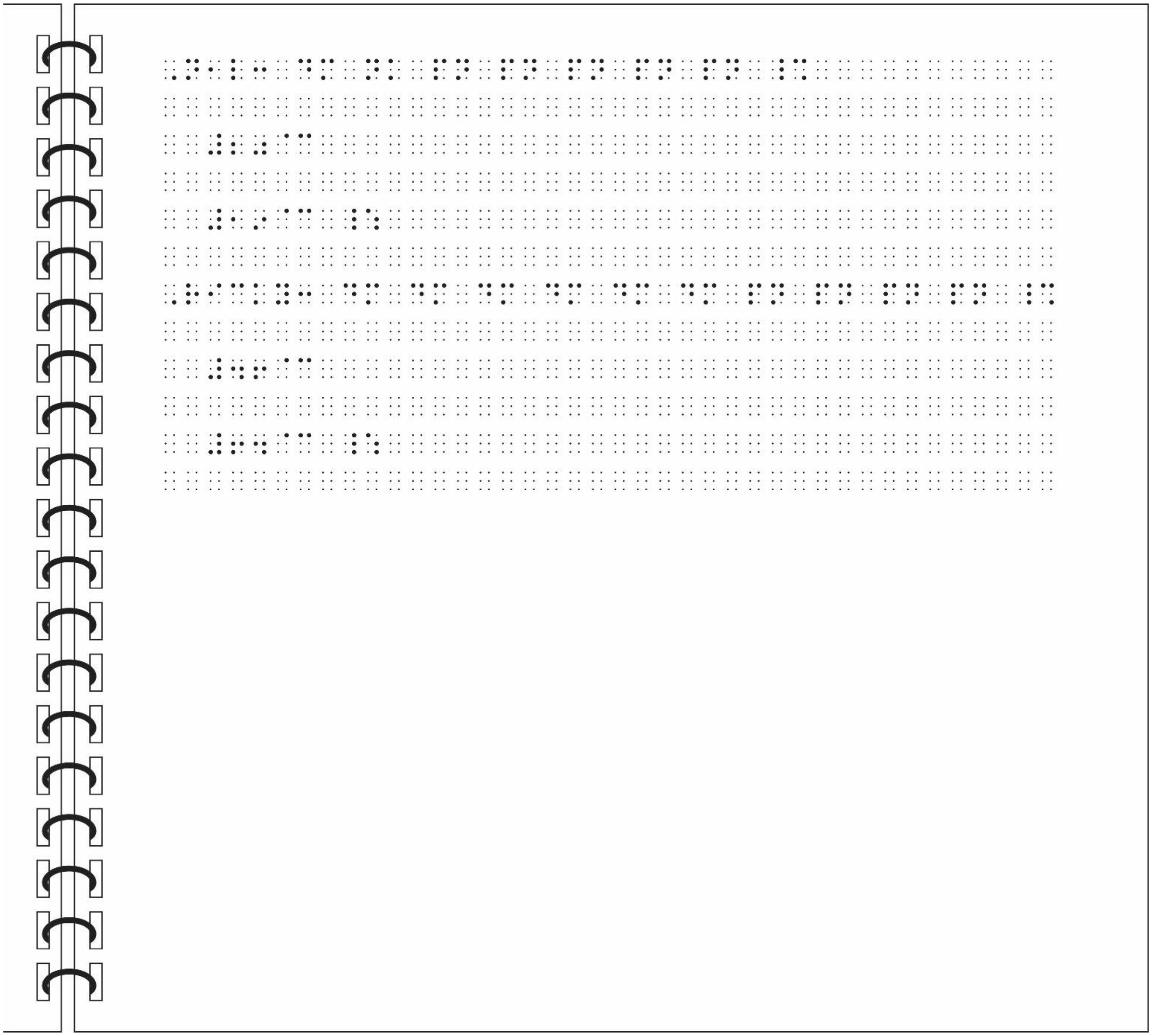
The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- Nemeth Braille Code
- use of Nemeth switch indicators to denote the change into and out of the Nemeth Braille Code
- use of the double-spaced format for first-grade material (2.3)
- use of the alphabetic key for coins (6.4.3)
- non-use of a tactile graphic to show coins (11.2.8)
- use of a transcriber's note to explain that the answer is circled in print (11.2.11)

Example 6-28 Nemeth: Value of Coins



Example 6-28 Nemeth: Value of Coins (cont.)



This page is intentionally blank.

Unit 7
Complex Diagrams

Complex diagrams, in these guidelines and standards, refer to tactile graphics that require special treatment before they can be readily understood by the reader. While there are diagrams that are too complex to render in a tactile form, there are others that may be useful only if a simplified tactile version is made, thus giving the reader a sense of what is being shown in print.

How does one decide whether a diagram is too complex to do as a tactile graphic? The tactile graphics designer should consider the thought processes explained in the guidelines and standards in Unit 1, Criteria for Including a Tactile Graphic, 1.8 Decision Tree.

7.1 Typical Characteristics of a Diagram That Is Complex

7.1.1 A diagram must be simplified when

7.1.1.1 there are too many specified areas—shaded or colored—to represent tactually. More than five textures make tactile graphic diagrams hard to understand and discourage the reader from exploring the display.

7.1.1.2 there are too many line styles—more than five—that lead to confusion, especially if the reader is required to trace direction.

7.1.1.3 there are too many labels required. While very useful for identifying parts, braille labels can overload the illustration and obscure the shapes and parts of a diagram.

7.1.1.4 there is too much explanation required to be understood. Diagrams should simplify concepts, not complicate them.

7.1.1.5 the print shows three-dimensional information. As with perspective, this concept cannot easily be shown on a tactile graphic without showing more than one view.

7.1.1.6 there is any type of network or array where the information is spread over a large area. This arrangement may make the tactual exploration of the diagram more difficult.

7.2 Procedure

Before creating a complex diagram, the designer should:

7.2.1 Determine the main purpose of the diagram.

If the tactile graphics designer does not fully understand what the diagram is showing, accidental omission of crucial information may result. Necessary modifications and simplification will be hard to implement if the purpose of the original print graphic is not understood.

It is advisable to seek assistance from experts in a particular field if diagrams are too complex to understand.

7.2.2 Determine if the diagram is an essential part of the surrounding text.

If a diagram appears to be too complex to render tactually, it may be better to produce a simplified version rather than omit it completely. The reader will benefit from the spatial layout even if it is simplified. Transcriber's notes should be used in conjunction with, rather than in place of, some complex diagrams. Supplement Example 25a: *Gastrointestinal Tract* and Supplement Example 25b: *Gastrointestinal Tract* show how a simplified tactile graphic with an accompanying transcriber's note can be used to represent a complex diagram.

7.2.3 Determine if the original print illustration serves as a visual decoration or provides substantive information needed to understand or appreciate the text.

Color in a complex diagram may have contextual significance, but it may be unnecessary to produce it tactually. For example, in a light spectrum diagram, the knowledge of the placement of color is significant in understanding the concept being taught. (See Supplement Example 28: *Light Spectrum*.) The color names are inserted beside the pertinent wavelength rather than provided as a texture.

7.2.4 Determine if the reader is required to retrieve data or make specific observations from the print illustration that would otherwise be revealed when attempting to describe the diagram.

In many situations, the reader is asked to extract information from a graphic. For example, the reader may be asked to name the provincial park northwest of Toronto or to estimate the size of an object based on the given scale. This type of diagram should not be described, but be produced as a tactile graphic.

7.2.5 Determine if the print graphic is required in a testing situation.

Examination material cannot be modified without the consent of the examining body or authority. Any tactile enhancement should not conflict with what is being tested. Examiners often include "distractors" in a test question or graphic. These features cannot be omitted or altered without the consent of the examiner.

7.3 Design Techniques

Tactile graphics designers may use some of the following techniques or design layouts when considering the best way to present the tactile display:

7.3.1 **Simplification** (See Unit 3, Planning and Editing, §3.6.)

7.3.2 **Elimination** (See Unit 3, Planning and Editing, §3.7.)

7.3.3 **Consolidation and Distortion** (See Unit 3, Planning and Editing, §3.8.)

7.3.4 **Separation** (See Unit 3, Planning and Editing, §3.9.)

7.3.5 Consider whether to use textures when 2- or 3-cell keys or labels do not fully convey where spatial information is located.

7.3.6 Consider whether full labels are better than 2-cell or 3-cell key abbreviations. Labels reduce the need to move back and forth between keyed symbols and the diagram. Where there may not be enough room for full labels, the use of 2- or 3-cell keys enables the designer to place more identifiers on the diagram. (See Unit 5, Braille Formats for Tactile Graphics, §5.10.2.)

7.3.7 Retain features that could be used as a point of reference even though they may not be labeled in print. Transcriber-assigned labels should not be enclosed in transcriber note indicators. (See Unit 3, Planning and Editing, §3.1.4 and Example 3-4: *Circulatory System*.)

Example: The Great Lakes on a map of North America or the equator on a world map

7.3.8 Consider placing lengthy information in the key listing rather than attempting to write transcriber's notes to explain the situation.

Example key information: ri Rhode Island, Providence

7.3.9 Choose alphabetic keys over numeric keys, as they give the reader a better sense of what the label represents. Two-cell or three-cell keys usually start with the first letter of the word, which may help the reader identify the keyed information. Numeric keys may be better when they stand for information that is sequential or part of a process.

EXCEPTION: ISO abbreviations are used for countries, provinces, and states. (See Appendix C: Standard Key for Maps.)

7.3.10 When possible, key pages should be placed on facing pages so that the reader can easily decode the tactile information without having to turn pages.

7.3.11 In an effort to avoid additional key pages (which would require switching the key listing to follow the graphic), it is permissible to use the two-column key format.

7.3.12 When there are more than five area textures or five line textures or five point symbols, the diagram may have to be separated into sections. (See Unit 3, Planning and Editing, §3.9.)

7.3.13 Some concepts are better understood when separate 3-dimensional models or manipulatives are used in combination with 2-dimensional tactile images.

7.3.14 It is recommended that information presented in the form of graphic organizers, such as pie charts, bar graphs, webs, network tree, Venn diagrams, and cycle maps be produced as tactile graphics rather than be converted into lists because the reader is required to compare related parts. If presented as a list rather than a spatial display, comparison is difficult. (See Supplement Example 4: *Pie Chart*.)

7.3.15 It is important to render the simple illustrations as well as the complex ones because readers will be able to interpret the complex graphic much more efficiently if they are able to explore the simple ones first.

7.4 Order of Preference for Spacing-Saving Modifications

In order to avoid dividing a tactile diagram between two or more pages, it may be necessary to modify the format or placement of the elements of the tactile graphic.

Modifications and their order of preference are shown below.

7.4.1 Move some information to the previous page.
Example: Caption or transcriber's note

7.4.2 Delete one or more labels by writing a description in a transcriber's note.

7.4.3 Make the graphic smaller, if practical.

7.4.4 Delete the blank line between "Key:" and the key listing.

7.4.5 Put the key listing into column form.

7.4.6 Reduce the space between the text and the graphic.

7.4.7 Delete the running head unless required by the production agency.

7.5 Biology

Biology illustrations tend to be very complex and often 3-dimensional. Learning kits and models for biology are available. A number of techniques may be used to create an understandable graphic. (See Example 3-1: *Parts of a Flower*; Example 3-2 and Supplement Example 26: *Cross-Section of Skin*; Supplement Example 27: *Bones*; Supplement Example 25a: *Gastrointestinal Tract* and Supplement Example 25b: *Gastrointestinal Tract*.)

The next several pages show examples of a step-by-step process that one might follow to produce a tactile graphic.

Example 7-1: Step-by-Step Process: Gastrointestinal Tract

The print diagram of the gastrointestinal tract below poses various design problems for a suitable tactile graphic rendition. The following steps show the questions asked, the decisions made, and the design techniques employed in creating the tactile version.

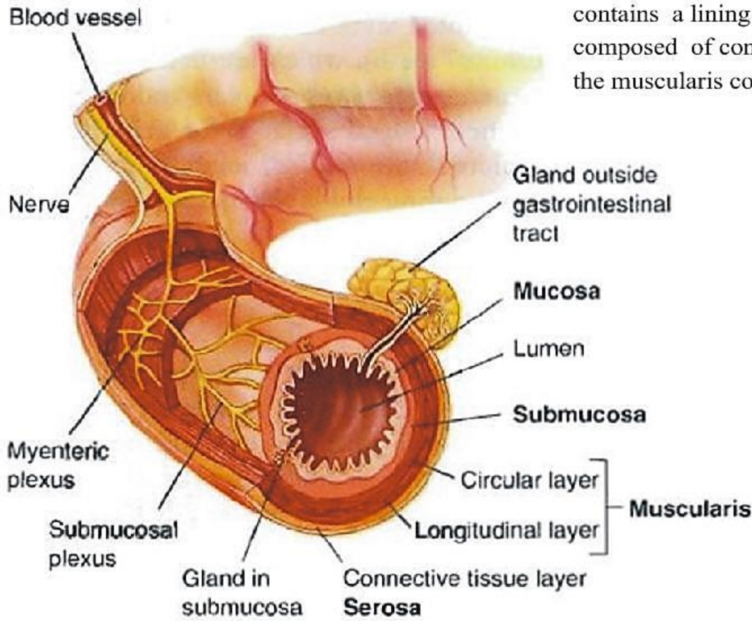


FIGURE 51.5
The layers of the gastrointestinal tract. The mucosa contains a lining epithelium; the submucosa is composed of connective tissue (as is the serosa), and the muscularis consists of smooth muscles.

1. After employing the decision tree process, a decision was made that it is appropriate to create a tactile graphic of this illustration.
2. What information will be conveyed?
    - Review the surrounding text, caption, and labels to determine the purpose of the print graphic.
3. Simplify the drawing. Consider:

    Can any of the parts be eliminated in the tactile representation?

    - In this graphic, the three-dimensional aspect—the side view—is described in a transcriber's note.

    Can some other parts be described in a transcriber's note?

    - Yes. An explanation of where the nerve plexus runs is provided in a transcriber's note as shown on the next page.

Sample transcriber's note.

> Print shows a three-dimensional figure with a cut-away section exposing the layers surrounding the lumen. In braille, the side view is explained below, and the cross-section is shown as a graphic.
>
> Side view of the figure: The myenteric and submucosal nerve plexuses are a network of interlacing nerves that run through the layers of the muscularis.

How will the graphic be presented?

- It will be presented as a cross-section.

Will the graphic be separated into more than one section?

- The graphic information can be adequately presented without being separated.

Does the graphic need to be enlarged?

- The cross-section is enlarged in order to indicate the various layers of the gastrointestinal tract and to provide space for labels and/or textures.

4. Identify components to be included in the graphic.

   Will the print labels fit in the available space, or will a key be required?

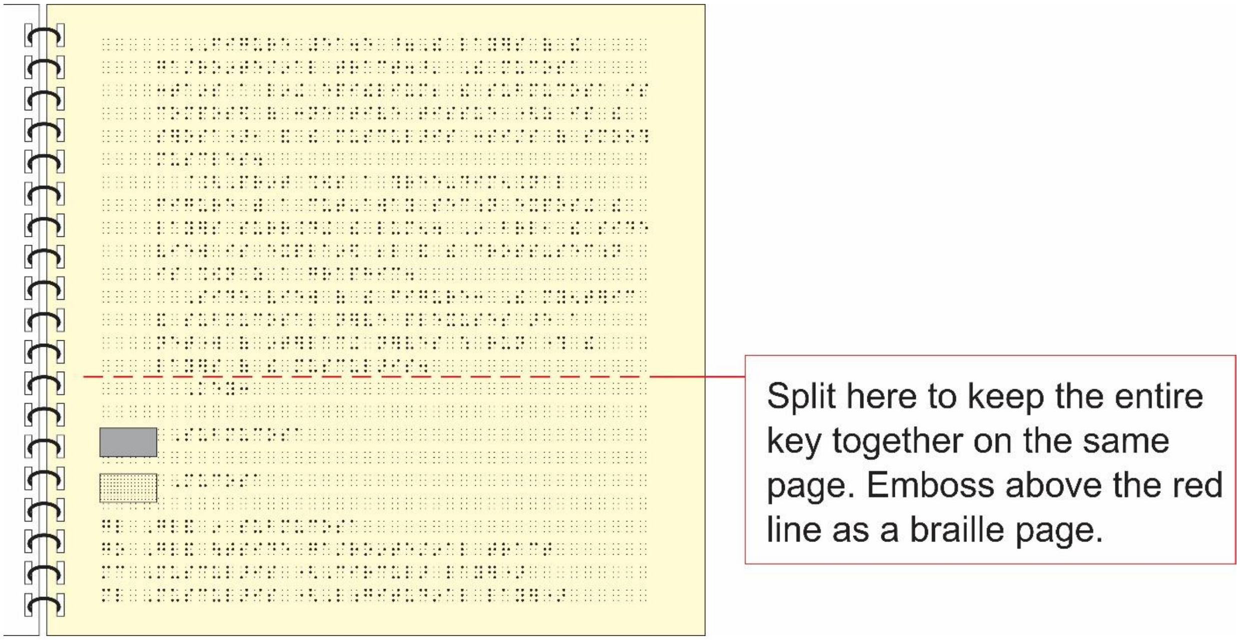
   - A key is required due to the number of labels and their length; only one of the labels (Lumen) will fit.

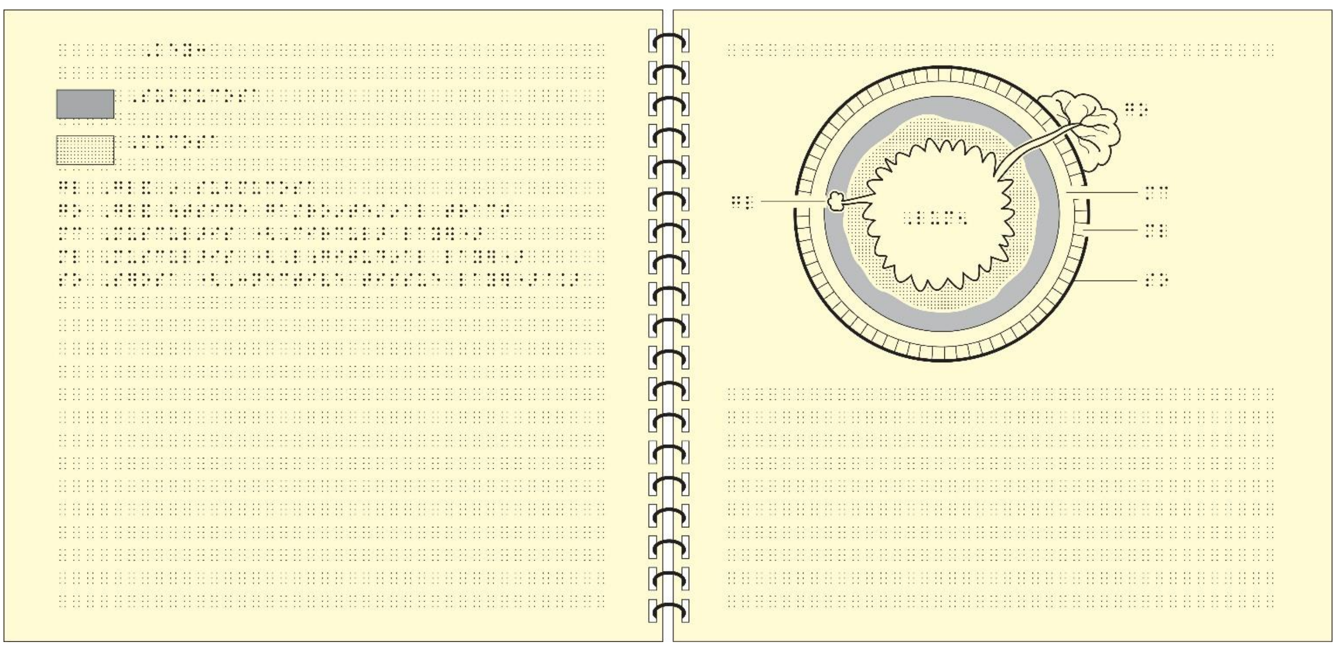
   What keying technique will be used?

   - A combination of textures and alphabetic keys
   - Textures for the inner layers, to avoid lead lines crossing other areas
   - Alphabetic key for the outer layers in order to provide a clue to the print label (gl for Gland in submucosa) and to combine some of the print labels (ml combines Muscularis and Longitudinal layer)

5. Which production method will be used?

   - Hard copy collage production for vacuum form duplication or digital master production for microcapsule paper development

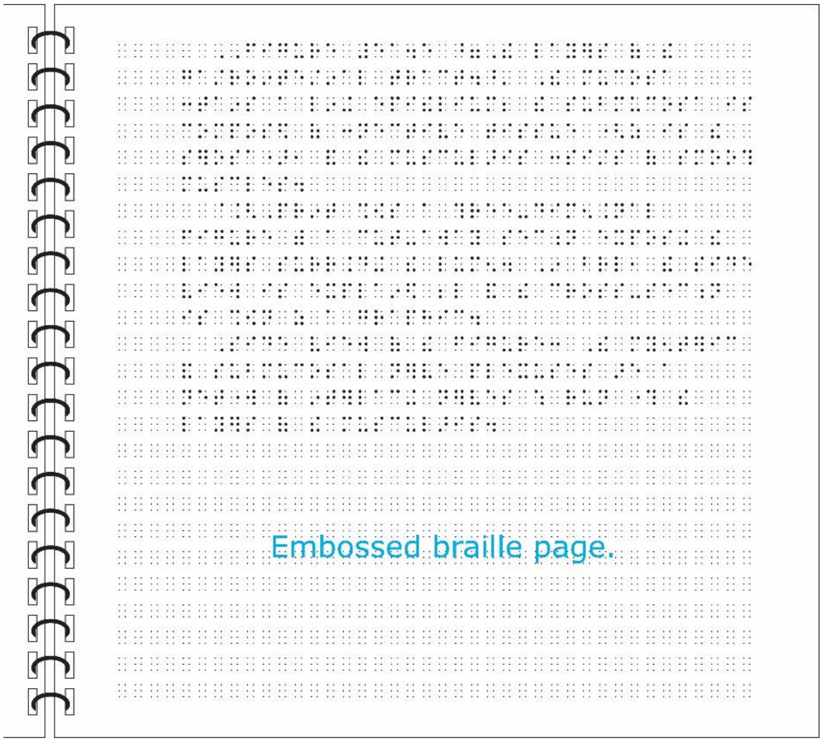


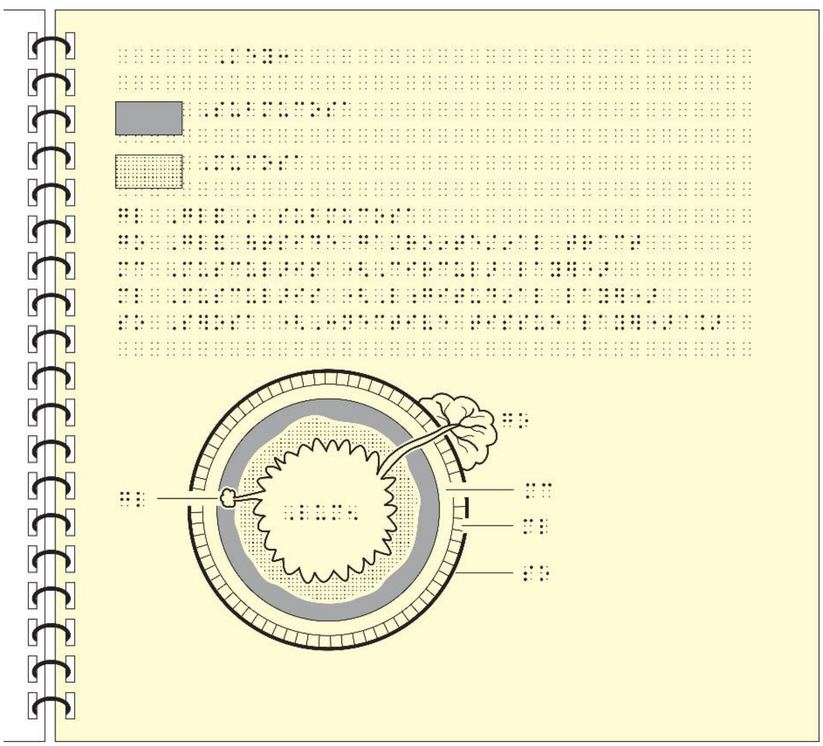


6. Possible modifications:

   This diagram requires three pages. Can any modifications be made that would allow the key and graphic to fit on one page?

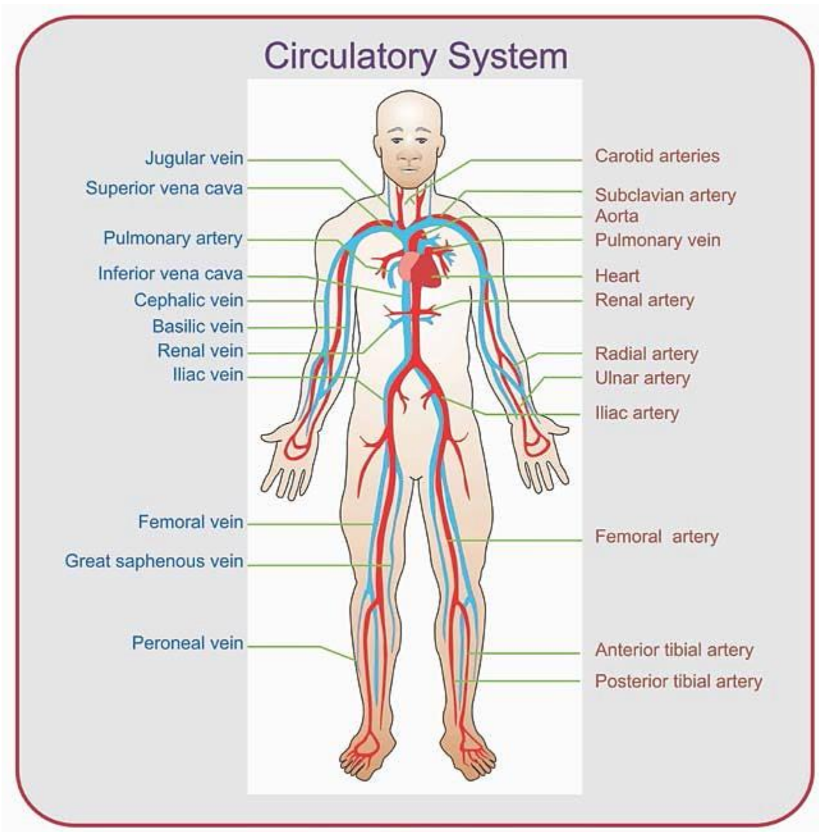
   - Yes. The size of the graphic (excluding braille labels) was reduced slightly without compromising clarity.
   - The key and the graphic were placed on the same page.


Embossed braille page.



Example 7-2: Step-by-Step Process: Circulatory System

When rendered tactually, this print illustration of the human circulatory system is an example of a complex tactile graphic because it has a large amount of detail that has to be shown. There is very little simplification, consolidation, or elimination that can be applied when designing the tactile. One tactile page is insufficient to display everything clearly; therefore the diagram, including the key, has to be shown over six pages. A complete transcription of this image is given in Unit 3. (See Example 3-4: *Circulatory System.*)



1. After employing the decision tree process, a decision was made that it is appropriate to create a tactile graphic of this illustration.
2. What information will be conveyed?
    - The purpose is to show the heart, arteries, and veins.
3. Simplify the drawing. Consider:

Can any of the parts be eliminated in the tactile representation?

- No. Everything shown in print needs to be included.

Can some parts be described in a transcriber's note or labeled differently?

- The head has none of the common facial features in the tactile graphic and has simply been labeled as "head."

Will the graphic be separated into more than one section?

- The image cannot be shown as one tactile diagram because it would be too cluttered with labels. The illustration is divided into two parts with an overview diagram to show the complete picture and to show the reader where the diagram is separated into the upper body and the lower limbs. This format has been explained in the following transcriber's note. Sample transcriber's note.

    The following three diagrams show the main blood vessels of the human circulatory system. The first diagram is an overview. A dashed line indicates the point of separation in diagrams two and three. The second diagram is the upper body, and the third diagram is the lower limbs.

Does the graphic need to be enlarged?

- The diagram is enlarged to the maximum available space so that all the blood vessels can be clearly shown. As can be seen on the overview, there is not enough room to label every blood vessel when there is only one tactile diagram.

4. Identify components to be included in the graphic.

Will the print labels fit in the available space, or will a key be required?

- A key is required for each section due to the number of labels and their length.

What keying technique will be used?

- An alphabetic key is placed on the page facing the tactile graphic.
- The texture keys that apply to all tactile graphic pages are shown only on the Overview diagram.
- Although the labels for a few blood vessels could have been spelled out on the diagram, for consistency all of them have been keyed.

- The division line serves as a point of reference to aid in locating the parts of the diagram.

5. Which production method or medium will be used?
   - A good contrast between line styles is important because the veins and arteries run very close to each other. Hard copy collage or tooling production for vacuum form duplication can produce a better contrast between line styles. When other methods are used, care must be taken so that the line styles are tactually distinct.
6. Possible modifications:
   - For this diagram to be clear, three parts are required. No modifications are possible because the reader needs all the information shown in the print diagram.

7.6 Social Studies

(See Example 3-6: *Southwest Asia*; Example 3-7: *U.S.A.*; Supplement Example 29, *North America*; Example 3-3 and Supplement Example 30: *Australia: Average Annual Rainfall*.)

7.6.1 **Water**. Distinguishing land from water makes these areas more recognizable to the reader. If water is shown in print, a subtle background texture may be used, and the texture should be consistent.

7.6.2 **Scale**. A scale on a map gives an indication of the relationship between the distances on the map and the corresponding actual distances. When measuring distance is required and a braille map is enlarged to allow for ease of measurement, it is essential that the scale be enlarged to the same degree as the map. For example, if a braille map is enlarged to twice its original size, the scale must also be enlarged to the same size. (See Example 3-7: *U.S.A*.)

7.6.2.1 If it is not necessary to measure distance, the scale may be omitted.

7.6.2.2 If there is not enough room for the scale on the map page, the scale may be placed at the end of the key (left-hand page). When tactile graphics have more than one key page (right-hand pages), the scale may be placed before the beginning of the key.

7.6.3 **Compass**. In print, compass styles and placement vary. The decision whether or not to include the compass in braille depends on the concept being taught.

7.6.3.1 If the print refers to direction within a map or if the compass concept is being taught, the compass must be included on the braille map.

7.6.3.2 The direction of the compass rose arrows should always coincide with the lines of longitude and latitude of the map.

7.6.3.3 If direction is not referred to in the map or surrounding information and the top of the map is assumed to be north, it is not necessary to include the compass rose. Insert a statement, either before the graphic or on the Transcriber's

Notes page, explaining this convention.

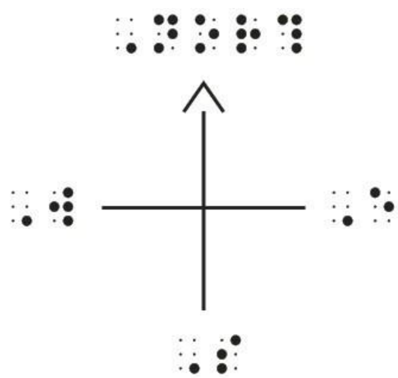
Sample transcriber's note.

> Unless otherwise instructed, the top of the page is always considered north.

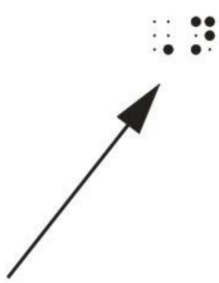
7.6.3.4 If the compass rose is included, it needs to be simplified and placed consistently in the top left corner of the page.

7.6.3.5 When labeling compass directions, the grade 1 indicator is not required with a single uppercase letter.

7.6.3.6 For kindergarten through grade 3, simplify the compass to show only the four principal directions when teaching map concepts.



7.6.3.7 When the orientation of north has been changed from the top of the page on a print map, a simple north arrow (labeled N) must be kept as a point of reference.



Example 7-3: Step-by-Step Process: Southwest Asia

This example shows one of the ways to design a very complex graphic. Understanding the context in which this diagram is used, the tactile graphics designer will realize that the reader is being shown how “special-purpose” maps use colors and symbols to display information that is spatially distributed over specific areas. In order to convey this in tactile form, the information in the print diagram needs to be divided into separate layers because of the large amount of detail that is being shown. Only the essential information needs to be included, as shown in this example. A complete transcription of this image is given in Unit 3. (See Example 3-6: *Southwest Asia*.)

Special-Purpose Maps

Maps that emphasize a single idea or a particular kind of information about an area are called **special-purpose maps.** There are many kinds of special-purpose maps, each designed to serve a different need. You can learn more about several types of special-purpose maps in the SkillBuilder features in this textbook: relief maps (page 126), climate maps (page 172), population density maps (page 232), vegetation maps (page 432), elevation profiles (page 580), economic activity maps (page 680), and cartograms (page 754).

Some special-purpose maps—such as economic activity maps and natural resource maps—show the distribution of particular activities, resources, or products in a given area. Colors and symbols represent the location or distribution of activities and resources.

An Economic Activity Map

The special-purpose map above shows the distribution of land use and natural resources in Southwest Asia. Geographers use maps like this one to study the distribtution of natural resources. Governments and industry leaders use land use maps and natural resource maps to monitor the economic activities of countries and regions.

1. After employing the decision tree process, a decision was made that it is appropriate to create a tactile graphic.
2. What information will be conveyed?
    - Read the surrounding text, caption, and labels to determine the purpose of the print graphic. The map is an example of a "special-purpose map" designed to "show the distribution of particular activities, resources, or products in a given area." No description can show the distribution more succinctly than a clear, well-planned diagram.
3. Simplify the drawing. Consider:

    Can any of the parts be eliminated in the tactile representation?

    - Yes. Information that does not directly affect the purpose of the map has been omitted. These items are:
        - the inset scale
        - the Lambert Azimuthal Equal-Area projection label
        - political boundaries of the countries in Europe, Africa, and the rest of Asia
        - the north arrow
        - lines of latitude and longitude other than the Tropic of Cancer

    Can some parts be described in a transcriber's note or labeled differently?

    - The diagram is presented with the following transcriber's note placed before the first map: "This map is divided into three parts (political, land use, and resources) and shown over six maps. The first part is a political map of Southwest Asia. The second part, land use, is divided into two maps, and the third part, which shows the distribution of resources, is divided into three maps. Countries that are too small to key are ISRAEL (west of JORDAN); LEBANON (west of SYRIA); KUWAIT (southeast of IRAQ); and QATAR and the island state of BAHRAIN, both in the Persian Gulf. Each map is shown on a left-hand page followed by its key on the right-hand page(s)."
    - Depending on the content that needs to be presented,

another option would be to present the smaller countries as an inset map.

- The rest of Asia, Africa, and Europe (eu) are spelled out or keyed on the diagram to serve only as reference points. Note that Europe is not labeled on the original map, but here it serves as a point of reference for the reader.

Will the graphic be divided into more than one section?

- Because of the large amount of information shown on this particular map, more than one map will be required. This map is presented as six separate maps.
  - Map 1 is a political map of the area showing only the location of the area that is being studied. It will serve as a reference map of the area so that the reader can determine the location of the rest of the information that will be shown on the subsequent maps.
  - Maps 2 and 3 show areas of land use. One map cannot successfully show all land use areas without becoming too cluttered and confusing.
  - Maps 4 to 6 show the distribution of natural resources.
  - Countries that are too small to key are named in the transcriber's note.

Does the graphic need to be enlarged?

- The map is enlarged to the maximum available space to avoid clutter because many of the items appear in crowded clusters. These cannot be altered on the tactile map because the express purpose is to show this distribution.

4. Identify components to be included in the graphic.

Will the print labels fit in the available space, or will a key be required?

- A key is required for each map due to the number of labels and their length.

What keying technique will be used?

- A combination of area textures and alphabetic keys on a page facing the tactile graphic will be used.
- On Map 1 (political), most country names are keyed. Even though Iran, Iraq, and Saudi Arabia can be spelled out on the diagram, their location is shown with a key. This option was chosen so that their location can be shown consistently as keys in Maps 4, 5, and 6 where there is less room to spell out their names.
- The Tropic of Cancer is shown on all the maps as a reference point. All other lines of longitude and latitude are omitted because including them would likely result in information overload and too much clutter.
- The point symbols shown here are deliberately designed as distinctive graphic symbols rather than braille keys. This was done in order to stay true to the purpose of this special-purpose map in which the distribution of the "symbols" shows where the various economic activities occur.
- Alphabetic keys are used for the resources that are spelled out on the map (barley, cotton, camels, coffee, dates, sheep, and wheat). There is not enough room to write these on the tactile versions.
- The key listing for the first map (political) will take more than one page. As a result, all tactile maps will be placed on subsequent left-hand pages with the key page placed on the right-hand pages. (See Unit 5, Braille Formats for Tactile Graphics, §5.12.3.)
- Political boundaries on the land-use map are omitted because they would be lost among the textured areas.
- On the microcapsule medium, the main area has a heavier outline to separate it from the rest of the surrounding land. If using a vacuum form medium, the main area that is being studied should be raised.
- Only the political boundaries of Southwest Asian countries are shown on Map 1 (political map).

- The rest of Asia, Africa, and Europe (eu) are placed on a lower level and are spelled out or keyed on the diagram to serve as reference points only.
- Other areas that are included on all of the maps are Mediterranean Sea (med), Red Sea (red), Persian Gulf (per), Gulf of Oman (go), Gulf of Aden (gu), Indian Ocean, Black Sea (bl), and Caspian Sea (cs). This peripheral information serves as valuable reference information for the reader to explore the distribution of the important information on the map.

5. Which production method will be used?
    - Either hard copy collage or tooling production for vacuum-form duplication or digital master production for microcapsule paper development

7.7 Charts and Graphic Organizers

Organizational charts, schematic drawings, and flowcharts are graphic representations of the steps of procedures, hierarchical rank, or interrelationships.

Examples: Web (See Supplement Example 31: *Story Web*), network tree (See Supplement Example 33: *Organizational Chart*), cycle map (See Supplement Example 32: *Persuasion Map.*)

7.7.1 Organizational Charts

An organizational chart is a diagram of the structure or personnel of an organization in which parts or functions are represented by connecting blocks to show hierarchical rank or interrelationships.

7.7.1.1 Every attempt must be made to place an organizational chart on one tactile page. If this is not possible, a fold-out page, which is preferable, or facing pages can be used. (See Appendix D, Production and Duplication Methods.)

7.7.1.2 The hierarchy or order of placement of boxed information should not be altered on the tactile graphic.

7.7.1.3 An alphabetic or numeric key may be required to fit a complex chart on one page. (See Supplement Example 33: *Organizational Chart*.)

7.7.1.4 The connecting lines should be a different texture than the lines representing the blocks. No blank space is required between connecting lines and boxes or circles.

7.7.1.5 Labels for organizational charts are placed inside boxes or circles.

7.7.2 Schematic Drawings

A schematic drawing explains how something works; that is, it shows the relation between the parts.

Example: The wiring of an electrical system

7.7.2.1 Schematic drawings should be prepared as a tactile graphic, simplifying and keying where necessary.

7.7.2.2 Standard symbols for devices are used in print. All symbols for specific devices used on the tactile graphic must be tactually recognizable and remain consistent within a drawing or set of drawings.

7.7.2.3 Lines that cross each other but do not connect must clearly be shown tactually by using different textures. (See Example 7-4: *Bus Routes*.)

7.7.3 **Graphic Organizers**

7.7.3.1 Graphic organizers are tools that facilitate the visualization of concepts, relationships, and facts. They aid readers in organizing, interpreting, and understanding their learning. Graphic organizers are used to structure writing projects and to help in problem solving, decision making, studying, planning research, and brainstorming. They may be called mind maps, concept webs, sequence maps, concept maps, time lines, Venn diagrams, reasoning tools (cause and effect), comparison and contrast charts, graphic maps, or story webs. The use of graphic organizers as an instructional tool is found in all subject areas at all grade levels.

7.7.3.2 Although this structure is primarily a visual tool, the braille reader will need a tactile graphic of the image to participate in discussions and complete assignments. Minor modifications can be made to the shape and arrangement, such as changing circles to ovals. Care must be taken to prevent distortion and altered meaning or to change the way the student will use the graphic organizer. Most likely the student will use another method to complete his or her work but needs a tactile version of the original shape and arrangement of the print graphic to aid in the thought process.

7.7.3.3 No blank space is required between connecting lines and boxes or circles. If arrows are used to connect items, there is 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) between the arrowhead and the box or circle.

7.7.3.4 Labels for graphic organizers are placed inside the boxes or circles.

7.7.4 **Flowcharts**

By using connecting arrows or lines and different shapes, flowcharts show how steps in a process fit together. An elongated circle may signify the start or end of a process, rectangles may show instructions or actions, and diamonds may show decisions that must be made.

Such diagrams must be transcribed in accordance with *Braille Formats: Principles of Print-to-Braille Transcription, 2016*, and *Flowchart Design for Applicable Braille Codes*.

7.7.4.1 The author or publisher may make the flowchart horizontal, vertical, or a mixture of both in order to fit it on the print page. The arrangement of the boxes is not significant. Only the direction of flow is important. Therefore, the tactile graphic need not conform exactly to print, but the boxes must appear in the same sequence.

7.7.4.2 A tactile graphic of the print flowchart structure should precede the transcription of the text. If numbers are assigned to the print shapes, they may be used in the key. If numbers are not assigned to the print shapes, the shapes should be labeled with transcriber-assigned alphabetic or numeric key symbols, whichever would make the flow more understandable to the reader.

7.7.4.3 If an author's comments/explanations appear parallel to or adjacent to the flowchart, the tactile graphic must be inserted at the place in the text where this discussion occurs.

7.7.4.4 Any special shapes for which symbols have to be devised should be shown as tactile graphics.

7.7.4.5 **For grades 1 through 4:**

- When flowcharts appear in texts for grades 1 through 4, the flowchart should be drawn following print format. The tactile graphic should be produced with the text brailled inside the differently shaped boxes.
- The shape design used in the print must be maintained in the tactile version.
- Every effort should be made to fit the presentation on one

braille page.

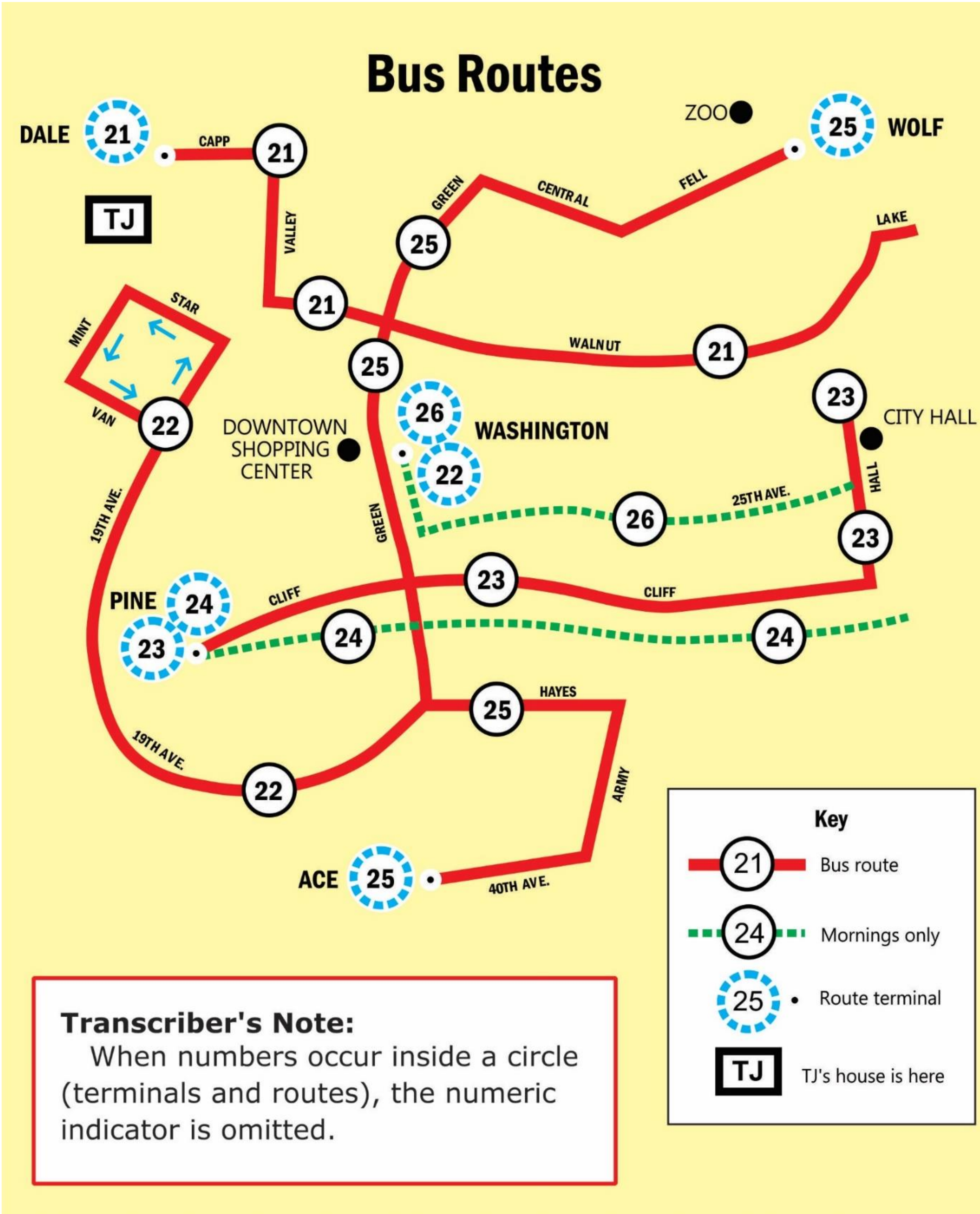
7.7.4.6 **For grades 5 through 8:**

- When flowcharts appear in texts for grades 5 through 8, make a tactile graphic of the first flowchart keyed with the numbers assigned by the transcriber according to the *Flowchart Design for Applicable Braille Codes.*
- There must be a Special Symbols page showing all shapes, indicators, and symbols used.
- Subsequent flowcharts may be transcribed without tactile graphics according to the *Flowchart Design for Applicable Braille Codes*.

7.7.4.7 For flowcharts in material for texts beyond grade 8, follow the guidelines in the *Flowchart Design for Applicable Braille Codes*.

This page is intentionally blank.

Example 7-4: Bus Routes



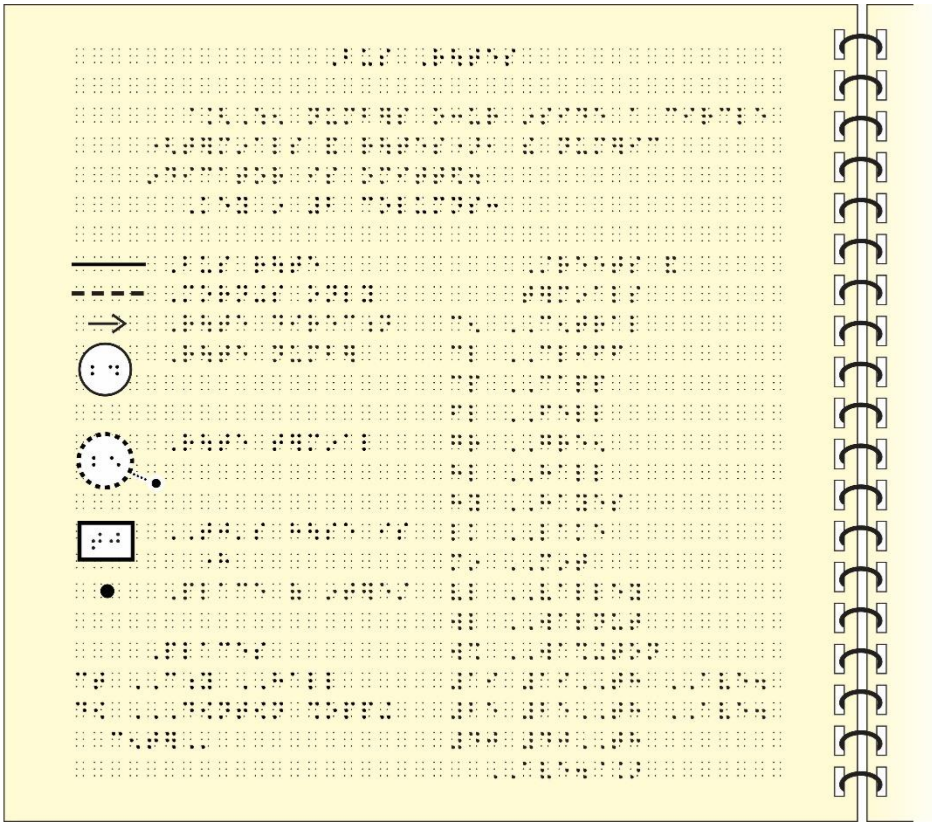
Transcriber's Note:
When numbers occur inside a circle (terminals and routes), the numeric indicator is omitted.

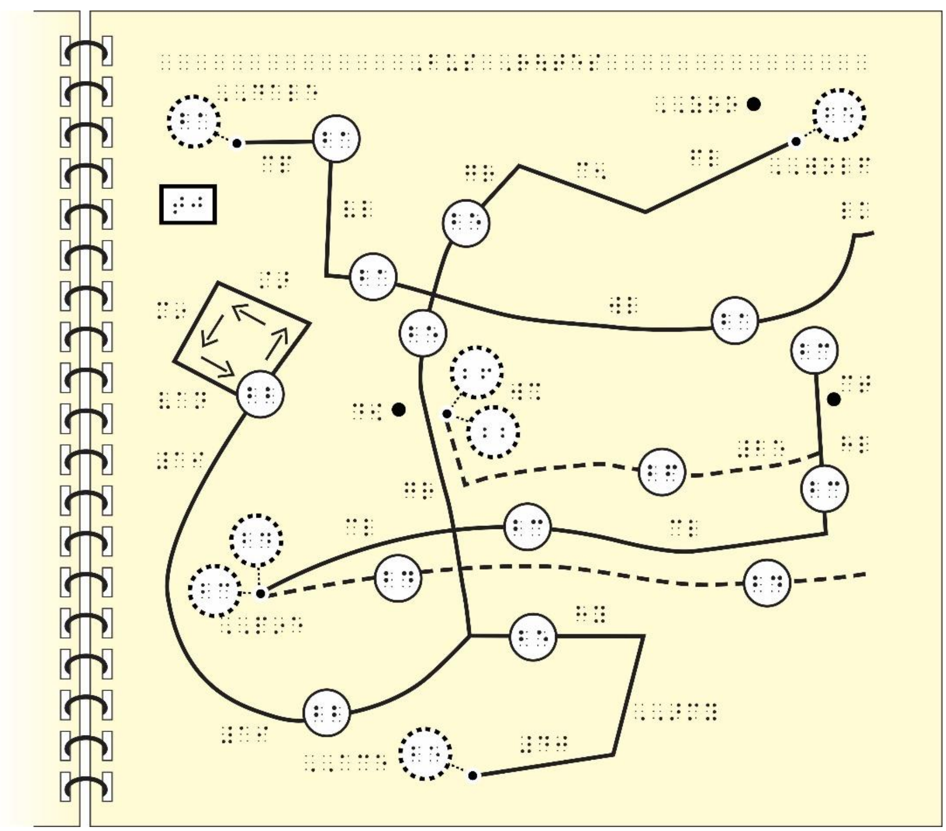
Example 7-4 UEB: Tactile Graphic Design Points

The following points indicate the braille code, format rules, and design techniques that were used for this tactile graphic example:

- UEB code
- repeated heading on the map page (8.5.1)
- use of different textures for crossed lines, no blank space required (2.11)
- use of blank space around plotted points (2.11, 3.4.3.11)
- use of facing pages for the key and the tactile graphic (2.20, 5.8.3.2, 7.3.10)
- use of different textures for circled routes and terminals (3.4.3.1)
- use of open arrowheads on arrows (3.4.3.7)
- use of indented headings for lists (5.3.2)
- use of a transcriber's note indicating omission of numeric indicators on bus routes and terminals (5.6.1)
- incorporation of the print key into the tactile graphic key listing (5.6.1, 5.6.2, 5.7.5, 5.8.4.2)
- use of line and point symbols in the key listing (5.8.4.3, 5.8.4.4, 5.9.2, 5.9.3)
- capitalization in the key listing follows capitalization in the print graphic (5.7.4)
- use of the alphabetic key listing (5.7.1, 5.8)
- use of runovers in key listings, indented two cells to the right of the line above (5.8.4.5)
- use of two columns for key listings, to fit on one page (5.8.4.9)
- omission of capitals on some labels to allow use of full words rather than using a key (5.10.3)

Example 7-4 UEB: Bus Routes





This page is intentionally blank.

Unit 8
Orientation and Mobility

This section provides a brief overview of guidelines for the design of tactile maps that are used in Orientation and Mobility (O&M) training and to assist travelers who are blind and visually impaired. Some design principles outlined in earlier sections also apply to these maps. A more thorough discussion is available in the following references, which are standard in the field of O&M:

Bentzen, B.L. and Marston, J. (2010). "Making and using orientation aids for orientation and mobility." Volume 2, Chapter 11 in Wiener, W. R., Welsh, R. L., & Blasch, B.B. Editors. *Foundations of Orientation and Mobility* (3rd edition). New York: AFB Press.

Edman, P.K. (1992). *Tactile Graphics.* New York: AFB Press

Fazzi, D. L., Petersmeyer, B. A. (2001). *Imagining the Possibilities: Creative Approaches to Orientation and Mobility Instruction for Persons Who Are Visually Impaired.* New York: AFB Press.

8.1 Map Designer Requirements

Producers of tactile maps for orientation and mobility (O&M) purposes should have an understanding of how people who are blind travel and how the use of landmarks and information points are key to establishing and maintaining orientation. Orientation and Mobility maps can either be made for general usage or tailored to an individual's needs. In all cases, they should be very specific to the environment being mapped.

Maps for O&M must be designed in cooperation with an O&M specialist who works with the end user of a person-specific map or an O&M specialist who knows the area being mapped for general usage. Production of the maps can be completed by someone else, in consultation with the O&M specialist as needed.

8.2 Content Decisions

The intended purpose of the tactile map will influence what to include on the map. For example, a map used for planning and carrying out a walking route for a specific individual may differ significantly from a tactile map that is meant to give a general overview, orientation, or familiarization to a wide area or region.

For a map designed for an individual user, the skill, developmental, and experiential levels of the map's end user must be considered carefully when making design and content choices. Too much complexity may mean offering information that is beyond the skill level of the reader, which results in the map serving no useful purpose.

8.3 General Overview or Area Maps

An overview map is designed to provide a broader perspective or understanding of the area depicted in the map. These maps represent a large area or specific community location such as a campus or shopping mall. Such maps may not have specific detail that would allow some readers to plan a walking route, but instead are designed to familiarize and orient the reader with the area encompassed. Maps of complex areas may have to be simplified and large amounts of detail may have to be presented through a series of maps or overlays.

8.4 Orientation and Mobility Route Maps

Orientation and mobility route maps are designed to give readers the opportunity to plan actual travel routes. The distinguishing feature of these maps is that they allow the map reader to explore a representation of a particular area and then plan a route before physically entering the area (campus, neighborhood, building, etc.). Maps that include specific landmarks and information points allow travelers to plan routes and navigate along walking paths.

8.5 Orientation and Mobility Maps—Design Considerations

8.5.1 A map that includes large print visual features along with braille labels and tactile symbols may serve the needs of the low-vision traveler as well as sighted helpers who may be asked for assistance. Headings on multi-page orientation and mobility maps should be repeated on all pages, unlike headings on tactile graphics for textbooks.

8.5.2 Symbols should be easily discernible both tactually and visually from their background. Texture symbols that are used to represent a type of area need to be easy to distinguish both visually and tactually from the other areal symbols on the map and should be uniform in texture each time they are used to represent that same type of area. The tactual and visual characteristics of the symbols should be easily associated with the items they represent.

8.5.3 Symbols or labels should be placed no closer together than 1/8 inch (3 millimeters). Other factors that facilitate readability are distinguishable variations in texture that represent different types of areas, a variety of heights between point symbols representing different types of objects, contrast between areas, and simplicity.

8.5.4 Important landmarks and information points that may be encountered by a traveler include grass, sidewalks, streets, boulevards, blended curbs, fences, ramps, stairs, driveways, bus stops, train stations, subway stops, entrances, buildings, prominent elevation changes, or other surface texture changes.

According to Bentzen and Marston (2010), all of these items can be represented using a variety of areal, line, and point symbols. However, this range of landmarks and information points is not usually found all on the same map.

A map should be designed in consultation with an O&M specialist in order to include representation of the landmarks and information points that are pertinent to the task of the traveler. Too much information may create a map that is too busy and difficult to read.

8.5.5 It is important to ensure accuracy of the features present in the area, which may have changed since the floor plan or map was drawn or since the area was last visited. Features to be included in an O&M map must be verified.

8.5.6 If the tactile map is to be placed in a permanent location, it should include a tactile and a visual “You are here” identifier. This identifier should be the most prominent symbol on the map. Ideally, this identifier should be universally recognized and uniform where more than one map is being installed in the same location or facility.

8.5.7 A permanently located map should be in alignment with the four cardinal directions relative to the physical space depicted.

8.5.8 A north indicator on a tactile map may be helpful in teaching directional concepts to travelers who are developing their orientation skills. A simple arrow pointing north with the letter "N" at the end of the arrowhead may be helpful, but it is not as useful as a tactually and visually distinguishable "north line" along the north edge of the map. A north line on the north edge of a map assures the user that if he is moving toward the "north edge" he is traveling north. A full compass rose diagram usually is not needed.

8.5.9 A map legend or key should be shown before the map and should clearly display and explain the various textures and tactile symbols included on the map.

8.5.10 Usually braille labels should be positioned horizontally. In some cases, aligning the name of the street parallel to the street with the label written vertically or diagonally may be more advantageous. If this technique is used on a map for a specific end user, be sure to ascertain if the traveler is a left-handed or right-handed braille reader so that the braille can be oriented for easier access. If necessary, a label is allowed to cross over a line. When there is not room for a complete word on the label, use a 2-cell "abbreviation" and show the full word in the key. Streets that project to the end of one of the sides of the map can be labeled near that side to permit more detail within the middle or central focus of the map.

8.5.11 In cases where there is no obvious grid system, an X/Y coordinate system can be added to the perimeter of the map to assist the reader in finding locations on a complex map.

8.6 Map Size and Scale

8.6.1 Decisions about map size, scale, and final dimensions of a map depend upon many factors including the physical area to be covered, the amount of detail desired, and the purpose of the map.

8.6.2 Well-designed portable maps may be significantly larger than 11 by 17-inches (28 centimeters by 43 centimeters), but should be designed in a collapsible format, (i.e., two or more folding sheets). There should be no tactile or visual borders or separations between the adjoining sheets. In this way, when the map is opened and placed on a table for reading, there is no distraction affecting tactile comprehension.

8.6.3 Portable non-collapsible maps with dimensions from 8-1/2 by 11-inches (21 by 28 centimeters) up to 11 by 17-inches (28 by 43 centimeters) may be used to provide very basic representations of an indoor or outdoor area. If the final dimensions of the map are too small, it may be too difficult to represent enough information for the map to be useful.

To facilitate on-site instruction for students, maps should be durable and weatherproof or easily reproduced.

8.6.4 Collapsible maps should be able to fold into dimensions that allow easy storage in a backpack or briefcase.

8.6.5 As much as possible, scale should be consistent with the real environment: object-to-object size and position should be proportional; spatial relationships should be geometrically correct.

Example: Sidewalks are not typically wider than streets nor are they typically positioned lower than streets in the environment.

According to Bentzen and Marston (2010), however, it is not essential for scale to be absolutely consistent in all parts of the map for the map to be useful. Limitations of the haptic system of perception as well as perception with impaired vision make consistency in scale throughout an entire map very difficult. Symbols closer together than 1/8 of an inch (3 millimeters) tend to be perceived as a single symbol.

Symbols of the same type, for example filled circles, must vary from one another in size by 25 to 30 percent to be perceived as different in size by most users. Larger differences may be even better. Inconsistencies in scale may be necessary in order to make differences in the sizes of symbols perceptible. For most travelers, the scale of the map is not as important as having the correct sequence of the landmarks and information points.

Braille and large print have fixed dimensions that have been determined to result in best legibility. A feature to be labeled may be too small to contain a legible label and may need to be larger in order to accommodate the label.

Bentzen and Marston (2010) have pointed out that decisions about scale will be influenced most by how the map is to be used. For example, a map intended for planning and traveling a long bus route may be most useful at a relatively small scale, but maps for walking the short distances to and from the bus stops on both ends may be most useful at relatively large scale.

Another important determination of scale is the level of graphic abstraction that is meaningful to the map user. Users who are still learning basic environmental concepts may best understand large scale maps that have rather literal representations of features of the environment. For example, a user who is having difficulty understanding the predictable, useful relationships between streets, curbs, sidewalks and inside shorelines may benefit greatly by having a large-scale map of an intersection including sidewalks, curbs, inside shorelines, streets, and crosswalks (Bentzen & Marston 2010).

8.6.6 A scale for measuring distances is an advanced feature of a tactile map and requires a considerable amount of design work. Using a scale bar, one can actually measure distance on the map with a braille ruler and determine the approximate distance between landmarks. When using a scale, it should be placed after area, line, and point symbols as part of the key.

8.6.7 Footpaths or sidewalks that can be traveled in an area need to be designed so that they can be comfortably traced with a finger.

8.6.8 Audio maps or e-text descriptions may be a useful addition to complex tactile maps to elaborate on specific areas or components of maps that are difficult to represent due to scale.

8.6.9 Quick orientation and mobility maps made of felt strips that adhere to a felt background or tactile components stuck on a paper or cardboard surface are often used for on-site orientation and mobility teaching and learning situations. Instructional teaching aids, such as Picture Maker: Wheatley Tactile Diagramming Kit, Chang Tactual Diagram Kit, and Intersections: the Cook Tactile Orientation and Mobility Kit are commercially available for teaching mobility concepts.

8.6.10 **Symbols for Maps**. According to Bentzen and Marston (2010) and Edman (1992), standardized symbols for tactile maps may seem like a good idea for visually impaired people who benefit from consistency, however, it may not be advantageous for some purposes and may be difficult to achieve across different map-making techniques. Symbols may vary depending on the production method used, especially for multi-copy maps, the number of features required, and the experience level of the map user.

Consistency in selection of symbols used for a specific traveler and a specific map is important, however. According to Bentzen and Marston (2010), the symbols used for a particular map should be ones that are not easily confused with each other and that are easily perceived and recognized as representing the information they are intended to show.

Symbols that are used together on a map should differ from each other in as many ways as possible to be most discriminable. Edman (1992) contains illustrations of the large number of symbols that were in use on multi-copy tactile maps as of the date of publication.

This page is intentionally blank.

Unit 9
Tactile Graphics Supplements

Where possible, tactile graphics should be placed in context within the braille volume as close as possible to the text to which they refer. (See Unit 5, Braille Formats for Tactile Graphics, §5.1.) There are, however, some instances where separate supplements containing all the tactile graphics are a more viable option.

9.1 Use of Tactile Graphics Supplements

It is important to note that tactile graphics supplements are not independent volumes, but are used in conjunction with the braille volumes, e-text, or audio recorded version, which provide the contextual meaning and purpose of the diagrams that they contain. Tactile graphics supplements are designed to be used in conjunction with and not independent of the text to which they belong. The ability to use supplements is an acquired skill, and some readers may be disadvantaged if the graphics are placed in a supplement.

9.1.1 Tactile graphics may be provided in separate supplements when

- the text is presented in an electronic format (e-text) or audio format
- the tactile graphics are designed and produced by sources other than the braille transcriber
- the graphics are already grouped in the text (e.g., an atlas section or an appendix of illustrations)
- materials or testing are presented online

9.1.2 Tactile graphics supplements are not suitable for

- kindergarten through grade 3;
- hard-copy braille versions of standardized test materials except for reference and formula sheets;
- mathematical materials. Mathematical materials should be transcribed together so that the tactile graphics and their explanations are not separated by being bound into separate volumes.

9.2 Format and Layout

9.2.1 If accompanying a braille transcription, tactile graphics supplement volumes must conform to the same transcription code that is used for the main body of the text, and this code should be stipulated in the Transcriber's Notes page of each tactile graphics supplement.

9.2.2 Tactile graphics supplement volumes may be compiled in a variety of media (vacuum form plastic, microcapsule paper, computer-embossed braille paper, or any other commercial process). More than one medium may be used in a Tactile graphics supplement. For example, the key pages preceding the graphic could be produced on computer-embossed paper while the diagram page could be produced on vacuum form plastic or microcapsule paper.

9.2.3 It is recommended that all the graphics pages in a volume be the same size and orientation.

9.2.4 It is not necessary to use a running head on line 1 of a tactile graphics supplement unless required by an agency.

9.2.5 Interpoint braille is not suitable for tactile graphics supplements because most tactile graphics are placed on single-sided pages.

9.3 Collaborative Planning and Formatting

To ensure consistency of presentation, all persons involved in graphics production and braille transcription of the same title should be informed of all format decisions. One method of keeping track of format decisions may be the use of a Tactile Information Sheet as shown in the following completed form.

TACTILE INFORMATION SHEET					
Title:	Mars and Beyond. Second Edition				
Author:	Marjory A. Booth				
Publisher:	The Rolling Press Inc.				
Copyright:	Booth Enterprise © 1998		**ISBN:** 0-19-3444448-12		
Medium:	***Microcapsule* (MC)**	***# of Pages Inserted***	0	***# of Supplements***	6
	***Vacuum form* (VC)**	***# of Pages Inserted***	20	***# of Supplements***	0
Transcriber/Format Leader:		Stéphane Naidoo			
Graphics Designer/Coordinator:		Judie Majola			
List Approved Date:		12/11/07			

COMMENTS
Transcriber's notes and keys are written on photocopies of all diagrams
Circled items on the marked-up photocopies must be included in the braille text
The print page # has been used to identify diagrams that have no figure numbers
Diagrams, drawings, or photos not listed have to be described
Answers (at the back of book) have been placed immediately after the related questions

Supp #	Print Page Range	Brl Page Estimate	Actual Brl Pages	Supp #	Print Page Range	Brl Page Estimate	Actual Brl Pages
1	1-45	38		6	245-286	52	
2	46-80	65					
3	81-124	48					
4	125-200	52					
5	201-244	30					

Print Page #	Fig. #	Diagram Description	Medium	# pages
		Chapter 1		
12	5	The blue ship	MC	2
22	7	The Lunar Rover	VC	2
25	9	Moonscape	MC	2
26	12	Constellations	MC	6
		Leo	MC	2
28		Space Shuttle	VC	1
29	25	The wing	MC	3
		Chapter 2		
30	26	The Red Planet	MC	3
31	27	Mars rover *Spirit*	VC	2
32	28	Mars rover *Opportunity*	VC	2
33	29	Rock Gallery	MC	5
	30a	Mars—Pathfinder scene	MC	2
	30b	Mars—Pathfinder scene	MC	1
	30c	Mars— Pathfinder scene	MC	2
	30d	Mars—Pathfinder scene	MC	1
34		"The Face on Mars"	MC	2
35		"Happy Face"—Vertical View	MC	1
38	40	MARSIS	MC	2
40		Graph—PFS Weekly Results	MC	2
44		Graph—Air temperatures vs. altitude	MC	2
45	40	Micro-probe	VC	2

SOURCE: *CNIB Library for the Blind, Braille Publishing 1998-2009*

9.4 Choosing Transcriber's Notes and Key Symbols

9.4.1 Appropriate transcriber's notes should be written, and all key symbols should be chosen after the tactile information sheet has been completed.

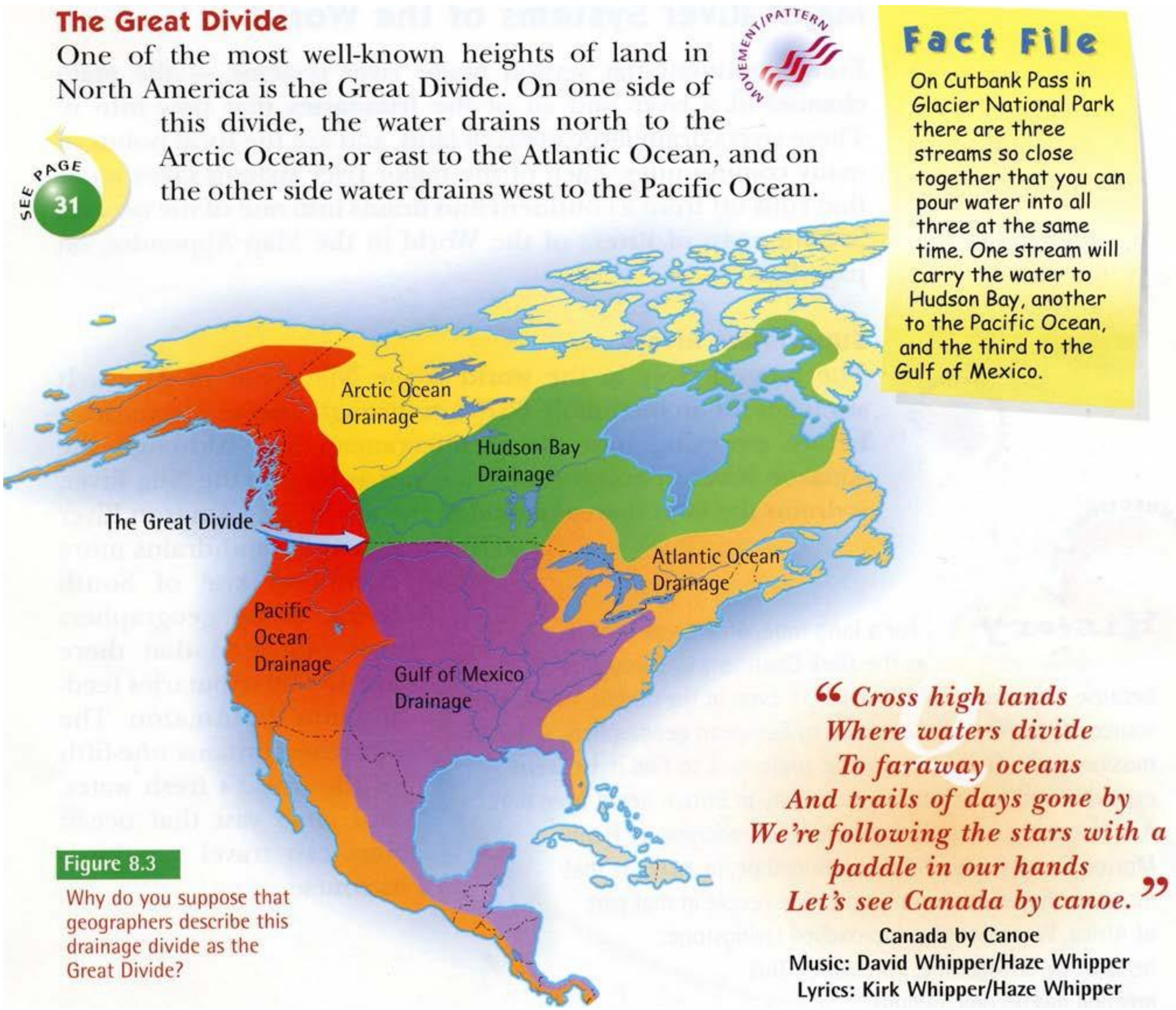
9.4.2 All persons involved in graphic production and braille transcription should be provided the transcriber's notes and keys that were chosen for the sections they are to produce.

9.5 Reference and Source Information

9.5.1 Attribution, reference, and source information should not be included with the tactile graphic, but should be placed after the figure number or diagram heading in the braille volume, e-text, or audio book.

9.5.2 If a chart or block of general informational text is placed within a diagram box (see map on the following page) and does not refer to a specific point or area (i.e., it does not need to be keyed or shown as an area, line, or point feature and explained in the key), the information or chart should be omitted from the diagram and placed in the braille volume, e-text, or audio book.

Example: Diagram with surrounding information that should be placed within the main body of the text. The surrounding text in the example below—Fact File, quotation, and accreditations—will be placed in the main body of text. The figure caption will be placed in the tactile graphics supplement.



Gage Physical Geography 7
Graham Draper, Lew French & Andrea Craig
Gage Educational Publishing Co. © 2000

9.6 Transcriber's Notes/Producer's Notes

9.6.1 Most tactile graphics require additional explanations in transcriber's notes to alert the reader as to how the graphic is presented. Such notes should be placed in a tactile graphics supplement and not in the braille volume, e-text, or audio book.

9.6.2 The transcriber's or producer's note, the image description, and the text from the original material should not be repetitive or verbose, yet must provide sufficient information for the tactile to be understood on its own. (See Unit 5, Braille Formats for Tactile Graphics, §5.6.)

9.6.3 A tactile graphic is referenced by the words "See Tactile Graphics Supplement #" within a transcriber's note in the braille volume or a producer's note in the e-text or audio version. The reference should follow immediately after the heading or figure number of the tactile graphic. (See Unit 9, Tactile Graphics Supplements, §9.2.)

Sample of a producer's note included in an audio book: "This recording references a series of tactile graphics supplements that are available on request. Not all diagrams are reproduced as a tactile graphic. If a tactile graphic is available, the tactile graphics supplement number is referenced at the start of the diagram description."

9.7 Transcriber-Generated Pages

The preliminary pages for a tactile graphics supplement could include a title page, a special symbols page if required, a graphic symbols page if required, a transcriber's notes page, and a contents page. In a supplement, the preliminary pages are transcriber-generated pages and are numbered as "t" pages.

9.7.1 **Title Page**

9.7.1.1 Each tactile graphics supplement should have a title page consistent with the braille, e-text, or audio versions.

9.7.1.2 The tactile graphics supplement number must appear on the title page with the total number of tactile graphics supplements.

Example: Tactile Graphics Supplement 2 of 4

9.7.1.3 The braille page ranges and the chapter(s)/unit(s)/ section(s) and the print page range must be shown on the tactile graphics supplement title page.

Example:

Tactile Graphics Supplement 3 of 5

Chapters 7 and 8

Braille pages t1-t5 and 1-61

To accompany print pages 410-537

9.7.2 Special Symbols Page

When unusual braille symbols are encountered in a tactile graphics supplement, they must be listed in braille order on a special symbols page following the title page. (See Unit 5, Braille Formats for Tactile Graphics, §5.13.)

9.7.2.1 Format for Special Symbols List

The special symbols list must be placed on a new braille page with the centered heading “SPECIAL SYMBOLS USED IN THIS SUPPLEMENT” starting on the first line. (See Unit 5, Braille Formats for Tactile Graphics, §5.13.)

It is recommended that an up-to-date list of special symbols be kept so that it will be easy to determine which symbols are used in the graphics and which are not. This is especially important when diagrams that were originally designed for inclusion in the braille volume have been grouped to form a tactile graphics supplement.

9.7.3 Graphic Symbols Page

Area, line, or point symbols that are consistently or repeatedly used on diagrams in a tactile graphics supplement should be placed on the graphic symbols page. Alphabetic key symbols, such as ISO abbreviations, should also be placed on this page. This will reduce the need to repeat those items in keys. (See Unit 5, Braille Formats for Tactile Graphics, §5.14.)

Example: Land and water texture symbols for a series of maps

During the planning and formatting stages, it is essential to develop and maintain an up-to-date record of the symbols in the graphic symbols page so that consistency of symbol usage can be assured.

9.7.3.1 When considering what should or can be included on the graphic symbols page(s), make sure that:

- the area, line, or point symbols appear frequently enough to warrant placement on the graphic symbols page
- the area, line, or point symbol is not used for any other feature in that tactile graphics supplement

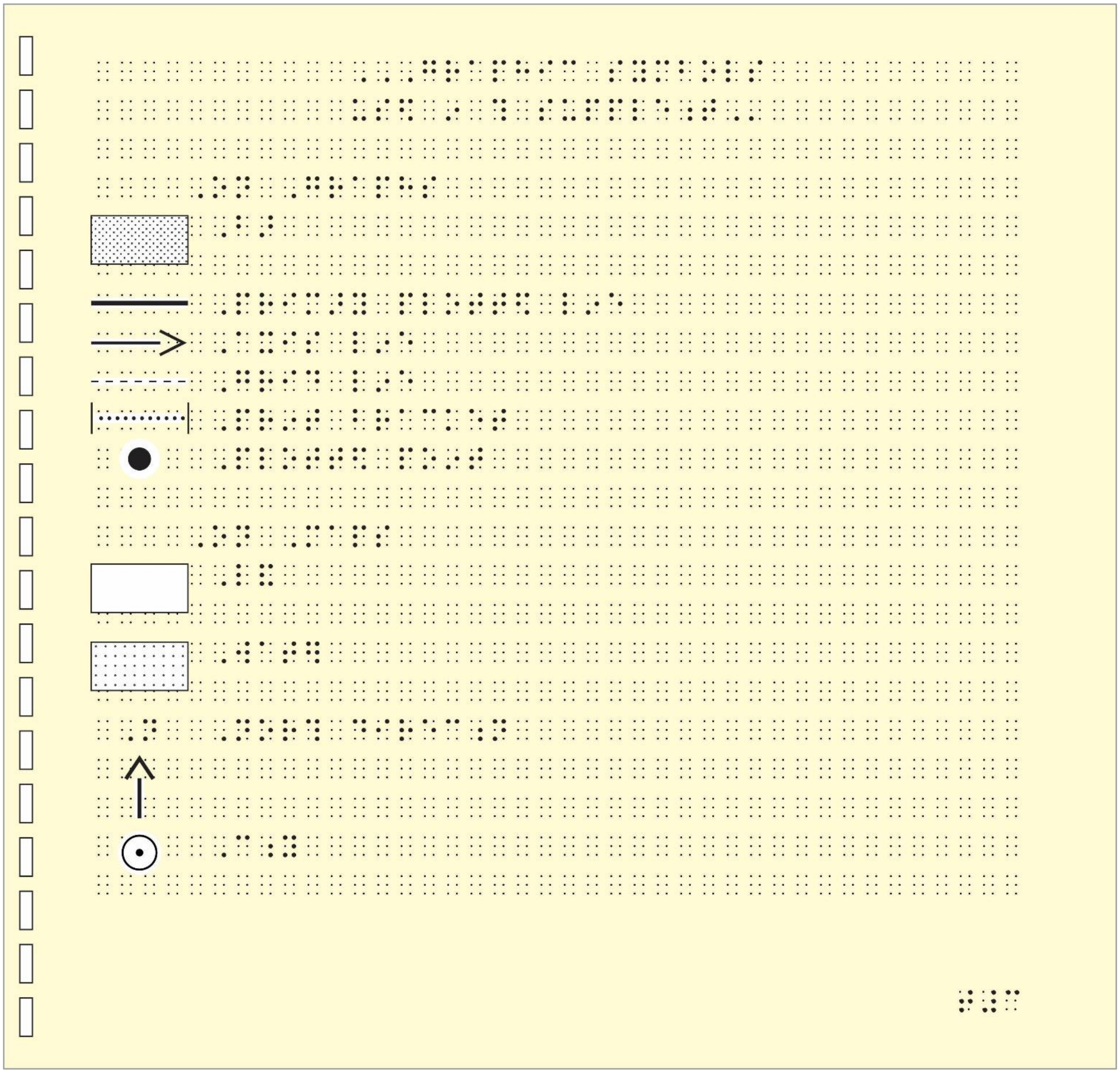
9.7.3.2 Standard tactile symbols should be placed on the graphic symbols page.

Examples: North arrows, measurement lines, directional (flow) arrows, land and water textures

9.7.3.3 When symbols fall under identifiable categories, the heading for each category must be brailled with initial capitals and placed as a cell-5 heading above the symbols it identifies.

9.7.3.4 The textures used to represent areas and lines start in cell 1; the explanations start in cell 6 with runovers in cell 8. Point symbols are centered within the first four cells of the line, and the explanation should begin in cell 6 with runovers in cell 8.

Example 9-1: Example of Graphic Symbols Page



9.7.4 **Transcriber's Notes Page**

9.7.4.1 The format for the transcriber's notes page should be consistent with the rules in *Braille Formats: Principles of Print-to-Braille Transcription, 2016*.

9.7.4.2 The transcriber's notes page should include items such as:

- unusual tactile styles or formats that occur throughout a tactile graphics supplement. Sample transcriber's note:

  All print perspective diagrams and three-dimensional images have been converted to top and/or side views. Each view has been identified above the diagram.

- the name of the braille code manuals used in the tactile graphics supplement. Sample transcriber's note:

  This material is brailled according to *The Rules of Unified English Braille, Second Edition, 2013; The Nemeth Braille Code for Mathematics and Science Notation, 2022; Braille Formats: Principles of Print-to-Braille Transcription, 2016; and Guidelines and Standards for Tactile Graphics, 2022, and updates.*

- a notification that diagrams have been turned 90 degrees (i.e., switched from portrait to landscape). Sample transcriber's note:

  Some of the print diagrams are turned 90 degrees in this supplement.

- an indication that the numeric indicator has been omitted from the numeric labels on diagrams to save space. Sample transcriber's note:

  The numeric indicator is omitted from the values shown on the vertical and horizontal axes on some of the graphs.

- a notification that symbols that are used consistently or repeatedly throughout the tactile graphics supplement are shown on the graphic symbols page. Sample transcriber's note:

  Common graphic symbols used in this material are shown and explained on the Graphic Symbols page.

9.7.5 **Table of Contents**

Only the units, sections, chapters, or figure numbers that are covered in the tactile graphics supplement need to be listed on the Table of Contents page for a tactile graphics supplement.

9.8 Page Numbering

9.8.1 Print Page Numbers

9.8.1.1 The print page number should be placed in the last cells of line 1 in the top right-hand corner on all tactile graphic pages, with at least three blank cells between the title and page number. Print page numbers should not appear on preliminary pages (front matter) such as title, special symbols, graphics symbols, or transcriber's notes pages.

9.8.1.2 Lettered continuation pages should be used when an illustration uses more than one page in a tactile graphics supplement.

9.8.1.3 When diagrams are prepared for both hard copy braille volumes and e-text, they might not appear on the same print (lettered continuation) page. In this instance, it is advisable to omit the print and braille page numbers from the master as they can be added to the copies as required.

9.8.2 Braille Page Numbers

9.8.2.1 Braille page numbers should be placed in the last cells of line 25 of the graphic page, with no fewer than three blank cells left between the last line of text and the braille page number.

9.8.2.2 Braille page numbers for each supplementary volume begin with braille page 1 and do not carry over to consecutive volumes. Preliminary pages should start with t#1, and the first page of text and/or tactile graphic should begin with braille page #1.

9.8.2.3 For the tactile graphic to be used for insertion into a braille volume or into a tactile graphics supplement, it is advisable to omit the braille page number from the master so that it can be added to the copy at the time of insertion into the braille volume. This allows for the reuse of common diagram masters in more than one braille volume.

9.9 Diagram Identification

9.9.1 Sometimes diagrams with no caption, figure number, or title can be identified only by their print page number or by their position on the print page. Logical identifiers such as "Top," "Bottom," "Left," and "Right" may be inserted above the diagrams to which they refer. These identifiers must be placed within transcriber's note indicators.

9.9.2 A tactile graphic should be provided with some form of identification even if the original print does not directly give the image a name. Tactile graphics can be identified by transcriber's notes or a transcriber-assigned title. The "added name" placed within transcriber's note indicators is a useful identification tool that enables the reader to quickly understand what the picture is showing.

Note: The test's publisher or state/provincial assessment content specialist must approve any changes to standardized tests.

9.9.3 Illustration captions and figure descriptions should accompany the diagrams in a tactile graphics supplement so that the reader can interpret the graphic information without having to refer to the braille volume, e-text, or audio book. The caption should also appear in the text.

9.9.4 Transcriber's notes that alert the reader to the way a diagram has been changed (e.g., a diagram that has to be shown as a side view tactually) must be placed before the diagram in a tactile graphics supplement.

9.10 Key Explanations

Key explanations must be included in a tactile graphics supplement rather than within the braille volume, e-text, or audio book.

9.11 Tactile Graphics Supplement Size

9.11.1 Divide volumes of tactile graphics supplements in logical section breaks (i.e., chapter, unit).

9.11.2 The recommended tactile graphics supplement size is 40-60 pages in microcapsule paper, but should not exceed 75 pages.

9.11.3 For vacuum form plastic, tactile graphics supplements should be approximately 30-40 pages for thick vacuum form and 70-80 pages for thin vacuum form per tactile graphics supplement.

9.11.4 For computer-embossed tactile graphics, follow the standard size limitations for braille volumes (90 one-sided braille pages).

9.11.5 Page sizes for tactile graphics should be of uniform size throughout the tactile graphics supplement.

Unit 10
Quality Control

The successful production of a usable tactile graphic is best measured by its tactual clarity when read by touch. To ensure that the purpose and content of the print diagram are conveyed, all tactile graphic masters and copies should be proofread by touch to verify that the intended meaning of the print illustration has been conveyed in tactual form.

10.1 Proofreading the Tactile Graphic

10.1.1 To guarantee the accuracy of the transformation from print to tactual image, the tactile graphic should undergo two proofreadings. Proofreading should include not only accuracy of braille, correct spelling, proper use of contractions, and correct braille code format, but should also be checked to make sure that all information relative to the purpose of the print diagram is shown. The first proofreading should be done by the creator of the tactile graphic to make certain that all information in the print graphic has been successfully portrayed in the tactile graphic itself and any accompanying keys or transcriber's notes. The second proofreading should be done by a certified braille proofreader (Library of Congress or CNIB certification).

10.1.2 The person who created the tactile graphic should not be the person who proofreads the diagram by touch.

10.1.3 The second proofreading, performed by a certified proofreader, must include the proofreading of the entire drawing, including labels, transcriber's notes, area, line and point textures, alphabetic and numeric keys, and the tactile graphic. It is essential that this proofreading be done by touch because textures that look different to the eye may not feel different to the reader.

10.1.4 The proofreader should be knowledgeable about the subject matter to ensure that no erroneous information was added or any information important to the purpose of the graphic was omitted.

10.1.5 If possible, all volumes of one textbook should be proofread by the same proofreader for consistency.

10.2 Tactile Graphic Proofreading Procedures

The following is a list of items that should be checked when proofreading a tactile graphic.

10.2.1 The key, transcriber's notes, title, and tactile graphic should be consistent with the rules of the code in which the text is transcribed and should conform to the guidelines and standards stipulated in this manual.

10.2.2 Any necessary transcriber's notes should be free from errors in spelling, grammar, and wording and must be written at a level appropriate to the reader of the text.

10.2.3 For a series of tactile graphics of the same place or object, check that the alphabetic/numeric key, area, line, and point texture symbols for the item are consistent throughout the transcription.

Example: The same area texture for water is used throughout the volume or "ao" is used as the alphabetic key symbol for Atlantic Ocean throughout the volume.

10.2.4 Make certain that the area, line, and point symbols used in the key match those used on the tactile graphic itself. Textures used in the key should match exactly in pattern, orientation, and spacing to those used on the graphic.

10.2.5 Alphabetic and numeric key symbols used in the key should match exactly with those used on the tactile graphic itself. In general, it is easier to change a discrepancy on a key page than on the tactile graphic page.

Example: If "mr" is used on the key page for Mississippi River, you cannot use "ms" on the tactile graphic.

10.2.6 Keys may be shown in alphabetic, numeric, or logical order depending on the nature of the diagram. (See Unit 5, Braille Formats for Tactile Graphics, §5.7.3.)

10.2.7 All area textures, lines, and point symbols should be discernible by touch and distinct from each other.

10.2.8 The surrounding information (area, line, and point textures or size and height variations) must not interfere with identification of key symbols and labels.

10.2.9 When proofreading a tactile graphic that contains lead lines connecting texture symbols, alphabetic keys or numeric keys to labels, ask:

- Do lead lines point to the appropriate section of the tactile graphic?
- When a lead line crosses an area texture or line, can it be followed to the correct area?
- Is there enough blank space around the lead line?

10.2.10 Determine if transcriber's notes are needed to clarify the elimination of details to the diagrams that were made during the editing process.

Examples:

Simplification such as the removal of the three-dimensional aspect of the original print drawing, which is shown as a two-dimensional object in the tactile graphic.

Simplification that involves the elimination of unnecessary clutter (e.g., omissions of rivers, political boundaries, lines of latitude, etc.).

10.2.11 Determine if transcriber's notes are needed to clarify the designer's decision to deviate from usual practice.

Sample transcriber's notes:

The following graphic is divided into two sections. The left section is presented first, followed by the right section.

Numeric indicators on the horizontal axis are omitted to allow space for all of the numbers.

In the following graphic, the measurement label "cm" is omitted to allow for all numeric labels.

The years on the graph are from 1910 to 1990. Only the last two digits of the year are shown.

In the following diagram, the scale and map are doubled in size.

The diagram is rotated from a horizontal form in print to a vertical form in braille.

10.2.12 Determine if the tactile graphic has too much clutter. If yes, then discuss with the tactile designer what information might not be essential to the purpose of the diagram, and could therefore be eliminated or separated into more sections.

10.2.13 Assure that objects to be measured using a ruler are raised 1/32 inch (1 millimeter) above the level of the paper, with 1 inch (2.5 centimeters) space above or below, to facilitate the use of a braille ruler.

10.2.14 Assure that angles to be measured with a protractor are large enough to facilitate the use of a braille protractor. The rays must extend outward from the vertex of the angle 3 inches (7.5 centimeters), far enough to allow for the placement of the protractor with the rays extending beyond the protractor edges.

10.2.15 For coordinate grids, assure that the *x*- and *y*-axes have a different texture or thickness from that of the grid lines. Assure that the plotted lines or points have a more dominant texture than the background grid lines.

10.2.16 Assure that the dotted or solid lines shown in graphs of inequalities (equations that contain “less than” or “more than”) are dotted and solid in the tactile version because the texture of the line is mathematically significant and should not be changed.

10.2.17 Check alphabetic and numeric labels to make certain that they are aligned with appropriate tick marks. Tick marks should be of appropriate length as specified in Unit 3, Planning and Editing, 3.4.3.4.

10.2.18 Verify that the Special Symbols page and the Transcriber’s Notes page include necessary symbols or information that appear in the volume of text, including braille number line symbols if used.

10.2.19 The running head and the print and braille page numbers should be checked for accuracy.

10.2.20 Check the clarity of all braille and textures at outer edges of the page.

10.2.21 If a text is transcribed for kindergarten through grade 3 students, assure that tactual symbols are used for pictographs, counting symbols, number lines, etc., as described in Unit 11 of this manual. Because this is a counting task and not a literacy task, braille symbols such as “fl” for flower should not be used; instead use a raised circle, triangle, or other tactile symbol.

10.2.22 Assure that facing pages are used when a transcriber’s note and/or key are on a page separate from the tactile graphic itself or if the tactile graphic is divided into two sections. (See Unit 5, Braille Formats for Tactile Graphics, §5.12.)

10.2.23 The first proofreading of tactile graphics for media such as microcapsule paper may be proofread visually using the computer printouts rather than using tactually raised (developed) paper images, but only if a palette of appropriate area, line, and point symbols has already been tested tactually.

10.2.24 Where there is any doubt about the tactual effectiveness of a computer-generated graphic, the diagram should be proofread by touch.

10.3 Proofreading Tactile Graphic Copies

10.3.1 The first copy made from the tactile graphic master should be proofread by touch to verify that the different textures used on the master are tactually distinct from one another.

10.3.2 Additional copies should be checked for clarity of braille and accuracy of the tactile graphic.

10.3.3 Check the perimeter of the developed copy to make sure the top, bottom, left, and right sides are clearly reproduced.

10.3.4 The quality of material such as microcapsule paper may deteriorate over time. As a quality control measure, it is necessary to spot-check the final raised graphic to determine whether the tactual clarity has been compromised.

10.3.5 Vacuum-form copies must be checked to ensure that raised textures on the tactile master have not come unglued or loosened during the copying process.

This page is intentionally blank.

Unit 11
Graphics for Early Grades

The term “early grades” refers to kindergarten through grade 3. This unit was written in part based on the *BANA Guidelines for the Transcription of Early Educational Materials from Print to Braille.*

11.1 The Challenge of Graphics for Young Readers

In textbooks and standardized testing, an increasing number of graphics are used to communicate content. Understanding graphics is a vital tool for readers. Presenting strong and clear tactile graphics will support young readers in developing these skills.

11.1.1 Materials for early grades, by nature, are primarily presented in image (picture) form. Since young readers are in the early stages of developing reading vocabulary, new concepts must be presented through images rather than words.

It is important that materials for young readers include tactile graphics. As new curriculum content is introduced and presented, the reader has the opportunity to develop skills to interpret and understand tactile graphics while learning new concepts.

Reading and interpreting tactile graphics are skills that must be taught to braille readers. Students in kindergarten through grade 3 are developing skills to read tactile graphics and may need assistance in interpreting the information being presented, depending on the complexity of the tactile graphic.

11.1.2 Not all instructional objectives can be achieved as presented to print readers. Many of these activities do not offer meaningful learning experiences to students who read braille. Many of the symbols used in print to represent objects are not readily recognized and interpreted by a braille reader.

Activities that require the reader to perform the tasks below should not be produced as tactile graphics:

- match pictures to sounds, letters, words, or sentences (e.g., phonics activities that ask the student to circle all of the pictures starting with "b")
- utilize visual discrimination or visual perception
- draw a shape configuration to identify words
- "read" the story presented entirely in pictures
- perform handwriting tasks

11.1.3 Best educational practices include activities that support the student in acquiring the skills of literacy, numeracy, and graphicacy. It is the responsibility of teachers, not the transcriber or graphics designer, to provide alternative activities for the student.

11.2 Design of Graphics for Young Readers

It is important to include graphics in texts for young readers. It is much more interesting to count or group shapes or textures than to have "just braille dots" represent information.

11.2.1 Graphics for young readers should be produced using uncomplicated area textures and clean strong lines. Solid shapes are more easily recognized than are outline shapes.

11.2.2 **Simplification**. All three-dimensional images should be shown as simple two-dimensional shapes or simple outline graphics. The perception and understanding of three-dimensional imagery are beyond the scope of young readers, and images should never be shown in three-dimensional graphics. (See Example 6-14: *Counting Symbols*.)

- Simplify the symbols used as a stimulus for activities. Use basic or simplified shapes to replace:
- items to be counted or grouped (butterflies, rabbits, etc.)
- items showing size comparison (big or little)
- pictures presented to identify same and different
- items in activities of classification (i.e., circle all the things you can wear; draw a line under all the animals)

11.2.3 For readers in kindergarten through grade 3, images should be shown as simple tactile shapes. Do not represent objects using braille dot graphics.

Examples: Do not use full cells to represent bars in a bar graph. Do not use single letters to represent objects that are to be counted or grouped, such as “b” for each butterfly to be counted.

11.2.4 For readers in kindergarten through grade 3, do not use a shape indicator to represent objects. Shapes should be shown as tactile graphics.

11.2.5 In materials for readers in grade 4 and above, a tactile graphic is preferred, but braille dot graphics may be used, including full cells and shape indicators.

11.2.6 When both the color and shape of objects are important to the content, simplify the shape of the object and write the color name inside the shape when possible (e.g., a group of yellow cars and green cars could be shown as ovals with the color name written inside).

In materials for readers in kindergarten and grade 1, write the braille word for the color in the shape if possible.

In materials for readers in grades 2 and 3, if space does not permit full spelling of the color name, use a 2-cell keyed alphabetic symbol placed inside a simple shape to identify similar items shown in different colors (e.g., a group of yellow cars and green cars could be shown as ovals with the keyed symbols “yl” or “gr” brailled inside. A key must include the alphabetic symbols as well as the explanation of the shape and should precede the graphic).

Note: When an alphabetic key is used, the keyed symbol must contain either a dot 3 or a dot 6 in one of the letters. (See Unit 5, Braille Formats for Tactile Graphics, §5.8.1.2.)

11.2.7 When colored symbols are used in print graphics, select uncomplicated textures in basic shapes to show differences as presented in colors. The color symbol must be keyed (e.g., smooth = red, texture = blue).

11.2.8 When coins are presented in activities that teach concepts of money, label as presented in print. Use numbers (10 cents) or 2-cell letter symbols (i.e., “pn” for penny, “nk” for nickel, “dm” for dime, “qr” for quarter, “hl” for half-dollar, “ln” for loonie, and “tn” for toonie), depending on the text around the graphic and the concept being taught. (See Unit 6, Diagrams for Technical Material, §6.4.)

Do not attempt to reproduce the image that is on a coin. It is unlikely that a reader will be able to distinguish the image on an actual coin or then be able to identify a tactile representation of that image. Best educational practices indicate that real money should be used when teaching coin recognition. (See Example 6-28: *Value of Coins*.)

11.2.9 For specifics on representation of 100s blocks and graphics used in teaching place value, also refer to Unit 6, Diagrams for Technical Material, §6.8.2, of these guidelines and standards.

For specifics on representing number lines for lower grades, refer to §6.5.1.12 of these guidelines and standards.

11.2.10 Puzzles and other “fun” activities presented as print graphics should be included and presented as tactile graphics. Many young readers enjoy these activities.

Examples: Connect the dots, pattern sequences

11.2.11 A simple key may be needed to explain symbols or textures used in a tactile graphic. The key must precede the graphic, preferably on the same page. A key is a transcriber’s note and must be enclosed in transcriber’s note symbols. Use vocabulary appropriate to the grade level. Use the braille code in which the text is produced for both the key and the graphic.

11.2.12 The use of contracted braille versus uncontracted braille should be determined by the needs and reading level of the reader and should be the same as the braille text in which the tactile graphic appears.

11.3 Re-sizing the Original Print Graphic

Consider the size of a young reader's hands when altering the size of a graphic.

11.3.1 A clock face with a 2-1/2-inch (6.25 centimeter) diameter will be easier to explore than an 8-inch (20 centimeter) drawing. The young reader will be able to see the whole clock face in one search rather than having to make several wider sweeps to cover the entire drawing.

11.3.2 Tactile graphics should include fully written-out labels whenever possible. The task of understanding a graphic that has self-explanatory labels is less complicated than interpreting a graphic that requires the reader to refer to a separate key to find the meaning of textures or keyed words.

11.4 Clarity and Strength of Graphic

Young readers need strong, clear graphics because they are learning to interpret information in a new way. The graphic should be easy to read and should be stronger and higher than braille dots.

11.4.1 Strong lines, clear and uncomplicated textures, and simple point symbols should be used to represent the information in diagrams for young readers.

11.4.2 The design of the graphic for readers in kindergarten through grade 2 should include no more than three different line types, three different area textures, and three different point symbols. Graphics for grade 3 should have no more than five of each kind of symbol.

11.4.3 Do not assume that a reader will recognize the symbolic meaning of a drawing of an object from an outline shape. A solid (filled) raised shape, such as one produced using collage, provides a clearer tactile presentation than a spur wheel (tooled) outline drawing.

11.5 Teacher's Reference Materials

Print pages titled "Teacher's Reference Materials" should be inserted at the beginning of each braille volume and after the print title page. Refer to the *BANA Guidelines for the Transcription of Early Educational Materials from Print to Braille* for details of what to include.

Unit 12
Standardized Tests

The production of tactile graphics for standardized tests follows the same guidelines and standards provided in other sections of this manual. Other considerations may need to be addressed with the test publisher.

12.1 Overview

12.1.1 Federal, State, and Provincial Mandates for Testing

Federal and regional laws require that standardized tests be administered to all students at specific grade levels and for specific subjects. Students who are braille readers must have access to the materials in formats that allow them to participate fully in testing activities. Braille production agencies or independent transcribers who are producing tests must check with the state or provincial department of education or the school district for which the tests are being produced to determine if there are specific production standards for that state or province. Working with the test publisher will be required to determine if or when changes can be made to the print copy of the test to present a more appropriate braille version.

12.1.2 Consistency of Production

Whether the test being produced is a standardized test or a test contained in classroom materials, the production must be consistent with established formats and production methods. The reader must have tests in familiar and consistent formats, presentations, and production methods. For example, in a test, a reader should not encounter tactile graphics on microcapsule paper if he or she is accustomed to reading tactile graphics on vacuum-form plastic paper.

12.1.3 Transcriber Certification

The transcriber who produces the standardized test and/or the tactile graphics must be certified by the Library of Congress or by the CNIB Foundation in the appropriate code in which the test is being transcribed.

12.2 Editing the Graphic

12.2.1 Publisher Approval

When graphics are edited, the test publisher or state/provincial assessment content specialist must approve changes. Production of standardized tests requires written copyright permission from the test publisher. Verifying the intent of the test item is important before editing a graphic.

If a graphic cannot be produced or described, the publisher needs to be contacted to determine how to proceed.

12.2.2 Simplification

12.2.2.1 Eliminate unnecessary information in the graphic, such as artistic features, without removing distractors that have been intentionally included and without providing an unfair advantage to the reader by suggesting the answer in the elimination of items.

12.2.2.2 Separate complex diagrams into several simpler graphics when the content is appropriate. Include a transcriber's note to inform the reader of this arrangement.

12.2.2.3 Omit pictures that do not include information vital to the test items. If information in a picture is needed by the reader and can be presented in a picture description (transcriber's note), the description needs to be written and approved by the publisher or by the assessment content specialist.

12.2.3 Re-Sizing the Graphic

12.2.3.1 Graphics Requiring Measurement

When the reader is required to perform measurements, the graphic must be large enough and of sufficient line strength that braille measuring tools (i.e., braille ruler, braille protractor) can be used to accomplish the task. (See Unit 6, Diagrams for Technical Material, §6.10.6-§6.10.7.)

Diagrams including measurement and scale in which the reader is asked to measure or compare measured areas must be produced at exactly the same size as shown in print. This requirement applies to both the diagram in the stem of a question as well as the diagrams in answer choices. (See Example 3-7: *U.S.A*.)

Proportions must be accurately reproduced in the tactile graphic. (See Supplement Example 19: *Measuring*.)

12.2.3.2 Adding Labels

Carefully edit a graphic before adding labels or key information that is not included in the print. If adding a label does not give the reader an advantage or suggest the answer, enlarge the graphic to a size that will provide room for labels. Labels can be added only if approved by the publisher or the assessment content specialist.

12.3 Format

12.3.1 Placement of Graphic

If the entire item will fit on one page, the braille order of presentation should follow print.

If the entire item will not fit on one page, the question and the answer choices should be together on one page and the graphic on a separate page, regardless of whether the test is produced as single-sided or interpoint braille.

12.3.2 Placement of braille labels on tests should be consistent with placement of braille labels on any other graphic. (See Unit 5, Braille Formats for Tactile Graphic, §5.10.)

12.3.3 The key should be placed before the graphic, either at the top of the page with the graphic or on the facing page. For tactile graphics with multi-key pages, see Unit 5, Braille Formats for Tactile Graphics, §5.12.3.

12.3.4 Editing may require that other information, such as a compass rose or scale (when use of the scale is required for the test item), be moved to the top of the page. The direction of the compass rose arrows should always coincide with the lines of longitude and latitude of the map.

12.3.5 Special Symbols and Transcriber's Notes pages should be included in both print and braille.

12.4 **Proofreading the Graphic** (See Unit 10: *Quality Control*.)

12.4.1 The graphic must be proofread by a certified proofreader who is knowledgeable in the subject area and the applicable braille code.

12.4.2 A braille proofreader must proofread all tactile graphics before mass production of the braille test to ensure readability and accuracy.

12.4.3 All standardized tests, including graphics, should be completely proofread twice.

12.4.4 All copies of the tactile graphic should be checked for tactile development and quality of braille dots.

Appendix A
Braille-to-ASCII Conversion

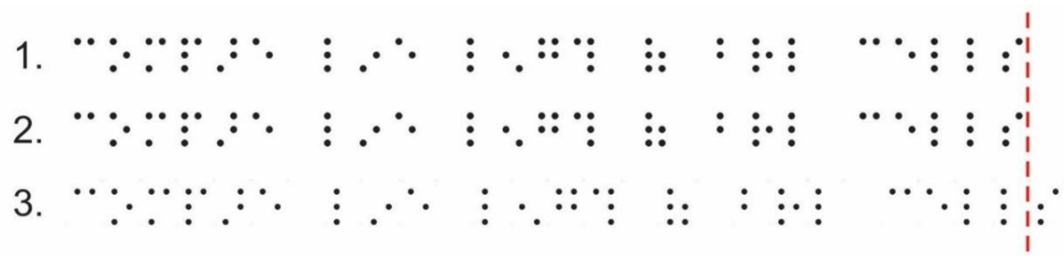
⠁	a	⠝	n	⠼	#	⠿	=	⠫	$
⠃	b	⠕	o	⠂	1	⠯	&	⠩	%
⠉	c	⠏	p	⠆	2	⠮	!	⠹	?
⠙	d	⠟	q	⠒	3	⠾	)	⠬	+
⠑	e	⠗	r	⠲	4	⠷	(	⠤	-
⠋	f	⠎	s	⠢	5	⠻	]	⠈	@
⠛	g	⠞	t	⠖	6	⠪	[	⠘	^
⠓	h	⠥	u	⠶	7	⠣	<	⠸	_
⠊	i	⠧	v	⠦	8	⠜	>	⠐	"
⠚	j	⠺	w	⠔	9	⠱	:	⠨	.
⠅	k	⠭	x	⠴	0	⠳	\	⠰	;
⠇	l	⠽	y	⠄	'	⠌	/	⠀	space
⠍	m	⠵	z	⠠	,	⠡	*		

Appendix B
Sample Braille Fonts

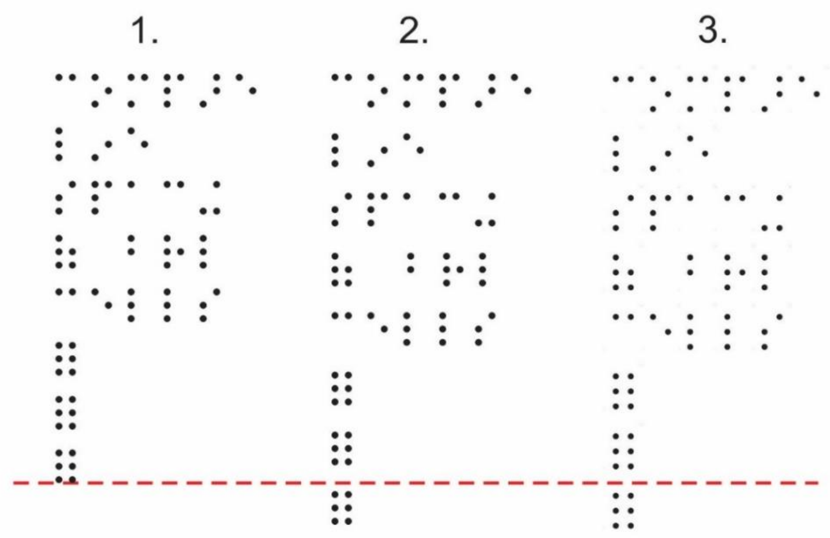
The fonts identified by number are used in the braille examples below.

1. Duxbury: Swell Braille.ttf used at size 24 point (line spacing not modified if creating the graphic using MS Word for use with mirocapsule) (download available from http://www.tsbvi.edu/school/1087-download-braille-and-asl-specialty-fonts).
2. Duxbury: Swell Braille.ttf used at size 24 point (for use with microcapsule paper modified with 111% space between lines increased to match the spacing of embossed braille).
3. ViewPlus: Braille29.ttf used at size 29 point for Tiger embossing (no modifications) (available from https://viewplus.com/viewplus-support/download/).

Compare overall line length.



Compare overall line spacing.



Note: Braille does not appear at actual recommended size.

Appendix C
Standard Key* for Maps (USA and Canada)

* based on International Organization for Standardization abbreviations

State Names

State	Symbol	State	Symbol	State	Symbol
Alabama	al	Louisiana	la	Ohio	oh
Alaska	ak	Maine	me	Oklahoma	ok
Arizona	az	Maryland	md	Oregon	or
Arkansas	ar	Massachusetts	ma	Pennsylvania	pa
California	ca	Michigan	mi	Rhode Island	ri
Colorado	co	Minnesota	mn	South Carolina	sc
Connecticut	ct	Mississippi	ms	South Dakota	sd
Delaware	de	Missouri	mo	Tennessee	tn
Florida	fl	Montana	mt	Texas	tx
Georgia	ga	Nebraska	ne	Utah	ut
Hawaii	hi	Nevada	nv	Vermont	vt
Idaho	id	New Hampshire	nh	Virginia	va
Illinois	il	New Jersey	nj	Washington	wa
Indiana	in	New Mexico	nm	West Virginia	wv
Iowa	ia	New York	ny	Wisconsin	wi
Kansas	ks	North Carolina	nc	Wyoming	wy
Kentucky	ky	North Dakota	nd		

Province/Territory Names

Province	Symbol
Alberta	ab
British Columbia	bc
Manitoba	mb
New Brunswick	nb
Newfoundland and Labrador	nl
Northwest Territories	nt
Nova Scotia	ns
Nunavut	nu
Ontario	on
Prince Edward Island	pe
Quebec	qc
Saskatchewan	sk
Yukon Territory	yt

Appendix C
Standard Key for Maps (Countries)

Country	Symbol
Afghanistan	af
Åland Islands	ax
Albania	al
Algeria	dz
American Samoa	as
Andorra	ad
Angola	ao
Anguilla	ai
Antarctica	aq
Antigua and Barbuda	ag
Argentina	ar
Armenia	am
Aruba	aw
Australia	au
Austria	at
Azerbaijan	az
Bahamas (the)	bs
Bahrain	bh
Bangladesh	bd
Barbados	bb
Belarus	by
Belgium	be
Belize	bz
Benin	bj
Bermuda	bm
Bhutan	bt
Bolivia (Plurinational State of)	bo
Bonaire, Sint Eustatius and Saba	bq
Bosnia and Herzegovina	ba
Botswana	bw
Bouvet Island	bv
Brazil	br
British Indian Ocean Territory (the)	io
Brunei Darussalam	bn
Bulgaria	bg
Burkina Faso	bf
Burundi	bi
Cabo Verde	cv
Cambodia	kh
Cameroon	cm
Canada	ca
Cayman Islands (the)	ky
Central African Republic (the)	cf
Chad	td
Chile	cl
China	cn
Christmas Island	cx
Cocos (Keeling) Islands (the)	cc
Colombia	co
Comoros (the)	km
Congo (the Democratic Republic of the)	cd
Congo (the)	cg
Cook Islands (the)	ck
Costa Rica	cr
Côte d'Ivoire	ci
Croatia	hr
Cuba	cu
Curaçao	cw
Cyprus	cy
Czechia	cz
Denmark	dk
Djibouti	dj

Appendix C
Standard Key for Maps

Country	Symbol
Dominica	dm
Dominican Republic (the)	do
Ecuador	ec
Egypt	eg
El Salvador	sv
Equatorial Guinea	gq
Eritrea	er
Estonia	ee
Eswatini	sz
Ethiopia	et
Falkland Islands (the) [Malvinas]	fk
Faroe Islands (the)	fo
Fiji	fj
Finland	fi
France	fr
French Guiana	gf
French Polynesia	pf
French Southern Territories (the)	tf
Gabon	ga
Gambia (the)	gm
Georgia	ge
Germany	de
Ghana	gh
Gibraltar	gi
Greece	gr
Greenland	gl
Grenada	gd
Guadeloupe	gp
Guam	gu
Guatemala	gt

Country	Symbol
Guernsey	gg
Guinea	gn
Guinea-Bissau	gw
Guyana	gy
Haiti	ht
Heard Island and McDonald Islands	hm
Holy See (the)	va
Honduras	hn
Hong Kong	hk
Hungary	hu
Iceland	is
India	in
Indonesia	id
Iran (Islamic Republic of)	ir
Iraq	iq
Ireland	ie
Isle of Man	im
Israel	il
Italy	it
Jamaica	jm
Japan	jp
Jersey	je
Jordan	jo
Kazakhstan	kz
Kenya	ke
Kiribati	ki
Korea (the Democratic People's Republic of)	kp
Korea (the Republic of)	kr
Kuwait	kw

Appendix C
Standard Key for Maps

Country	Symbol
Kyrgyzstan	kg
Lao People's Democratic Republic (the)	la
Latvia	lv
Lebanon	lb
Lesotho	ls
Liberia	lr
Libya	ly
Liechtenstein	li
Lithuania	lt
Luxembourg	lu
Macao	mo
Macedonia (the Former Yugoslav Republic of)	mk
Madagascar	mg
Malawi	mw
Malaysia	my
Maldives	mv
Mali	ml
Malta	mt
Marshall Islands (the)	mh
Martinique	mq
Mauritania	mr
Mauritius	mu
Mayotte	yt
Mexico	mx
Micronesia (Federated States of)	fm
Moldova (the Republic of)	md
Monaco	mc
Mongolia	mn
Montenegro	me
Montserrat	ms

Country	Symbol
Morocco	ma
Mozambique	mz
Myanmar	mm
Namibia	na
Nauru	nr
Nepal	np
Netherlands (the)	nl
New Caledonia	nc
New Zealand	nz
Nicaragua	ni
Niger	ne
Nigeria	ng
Niue	nu
Norfolk Island	nf
Northern Mariana Islands (the)	mp
Norway	no
Oman	om
Pakistan	pk
Palau	pw
Palestine, State of	ps
Panama	pa
Papua New Guinea	pg
Paraguay	py
Peru	pe
Philippines (the)	ph
Pitcairn	pn
Poland	pl
Portugal	pt
Puerto Rico	pr
Qatar	qa

Appendix C
Standard Key for Maps

Country	Symbol
Réunion	re
Romania	ro
Russian Federation (the)	ru
Rwanda	rw
Saint Barthélemy	bl
Saint Helena, Ascension and Tristan da Cunha	sh
Saint Kitts and Nevis	kn
Saint Lucia	lc
Saint Martin (French Part)	mf
Saint Pierre and Miquelon	pm
Saint Vincent and the Grenadines	vc
Samoa	ws
San Marino	sm
Sao Tome and Principe	st
Saudi Arabia	sa
Senegal	sn
Serbia	rs
Seychelles	sc
Sierra Leone	sl
Singapore	sg
Sint Maarten (Dutch Part)	sx
Slovakia	sk
Slovenia	si
Solomon Islands	sb
Somalia	so
South Africa	za
South Georgia and the South Sandwich Islands	gs
South Sudan	ss
Spain	es
Sri Lanka	lk
Sudan (the)	sd

Country	Symbol
Suriname	sr
Svalbard and Jan Mayen	sj
Sweden	se
Switzerland	ch
Syrian Arab Republic	sy
Taiwan (Province of China)	tw
Tajikistan	tj
Tanzania, United Republic of	tz
Thailand	th
Timor-Leste	tl
Togo	tg
Tokelau	tk
Tonga	to
Trinidad and Tobago	tt
Tunisia	tn
Turkey	tr
Turkmenistan	tm
Turks and Caicos Islands (the)	tc
Tuvalu	tv
Uganda	ug
Ukraine	ua
United Arab Emirates (the)	ae
United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland (the)	gb
United States Minor Outlying Islands (the)	um
United States of America (the)	us
Uruguay	uy
Uzbekistan	uz

Appendix C
Standard Key for Maps

Country	Symbol
Vanuatu	vu
Venezuela (Bolivarian Republic of)	ve
Viet Nam	vn
Virgin Islands (British)	vg
Virgin Islands (U.S.)	vi
Wallis and Futuna	wf
Western Sahara	eh
Yemen	ye
Zambia	zm
Zimbabwe	zw

Appendix D
Production and Duplication Methods

Tactile graphic production is learned "hands on" and may be very challenging to a beginning tactile producer. Training, experience, and feedback will improve the skills required to produce a clear, understandable tactile graphic.

Various production methods, from simple to complex, may be used to produce a tactile graphic. The method used depends on the tools and production equipment available.

A tactile graphic master can be a combination of different production methods such as tooling and collage or embellishments added to an embossed braille page. Graphics software can be used to create a drawing to assist in pre-planning the size and placement of items on the base layer of a hard copy master.

The terms "production method" and "production medium" are used loosely or interchangeably. There are various media—embossed braille, microcapsule, or vacuum-form—in which tactile graphics are created. Different production methods—computer-generated, handmade, or a combination of both—may be used to produce a tactile master from which multiple copies may be made. The production method used to produce a tactile graphic depends on the medium chosen. For example, vacuum-form graphics may be created using production methods such as diagramming foil, collage in cardboard, polymer clay sculpture, or even embossed braille; microcapsule graphics may be created using production methods such as computer software or hand-drawn diagrams. This appendix outlines the main production methods and media used by individual tactile graphics producers and major production centers.

D.1 Embossed Braille Graphics

This section refers to tactile graphics that are produced using an embosser to create the components (areas, lines, and points).

D.1.1 Embossed Braille Image

When producing embossed braille graphics with a braille embosser, an image is generated using software for both braille and graphics, which are then printed on a graphics embosser. The electronic file can be saved for further editing or duplication. (See Supplement Example 31: *Story Web*.)

The production and duplication equipment required are a computer, braille translation software, graphics software, specific braille fonts, braille paper, and a graphics embosser.

Embossed braille graphics are developed with computer software and can be either drawn from scratch or imported from other sources. The computer image will likely require simplification before embossing. After the image has been manipulated and braille labels and text are added, it is sent to the embosser for the hard copy to be printed.

Images can be imported into some braille translation software and embossed as part of a regular braille document.

Though embossed braille graphics can be produced very quickly, they often lack some of the characteristics of tactual readability. There is little variation in height, point symbols are difficult to discern, and the number of textures that can be produced are limited. The implementation of good design techniques for the graphic is imperative when producing embossed braille graphics.

When embossed graphics lack definition, their tactual quality can be enhanced by adding embellishments such as collage to the page to provide the height and variance in texture that will make the tactile graphic more readable.

Many standard braille embossers have graphics mode capability. With variations in resolution, the braille dots can be embossed closer together than when embossing braille text. Some embossers permit a change in height of the dot as well. As hardware becomes more sophisticated, more software programs are being developed to produce better tactile graphics.

Other embossers are capable of printing whatever appears on a computer screen.

The Tiger® family of embossers was the first line of embossers designed specifically for graphics. The Tiger® braille printers use proprietary software (Tiger Software

Suite) and specific braille fonts (Braille 29) for their embosser output.

Standard braille embossers such as those made by Enabling Technologies and Index Braille also have graphics modes.

The software used to produce graphics can be obtained from open market drawing software (such as CorelDraw®, Adobe® Illustrator®, and Microsoft® Office®) or from specific tactile graphics software (such as Tactile View®, Picture Braille®, TGD Pro®, and Quick Tac®).

D.2 Microcapsule Graphics

Microcapsule graphics are tactile graphics that are produced on specialized capsule paper, also known by the brand names Minolta, Zytex, Swell, Swell Touch, or Tangible Magic.

An image may be computer-generated using braille and graphics software. It is then transferred to microcapsule paper using a photocopier or printer, and then the tactile graphic is developed by a heating device known as a "fuser" or "enhancer."

NOTE: *The ink or printer toner applied to the microcapsule paper must be a black carbon-based ink; otherwise, the image will not rise. It is important to test your ink before making multiple copies.*

Production and duplication equipment required: computer, braille translation software, graphics software, specific braille fonts, photocopier or printer, microcapsule paper, and a fuser

The following list provides some important considerations for creating tactile graphics on microcapsule paper:

- Ready-made graphic files may be available from the Web or may be purchased from other sources. Clip art may provide a starting point for preparation of a required illustration. For example, the outline of states or provinces is available as free clip art, but design and editing techniques usually need to be applied to make the image acceptable as a tactile graphic. (See Unit 3, Planning and Editing.)

- Other common changes that will have to be made are a) the number of cells per line and the number of lines per page according to the size of paper used, b) the braille font and size according to the software used, and c) the margins and the binding preferences. (See Appendix B, Sample Braille Fonts.)
- When complete, copy the diagram onto plain (bond) paper for initial proofreading by the designer. This will allow changes to be made without wasting expensive microcapsule paper.
- Copy the final version of the diagram onto microcapsule paper. <u>**The black images used on microcapsule paper must be carbon-based to develop.**</u> Some photocopiers, printers, and a few felt-tipped pens use carbon in their ink. Testing is recommended to determine which products will work.
- A photocopier that has a straight-through path rather than a curved path is advisable; otherwise, the microcapsule paper may get caught inside the machine. Be aware that when using a photocopier or a printer to process large batches of microcapsule paper, the heat of the fuser may cause the paper to expand prematurely or to melt. The photocopier should be checked periodically to maintain even distribution and sufficient density of toner (ink).
- The computer image is printed directly onto microcapsule paper or printed onto regular paper, then photocopied onto microcapsule paper. Note that most printers heat the paper too much to allow direct printing on microcapsule paper. Too much heat causes background swelling.
- It is recommended that production centers use a reputable universal graphics software program such as CorelDRAW® or Adobe® Illustrator® for computer-generated graphics in order to facilitate sharing of graphics among production centers. For limited

production, Microsoft® Office® includes tools that can be used for drawing.

- To use all of the ASCII equivalents (Appendix A, Braille to ASCII Conversion), you should turn off the auto-correct features of the graphics program. To make the dot 3 or dot 5 in the braille font (single or double quotes), you should turn off the "change straight quotes to typographic quotes" feature. The "replace text while typing" feature should be turned off to type a 2-cell combination (alphabetic key) in the braille font because this feature changes the letters to a full word.
- It is recommended that a template be developed to ensure that any running head, margins, page numbers, etc. are placed consistently on the page. (See Appendix G, Example of Tactile Graphic Template.) Standard symbols, such as arrows, dots, and textures, may be arranged outside the printable area for easy access. This will save production time because the textures would not have to be recreated each time that they are required. (See Appendix F, Line Styles.)
- It is better to import an image (such as a jpeg or bitmap) directly into the graphics program and trace rather than drawing with the freehand graphics tools. This ensures that the scale is maintained and that a more accurate rendition of the print image is achieved. This method also allows the designer to make minor changes to the tactile graphic, such as smoothing out any jagged coastlines on a map.
- When the graphic is computer-generated, it is advisable to use a 24-point braille font (not SimBraille) and increased line spacing and paragraph spacing to allow for swelling of developed braille dots. (See Appendix B, Sample Braille Fonts.)

The standard TrueType braille font is not suitable for microcapsule paper because when the tactile graphic is developed, the braille dots become too large and difficult to read. *Swell Braille*, a font developed specifically for use with microcapsule paper, is posted as a free download from the

Texas School for the Blind website at http://www.tsbvi.edu/school/1087-download-braille-and-asl-specialty-fonts.

After the *Swell Braille* font is loaded under the fonts menu of a computer, American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII) keystrokes can be used to input simple labels. (See Appendix A, Braille-to-ASCII Conversion.)

Example:

Print:	Learn some information about braille fonts.
ASCII keystrokes:	,le>n "s 9=ma;n ab brl fonts4
Braille:	⠠⠇⠑⠜⠝ ⠐⠎ ⠔⠿⠍⠁⠰⠝ ⠁⠃ ⠃⠗⠇ ⠋⠕⠝⠞⠎⠲

Space between lines may need to be altered so that braille lines are not too close to each other. Line and paragraph spacing are adjusted within the graphics software program. These changes make the braille output closer to the standard braille specifications. (See Appendix B, Sample Braille Fonts.)

Example: When using CorelDRAW® and the font specified above, an increase to 111% for both line spacing and paragraph spacing will result in a microcapsule page that is similar to the spacing on an embossed braille page. When using Microsoft Word to produce graphics, it is not necessary or desirable to increase the line spacing.

- Some braille software programs allow you to copy and paste text into the graphics file. Use of these features to insert several lines of braille decreases the occurrence of braille dot errors.
- Always exclude any braille text when re-sizing an image, as it is common to accidentally select the braille with an image when enlarging, shrinking, or stretching the graphic.
- Avoid altering the properties of the braille font when editing the graphics on the tactile page. The font must remain a) black, b) have no outline, and c) 24 point in font size.

- There are different sizes and brands of microcapsule paper available.
- Images may be printed directly or photocopied on to the microcapsule paper.

Whether the image is computer-designed or hand-drawn, the ink on the microcapsule paper must be carbon-based for the image to rise.

When hand drawn, always use tools such as charcoal pencils, Chinagraph pencils (black only), black gel pens, and some felt-tip markers. Test to determine which tool produces the best result with your specific equipment.

- A fuser, also called an enhancer, is a special machine that develops the tactile graphic on the microcapsule paper. The fuser usually has a halogen bulb that supplies the heat needed to raise the gray and black areas on microcapsule paper. A variety of image enhancers are available for purchase. Some enhancers develop the tactile image more consistently than others.

Heat and speed dials on the image enhancer control the amount of expansion of the raised areas. The larger the number (time in seconds) used, the longer it takes the paper to go through the machine; therefore, the greater the expansion. Expansion can also be affected by the voltage supply and room temperature.

Passing a sheet of plain bond paper through the fuser before developing the first diagram allows the fuser to "warm up" to a stable setting. If unsure of the setting, start at a lower setting, increasing if necessary.

Insert the microcapsule paper, with its expansion surface up, into the feed tray. The expansion is completed when the paper comes out the other side.

- Avoid shuffling the developed pages together when collating as this may cause some scraping of raised areas.
- Microcapsule pages may be joined together to create larger, oversized graphics pages to produce fold-out pages (See Example 3-5: *Prince Andrew High School Floor Plan*.)

D.3 Vacuum-Formed Graphics

When creating graphics to be vacuum formed, a hard copy master is created using production methods such as tooling, collage, foil, or sculpture. The heating component and vacuum pump of the vacuum-form machine mold a plastic sheet (Brailon® thermoform sheet) to the shape of a hard copy master. This process forms a plastic duplicate copy while retaining the master for future use. (See Supplement Example 29, *North America*.)

Research indicates that vacuum-form graphics generally provide a higher level of readability than other techniques.

The following list provides some important considerations for creating vacuum-formed tactile graphics:

- The weight (thickness) of the plastic, temperature of the heating element, and the length of time the vacuum pump runs all contribute to the quality of the copy.
- Some materials are not suitable for the vacuum-form process because they may melt, dry out, crease, fall off, or give off toxic fumes. This can happen when heated at high temperatures, when used on masters for multiple copies, or when used on masters stored for an extended period of time.

Example: Rubber-based glue, many plastics such as braille label, graphing tape, glass beads, foam, and food items such as pasta or rice

- Frames of different sizes are available for the vacuum-form machine to allow different sized masters (8-1/2 by 11-inches, 11 by 11.5 inches, and 13-7/8 by 18-5/8 inches) (21.5 by 28 centimeters, 28 by 29 centimeters, and 35.25 by 47.3 centimeters).
- There are various weights of plastic sheets available. (See Supplement Example 29, *North America* and Supplement Example 30, *Australia: Average Annual Rainfall*.) If a master has a thick base or is built up over many levels, the heavier weight of plastic must be used.
- A scattering of small holes pinpricked from the top-pasted textures down through to the base layer may be

necessary to create more of a vacuum around the master, producing better definition in the copy. (See Appendix D: Hard Copy Master Production, Tooling on Foil.)

- Take care to wipe off excess glue on the master because the dried glue will show as a raised area when vacuum formed.
- Vacuum-form copies must be kept away from heat sources, including the sun, or the plastic will melt and may become brittle over time. A good copy of the original graphic should be kept with the master so that subsequent copies can be compared to the original to make sure that symbols have not fallen off the master due to overheating.

D.3.1 **Tooling**

D.3.1.1 **Tooling on Paper**

Tools can be used to create different area, line, and point textures to form a "picture." Common household tools such as tracing wheels or special tool kits such as the APH Tactile Graphics Kit can be purchased to create a tactile graphics master. (See Supplement Example 9, *Cartesian Graph*.)

It is important to note that the imprint from the tooling is executed on the reverse side of the braille paper. This means that the tooling must follow the lines of a reversed (mirror) image when transferring a print picture to the braille paper.

Tooling, collage, and embossed braille may be combined to form a tactile graphic master.

Production and duplication equipment required: braille paper, household tools or tooling kit, rubber mat, plastic sheets, vacuum-form machine

Below is a brief outline of some of the procedures for creating a tactile graphic with the tooling method:

(1) Photocopy or trace design onto the front of the base layer already containing braille page numbers and a running head, if used. Several copies of the design can be made and used for additional layers.

(2) If parts of the diagram are to be tooled, a mirror image may be drawn onto the back of a page. The mirror image may be transferred by hand, using carbon paper or by placing the paper against a light source such as a light box.

(3) Place the paper **face down** onto a rubber or neoprene mat. Vinyl placemats may be used in place of neoprene mats. Working from the back of the page, use a tool such as a spur wheel to make an imprint that raises an image on the front of the paper.

Areas that require texture may be tooled to produce patterns such as diagonal lines or dotted areas.

(4) Using a braillewriter or slate and stylus, braille applicable labels or keyed items directly onto the front of the base layer. Direct brailling on the master is preferable since gluing labels adds another layer.

(5) Leave a blank space around each label within textured areas.

(6) Add other textured areas, lines, and points as required.

D.3.1.2 **Tooling on Foil**

Various tools can be used to create different area textures, line styles, and point symbols on diagramming foil. Common household tools, such as tracing wheels, or special tool kits, such as the APH Tactile Graphics Kit, can be purchased to create tactile graphics masters. (See Supplement Example 30, *Australia: Average Annual Rainfall*.)

When transferring a print picture to a sheet of foil, the drawing must be reversed or created in a mirror image.

Tooling on the foil and collage production methods may be combined to form a tactile graphic master.

Production and duplication equipment required: braille paper, diagramming foil, household tools or tooling kit, rubber mat, plastic sheets, vacuum-form machine

The following list provides some important considerations for creating tactile graphics on foil:

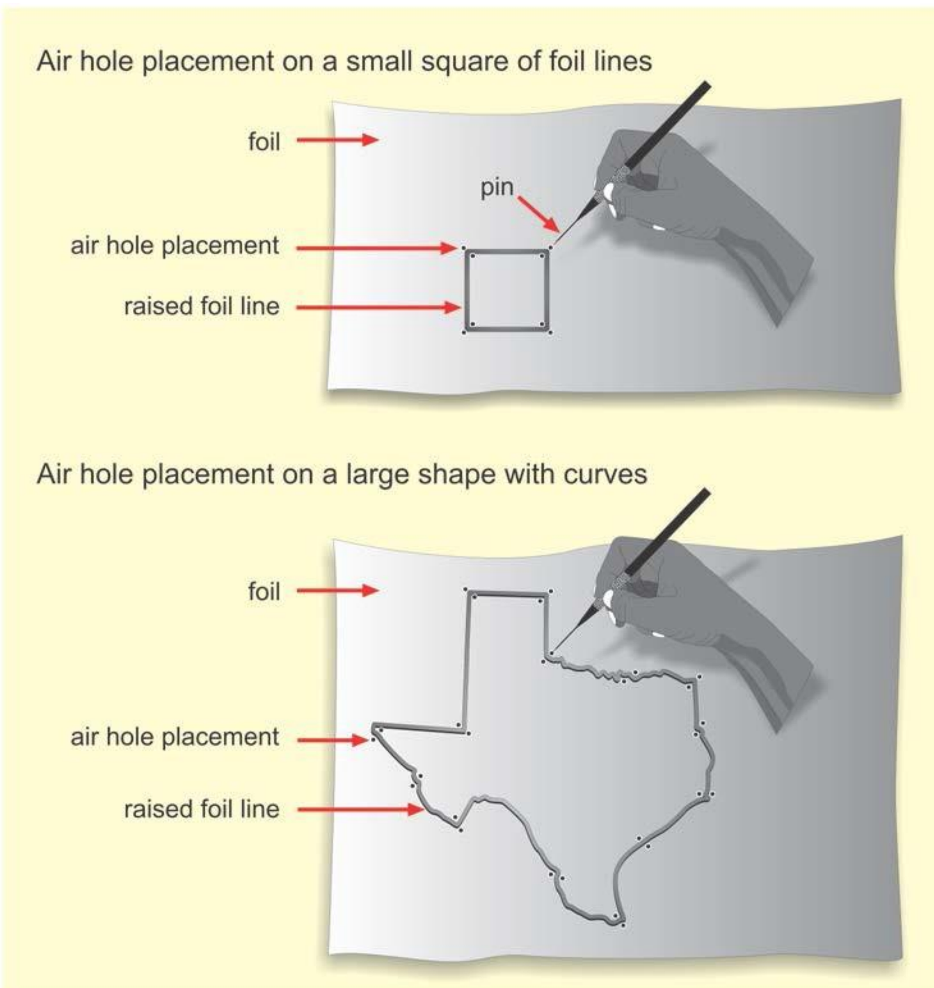
- The print image may need to be enlarged for the reader to be able to interpret the information on the tactile graphic.
- Various graphic tools (e.g., braille stylus or other fine metal ball point stylus, Teflon braille eraser, tactile graphics tool kit, textured plates, etc.) can be used to imprint an image on foil that rests on a rubber mat.

Using mats of different thicknesses will provide a variety of depth and definition for each graphic tool used. For example, using a braille stylus with a thick, firm mat will provide one type of line, while using the same tool with a thin, soft mat will give you a completely different textured line.

- A wide variety of textures can be produced on foil. Placing the foil on different textured objects and pressing or rubbing the foil into the object will result in a raised pattern (e.g., textured Plexiglas, screens, texture plates found in tactile graphics kits).
- A mat should always be used when applying texture to areas, when drawing lines on a foil diagram, or puncturing air holes. A mat should not be used when burnishing.
- Basic steps for making foil graphics are executed in the following order:
  (1) Enlarge the figure to an appropriate size to fit the braille page. Reverse the image.
  (2) Lay out or mark the placement of the braille text surrounding the graphic. (Note: the braille is not applied yet.)
  (3) Trace the enlarged and reversed image on the back of the foil making sure that the location of the surrounding braille text or headings are not altered.
  (4) Apply the braille to the graphic using a slate and stylus (e.g., braille labels, heading, abbreviations of states, names of rivers, keyed or numbered labels).
  (5) Use various tools to create area, line, and point symbols. Example: tracing wheel, leather stamp, stylus, pencil, pen, etc.

(6) Burnish from the front of the diagram on a smooth hard surface to smooth out, heighten, and define lines and symbols.

(7) Create air holes by puncturing the foil. Small air holes should be made using a very sharp, needle-like instrument and a mat. Air holes should be punctured from the front side with the graphic on a flat surface. The needle or pin should be inserted at a 45-degree angle and should be placed on both sides of lines, at each braille cell, and only next to the raised portions of the graphic. Air holes should not be randomly placed on the smooth areas surrounding the graphic. If air holes are placed in any other area of the page, they will show up as a raised bump on the vacuum-form copy. If the diagram is larger or contains many curves, it may be necessary to place additional air holes along the lines.



(8) Make a vacuum-form copy of the graphic and determine if more air holes are needed. If the graphic seems fuzzy, more burnishing may be needed to make the lines stand up higher or more air holes may be needed along the diagram or labels to allow for appropriate suction.

- Produce all the key symbols at the same time that the actual textures on the diagram are created. This ensures that the same height, direction, and density are duplicated in both the key and the diagram.
- When foil is raised higher than 1/16 inch (1.5 millimeters) and wider than 1/8 inch (3 millimeters), it needs to be supported (backed) using cardboard or polymer clay.
- Wrapping foil over a cardboard shape rather than gluing preserves all the raised parts of the diagram and provides an additional layer that is useful for the separation of different elements of an image.
- Example: Land from water on a map
- Foil will become fatigued if "over-worked" and is very susceptible to overheating when used to make large numbers of copies. If the master is damaged, it is very hard to repair and is sometimes ruined. A good vacuum-form copy should be kept with the master for verification purposes.
- The best foil for this technique is a heavy-duty diagramming foil, available in rolls or sheets.
- Diagramming foil is often used to produce part of a graphic that is attached to a paper master. Due to storage and reproduction issues, a full 11.5 by 11-inch (29 by 28 centimeters) sheet of foil is not recommended for a graphic. Sections of foil can readily be used on collage or clay-sculptured diagrams. When foil drawings are applied to paper masters, great care should be taken in gluing them on to braille paper. Do not glue on the entire surface of the foil. This will cause warping of the foil on the paper. Glue should be applied only to one or two adjacent corners of the foil so there will be room for air to

circulate under the foil. This method will allow for expansion and air circulation during the vacuum-form process.

The type of thermoform plastic to be used to make the copies must be considered when raising the features of a tactile graphic. For example, when using Brailon, features that are too high (1/4 inch or 6 millimeters) or raised areas that span more than 3 inches (7.5 centimeters) may collapse when being read tactually.

D.3.2 **Collage**

When using the collage method, textured materials are glued onto a paper foundation (base layer) to form a "picture." Common household items (i.e., drywall tape, corrugated paper, crochet cotton, string, punched-out dots) can be used to create a tactile graphic master. (See Supplement Example 6, *Number Line*.)

If the original tactile work is used by the student, care must be taken to choose textures that are not harsh to the touch (e.g., coarse sandpaper and glitter).

Collage may be combined with tooling and embossed braille to form a tactile graphic master.

Production and duplication equipment required: braille paper, household items, plastic sheets, vacuum-form machine

The following list provides some important steps that are taken when producing a tactile diagram in collage.

D.3.2.1 **Base Layer**

This is the layer (usually braille paper) on which the various materials that form the tactile graphic are adhered. Other layers of information may be added to the base layer.

- Photocopy or trace the design onto the front of the base layer already containing braille page numbers and a running head (if used). Several copies of the design can be made and used for additional layers.
- If parts of the diagram are to be spurred, a mirror image must be drawn onto the back of a layer. A mirror image is

created by using carbon paper or by placing the page against a light source such as a light box and tracing by hand the necessary information to the back of the paper.

- Place the paper face down onto a rubber or neoprene mat. Vinyl placemats may be used in place of neoprene mats. Working from the back of the layer, use a tool such as a spur wheel to make an imprint on the front. Textured areas can be created using pinpricks or diagonal spur lines.
- Using a braillewriter or slate and stylus, braille applicable labels or keyed items directly onto the front of the base layer. Direct brailling on the master is preferable since gluing labels adds another layer.
- Within textured areas, leave a blank space around each label.
- Add other textured areas, lines, and points as required.

D.3.2.2 **Additional Layer(s)**

Layers added to the base layer can define specific areas such as a land mass in contrast to a water texture. Machines are available to apply an adhesive backing to materials used for the additional layers (e.g., Xyron machine). Outlines and textures of areas can be built up through a variety of methods and materials using the methods previously described.

(1) Using a stick of glue (not liquid or gel), adhere as many layers together as required to provide the best "edge." Stick glue tends to be smoother when it dries. If special care is not taken when applying liquid or gel glue, they tend to leave bumps or marks on the graphic. Do not glue entire surface because this can cause warping. Apply glue only at spots along the outer edge.

(2) Work from the front, being careful not to flatten the braille, and cut along the outline through all thicknesses at once. Use a cutting knife for smaller areas such as lakes.

(3) Add string or other textured areas as required.

(4) Glue cut-out area(s) in the correct location on top of layer(s) such as the water texture.

There are limitations to the height and width of a tactile graphic image shaped in thermoform plastic. For example, when using Brailon, any feature that is raised more than 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) or areas that span more than 3 inches (7.5 centimeters) across the page will collapse when being read tactually.

D.3.2.3 **Graphs**

- Prepare graphs by using computer software to create the grid and graph information and then print out directly onto the base layer. Carbon paper or a light source can also be used to trace the grid and graph information onto the base layer for hand-tooling the grid.
- Using a braillewriter or slate and stylus, braille the page numbers, headings, applicable labels or keys, and base layer items directly onto the front of the base layer.
- After using a pencil to indicate the required blank space around labels, place the base layer face down onto a rubber or neoprene mat. Using a ruler with a metal edge as a guide, create the grid with a fine spur wheel, taking care to exclude the blank space. Use a heavier spur wheel to mark the *x*-axis and *y*-axis.
- For a bar graph, add the bars by gluing on an additional layer of pre-measured strips of heavier material (e.g., Bristol board, sandpaper, corrugated cardboard).
- For a line graph, place a bead of white glue along the plotted line and add string or crochet cotton on top. Dots for plotted points may be made from heavy paper using a hole punch (different sizes available).

D.3.3 **Sculpture**

Sculptured tactile graphics masters are created by molding and baking modeling clay into the required shape. The baked clay object is attached to a paper foundation (base layer) to create a tactile graphic master. (See Supplement

Example 27: *Bones*.)

Production and duplication equipment required: braille paper, polymer clays, clay softening agent, silicone sealant, oven, plastic sheets, vacuum-form machine

The following items outline some of the main considerations that go into the production of clay sculptured tactile graphics masters:

- Modeling clays that do not require high temperature kilns are the most suitable for molding tactile shapes.
- Customized diagrams can be produced using polymer clays (e.g., Fimo™, Sculpey™), air-dried clays, or permanently soft clays.
- Diagrams for vacuum-form masters should use only the polymer clays that can be baked in a standard household oven or toaster oven. Air-dried clays should not be used for vacuum-form masters because they will crack, crumble, or collapse.
- Polymer clays have to be conditioned before use. This is done by stretching and compressing the clay until it becomes softer and more pliable. Large amounts of clay may be preheated at a low temperature using a hot water bottle, but *not* a microwave oven. Clay may be broken up using a food processor. Polymer clay “pasta” machines may be used to condition soft brands of clay or partially conditioned clay. This is done by folding and rolling the clay about 10 times on the widest setting. There are varieties of clay-softening agents available for purchase.
- Clay diagrams are usually “built up” directly on a pre-planned drawing or photocopy (base layer). A sculpting framework (armature) to support the clay may be required. Armatures can be made from different materials such as 16-gauge or 20-gauge wire, paper clips, sculptor’s mesh aluminum, wire mosquito netting, and drywall tape.
- Upon completion of the sculpture, bake according to directions on package. The sculpture is then adhered to the base layer using a silicone sealant.

- Braille labels and texture symbols may be embedded in the clay before baking.
- Gel-type or thick adhesives are better than thin glue for gluing clay together or for bridging gaps between pieces of clay. Clay softener, applied sparingly, can also be used as an adhesive agent.
- Toothpicks, dental tools, Popsicle sticks, leather-working tools, and manicuring implements may be used to shape the details of a diagram.
- When building up the clay shapes, do not make "over-hangs" under which the vacuum-form plastic will wrap; otherwise, when removing the plastic copy, both the master and copy will be damaged.
- The shape should be as low as possible with a maximum height of 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) to ensure a good vacuum-form product. Diagrams that are too thick may crack and make bulky braille volumes.
- Sculptured items can be used to complement other production methods such as collage or foil.

D.4 Fold-Out Page

(See Example 3-5: Prince Andrew High School Floor Plan.)

When a tactile graphic is too large to fit on a standard 11 by 11.5 inch (28 by 29 centimeter) braille page or when it is not conducive to split the tactile into a multiple-page presentation, a foldable flap may be added to increase the width of the page. The tactile graphic is designed to fit over the width of the extended pages and to be read with the foldable section opened.

A standard 11 by 17-inch (28 by 43 centimeter) tactile page can be split into two sections that are 11.5 inches (29 centimeters) and 5-1/2 inches (14 centimeters) wide and then taped back together with the 5-1/2 inch (14 centimeter) section folded in. This would allow the fold-out page with the flap closed to be bound in a book of 11 by 11-1/2 inch (28 by 29 centimeter) pages. When used as a portable diagram, this smaller folded page can be more manageable to carry.

Packing tape attached to the back of the pages works well to join the two sections together. A small gap of 1/32 inch (1 millimeter) between the two is enough to permit the page to fold over smoothly. The two sections should be in alignment when taped; lines and areas should continue from one page to the next without disruption. When designing the tactile graphic, place braille at least 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) from the fold to avoid cutting through any labels or keys.

This method would also work with two 11 by 11.5 inch (28 by 29 centimeter) pages with a larger section folded in.

D.5 Other Simple Techniques

For use in the classroom, tactile graphics may be produced quickly using simple techniques. Some methods can be used by a person who is visually impaired to practice handwriting or to draw a picture.

- An outline of a simple shape can be created using a spur wheel, Wikki Stix, hot glue, and acrylic or puff paint. Paint products may take a long time to dry sufficiently.
- Braille paper with different-sized grids formed by braille dots or low-relief paper with solid lines can be purchased commercially. Material may be quickly added to these graph sheets to represent lines, bars, and points.
- Using raised-line drawing kits, a thin sheet of clear plastic (mylar polyester film) or special plastic film is placed on top of a rubber pad, and a rounded pen or stylus is used to draw images onto the plastic sheet. The images then rise up higher than the base layer.
- A heat pen, heated by batteries or electricity, can be used to raise an image when pressed directly onto microcapsule paper. The image must be drawn slowly and evenly.
- Online images such as clip-art pictures can be copied onto bond paper, then photocopied onto microcapsule paper and developed. Remove clutter with “white-out” before copying the image.

- Note: It is important to remember to use a carbon-based black ink in the printer toner; otherwise, the image will not rise.
- Carbon-based china markers, grease pens, and some felt-tip pens can be used to draw a black image onto microcapsule paper, which is then developed using a fuser.

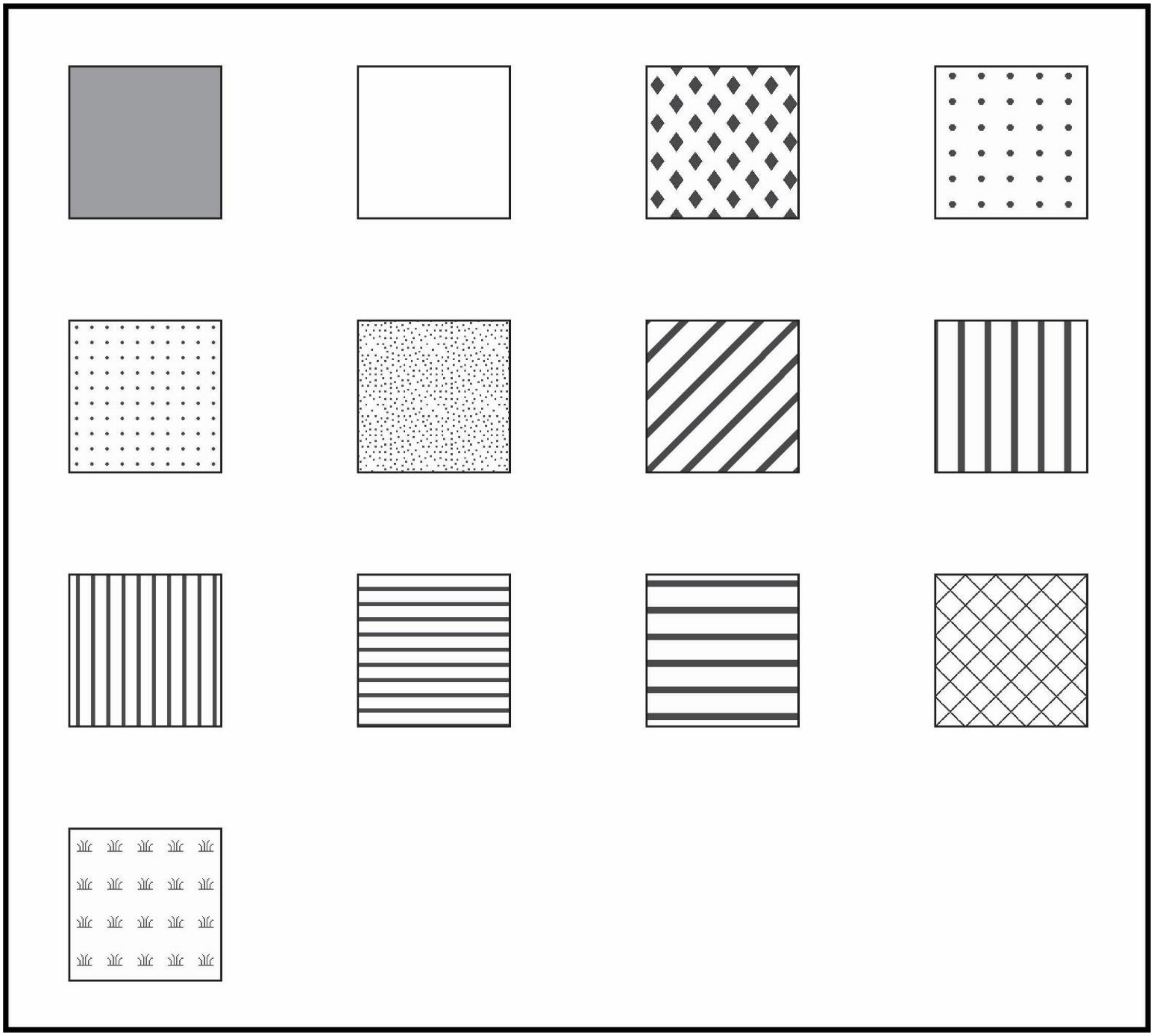
D.6 Advantages of Production Methods

Production method	**Advantages**
Embossed braille image	• easy to make corrections • image can be reused or altered • uses regular computer braille paper, so cheaper to duplicate • unlimited easy duplication • backup can be made • electronic storage of master (saves space & cataloging) • electronic file can be shared
Microcapsule image	• easy to make corrections • image can be reused or altered • unlimited easy duplication • backup can be made • electronic storage of master (saves space & cataloging) • electronic file can be shared
Tooling	• simple tactile graphics (i.e., circle, square) made quickly • area and line textures and point symbols are easily identified • masters can be duplicated many times • easy to learn

Collage	• materials are readily available • provides more variety for textures and height of areas, lines, and point symbols • point symbols are more defined • masters can be duplicated many times • easy to learn
Sculpture	• greater depth for physical features
Other Simple Techniques	• quick, for one-time use

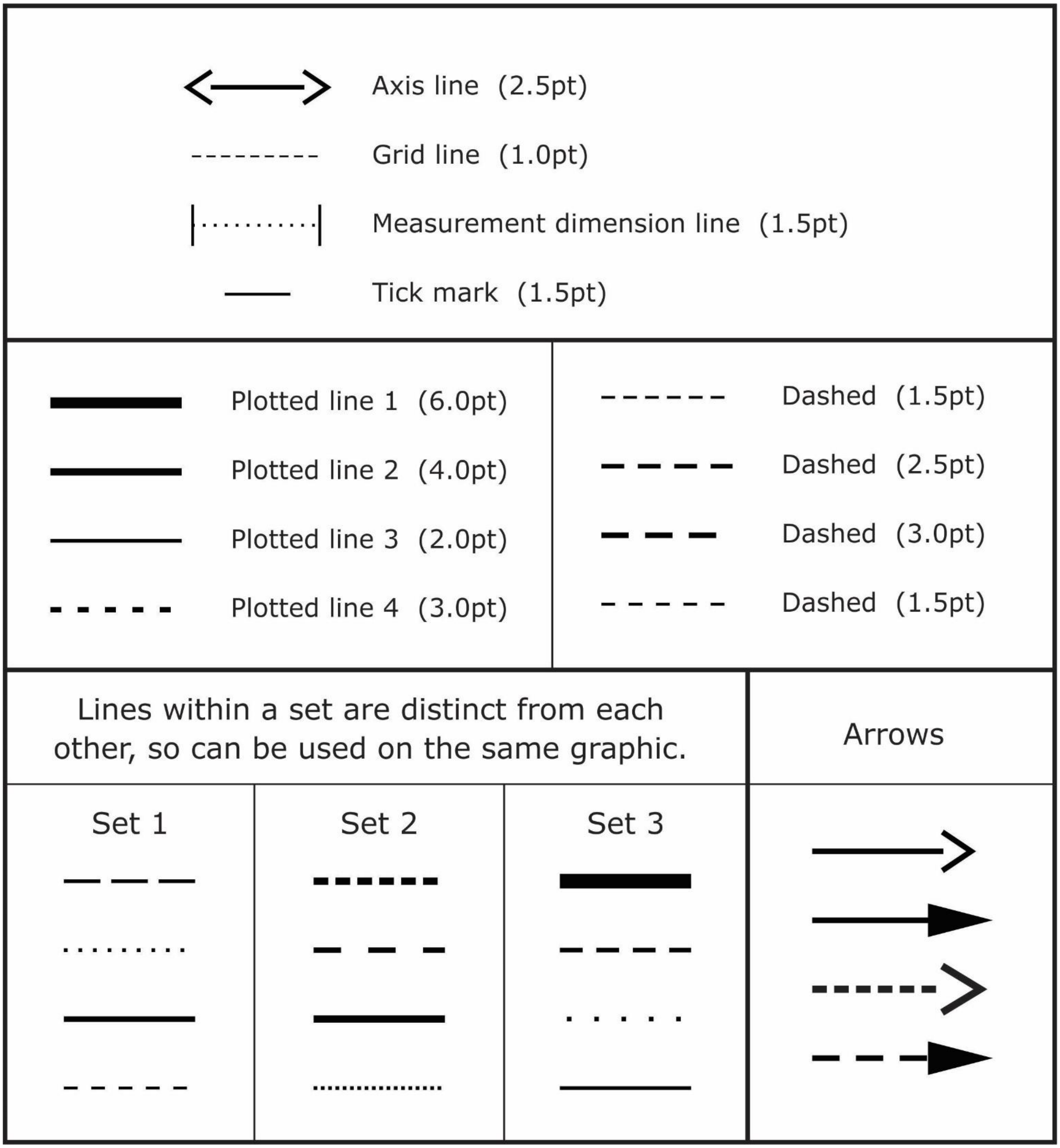
Appendix E
Texture Palette for Microcapsule

Below are some sample textures that may be used when creating microcapsule graphics. Care should be taken in choosing a group of textures within one graphic. Textures used for one graphic should be tactually distinct from each other.



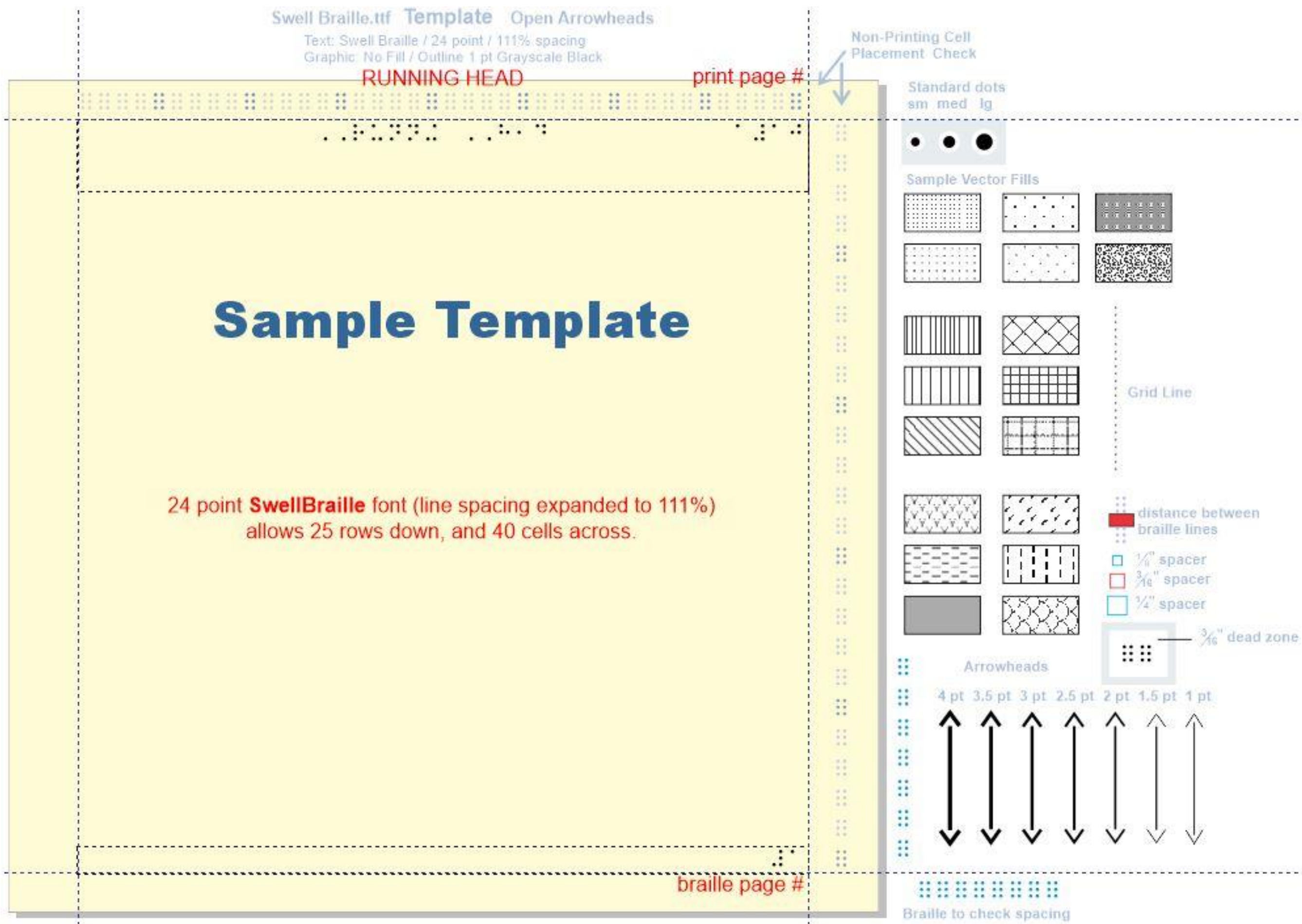
Appendix F
Line Styles for Microcapsule

Below are some sample lines and arrowheads that may be used when creating microcapsule graphics. Care should be taken in choosing a group of lines within one graphic. Lines used for one graphic should be tactually distinct from each other.



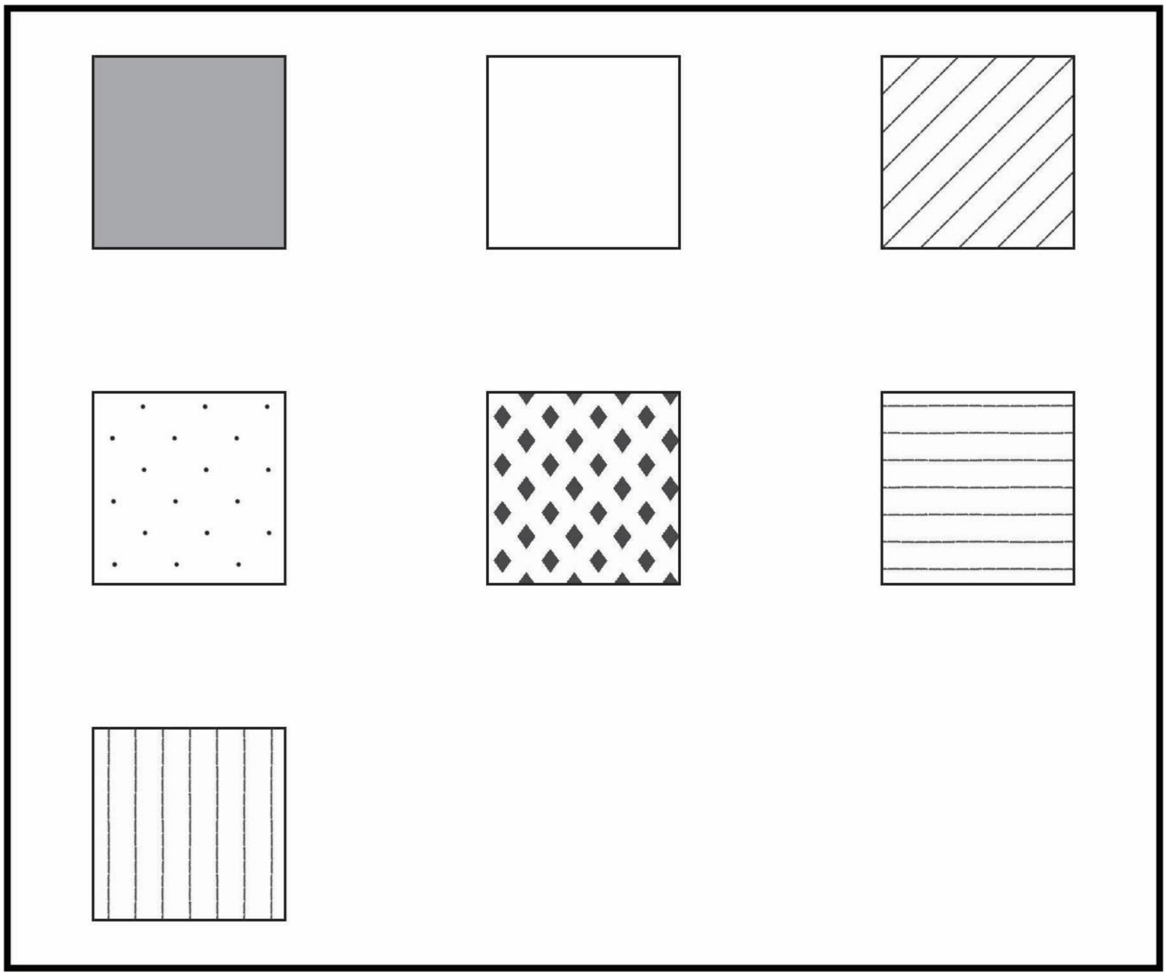
Appendix G
Example of Tactile Graphic Template for Microcapsule

- Consistent placement of running head and print page number
- Consistent placement of braille page number
- Guide lines indicate margins with space for left-side binding
- Margin measurement set to match embossed braille
- Default braille font (size and spacing)
- Plotted point, area texture, and arrow samples



Appendix H
Texture Palette for Tiger Embossing

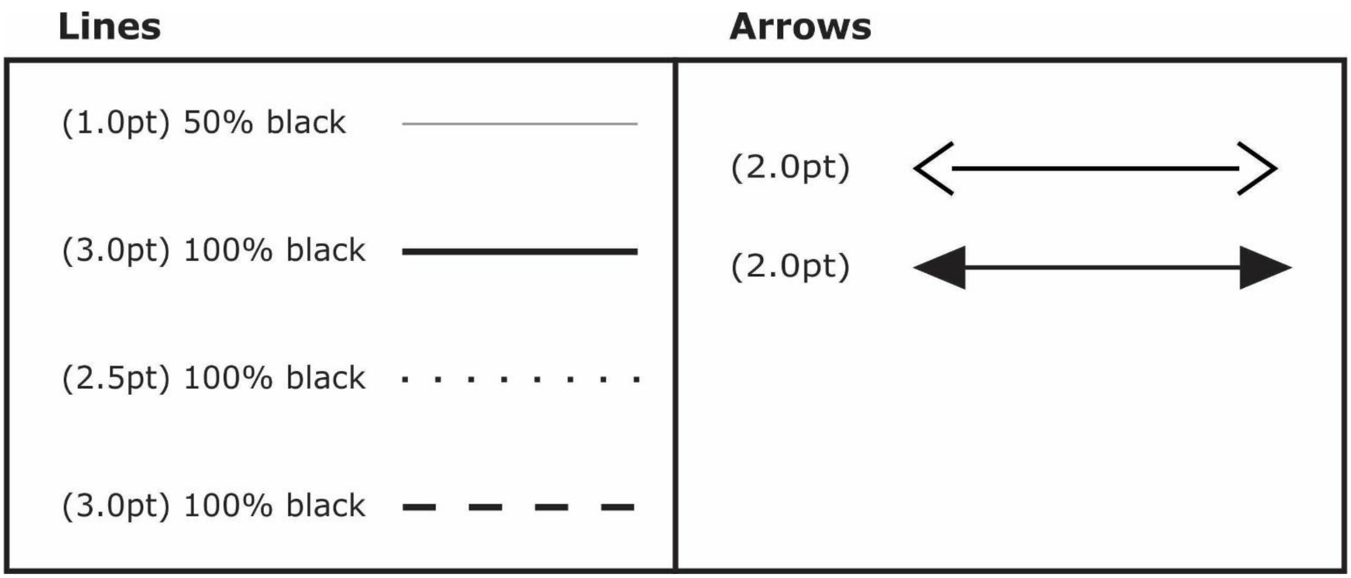
Below are some sample textures that may be used when creating Tiger graphics. Care should be taken in choosing a group of textures within one graphic. Textures used for one graphic should be tactually distinct from each other.



Appendix I
Line Styles for Tiger Embossing

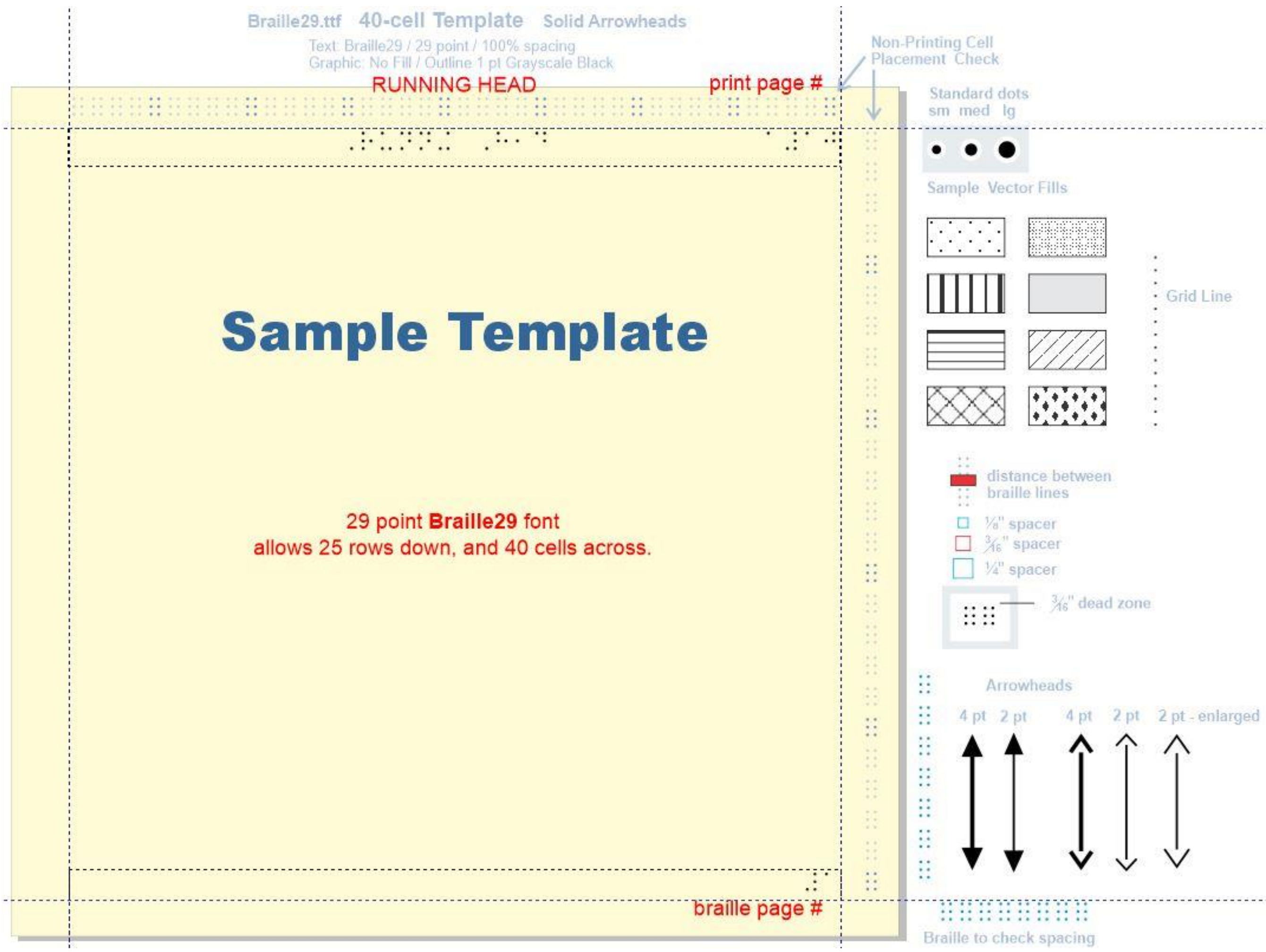
Below are some sample lines and arrowheads that may be used when creating Tiger graphics. Care should be taken in choosing a group of lines within one graphic. Lines used for one graphic should be tactually distinct from each other.

Line styles applied to computer drawings may produce inconsistent results when embossed. The direction of the line, whether horizontal, vertical, or diagonal will produce different tactual results even though they look the same in print. Proofreading the hard copy is important to ensure that the result achieves the intended purpose.



Appendix J
Example of Tactile Graphic Template for Tiger Embossing

- Consistent placement of running head and print page number
- Consistent placement of braille page number
- Guide lines indicate margins with space for left-side binding
- Margin measurement set to match embossed braille
- Default braille font (size and spacing)
- Plotted point, area texture, and arrow samples



Appendix K
Glossary of Terms

2-cell alphabetic key. Represents a word or words and contains 2 single letters, 2 one-cell contractions, or a combination of a single letter and a one-cell contraction.

2-dimensional view. Appearing to have height and width, but not depth.

3-cell symbols. Represents a word or words and contains 3 single letters, 3 one-cell contractions, a combination of a single letter and one-cell contractions, or a numeric indicator and a two-digit number.

3-dimensional view. Appearing to have depth or thickness in addition to height and width.

alphabetic key. Two- or three-lettered symbols transcribed in alphabetical order according to the first letter of the symbol rather than by the first letter of the explanation, or transcribed in order of appearance.

agency. An organization that produces braille and/or tactile material for the blind or visually impaired.

analog clock. A clock composed of hand(s) and numbers.

APH. American Printing House for the Blind.

area texture. Any tactual pattern that represents a particular area. The scale of the graphic determines whether an object is considered an area texture or a point symbol.

areal. Of or relating to or involving an area.

armature. A structure used as a support for polymer clay when creating sculptured tactile masters.

ASCII (American Standard Code for Information Interchange). A numeric code for standard keyboard characters, typically built into computer operating systems that allows for text output at a basic level.

atmospheric perspective. The effect of creating a sense of depth shown through haziness or changes in color, imitating the way distant objects appear less distinct and more bluish.

axis. One of the reference lines of a coordinate system. On most graphs, axis lines (axes) are perpendicular to each other.

BANA. Braille Authority of North America.

bar graph. A bar graph is a graph that uses the lengths of bars to represent the quantitative relationship between horizontal and vertical values.

base layer. A platform such as braille paper to which materials such as string, textures, and additional layers are added.

blank space. The white or empty space that is placed around components of the graphic to make it more readable.

bond paper. Smooth white sheets of paper, used for writing, printing, and photocopying.

bottom box line. A line of braille symbols (dots 1245) used to indicate the ending to a section in a print text.

box-and-whisker plot. Box-and-whisker plots are diagrams or graphs used to show the distribution of data.

braces. Curly bracket grouping symbols { }.

brackets. Square bracket grouping symbols [ ].

braille ASCII. A one-to-one direct substitution that maps the 64 keyboard strokes (including the spacebar) to braille dot configurations. It is built into many refreshable braille displays and braille embossers.

braille code. The characters of a writing system mapped to the six, or in some cases eight, raised dots of the braille cell. Different braille codes are used to map character sets of different languages and notations for music, mathematics, science, chemistry, and computer.

braille embosser. A hardware device connected to a machine (computer, braille notetaker) that manipulates data. The braille embosser reproduces a braille hard copy of a text document and/or a tactile graphic.

braille label. The braille identifier for an area, line, or point feature on a tactile graphic.

braille transcriber. A person who transcribes (manually presses keys to produce braille) or translates (uses a program to produce braille) print text into braille. Professional transcribers obtain certification through the Library of Congress or CNIB.

braillewriter. A machine similar to a typewriter, used for printing braille. Also called a brailler.

Brailon®. See vacuum-form plastic.

brf. An electronic **b**raille **r**eady **f**ile in ASCII that can be opened and embossed with various braille software programs.

Bristol board. A heavyweight paper, with a thickness of .006 inches (0.15 millimeters) or higher, that can have a smooth or vellum (prepared mammal skin) finish.

burnish. To rub and smooth out.

capsule paper. See microcapsule paper.

caption. A descriptive title or text that provides context for an illustration.

Cartesian graph. A Cartesian graph has lines, curves, or geometric shapes, drawn on a Cartesian plane, that show numeric relationships.

Cartesian plane. A plane, with a rectangular coordinate system, that associates each point in the plane with a pair of numbers.

cataloging. Registering an item into a collection using a standard format.

CBA. Canadian Braille Authority (now Braille Literacy Canada).

cell-5 heading. One of several heading formats used in braille to represent certain print titles, usually minor.

centered heading. One of several heading formats used in braille to represent certain print titles, usually major.

circle graph. A circle divided into pie-shaped pieces that reflect certain values.

clip art. Ready-made illustrations that may be inserted into a document. These illustrations may be found on the internet, in books, or as part of a software package.

clutter. Excessive or unnecessary information that decreases the reader's ability to quickly interpret a tactile graphic.

CNIB. Canadian National Institute for the Blind.

collage. A manual method for producing tactile graphics by which various textures (e.g., sandpaper) are glued onto a base layer. Also called cut-and-paste.

consolidation. The process of combining several smaller features (e.g., islands) as one feature.

comparison chart. See graphic organizer.

comparison sign. A sign that shows the relationship between mathematical material (e.g., equals sign).

compass rose. A design, usually a circle, graduated to degrees or quarters and printed on a map to show cardinal directions.

computer-generated graphic. Any graphic that is designed using computer graphics software. The graphic is then embossed or developed.

concept map. See graphic organizer.

concept web. See graphic organizer.

contracted braille. Braille, consisting of letters, numbers, punctuation marks, braille indicators, and 182 contractions and shortforms.

contrast chart. See graphic organizer.

coordinate. A set of identifiers used in specifying the location of a point on a grid, map, line, or area.

coordinate marker. A line or lines specifying the location of a point on a plane.

counting symbol. The various pictures or symbols that are to be counted or grouped by a reader, often found in early elementary mathematics material.

cross section. A section of an object created by cutting it perpendicular to the plane of the object.

customized diagram. A tactile graphic that has been designed and produced for a specific use or person and not intended for making multiple copies (i.e., in a classroom setting).

density. The extent to which the items on a diagram are close together or thick (compact).

diagram. See graphic.

diagramming foil. A heavy gauge aluminum foil available in rolls or in sheets, used to produce tactile graphics by raising or texturing the surface.

digital clock. A clock in which the time is shown electronically in the form of numbers.

dimensional drawing. A shape that shows length and width (2-dimensional) or length, width and depth (3-dimensional).

discriminability. The ability to distinguish differences.

distinctive marker. The hollow or solid dot that represents an included or excluded value on a number line.

distractor. Information included in a test item that is not needed by the reader to answer the question but is intended to distract the reader from the correct answer.

dot plot. See line plot.

drawing. See graphic.

electronic diagram. See schematic drawing.

embosser. See braille embosser.

e-text. (From "**e**lectronic text") Text presented in digital format based on standardized format rules for various uses (i.e., computer screen reading programs).

exercise identifier. A number or letter associated with a question or test item (e.g., 1. What is the capital of Texas?).

facing pages. Pages that are bound facing each other so that related information can be read without turning a page.

figure number. The reference number given to the original print graphic.

flowchart. A graphic representation of the steps of procedures.

foil. See diagramming foil.

folding line. A line indicated on net diagrams that shows when a tab is to be folded into the shape being formed.

fold-out diagram. A folded insert or section whose full size exceeds that of the regular page.

font. Any digital typeface that can normally be changed to a variety of sizes.

format. The layout or arrangement of braille text, including keys, graphics, and graphic elements.

frame. A rectangular or other geometric border surrounding a print image.

fuser. A machine that produces a two-dimensional graphic by raising the image areas copied onto microcapsule paper.

graph. A series of lines, bars, or points that represent a successive change in value.

graphic. Information presented by a sketch, design, drawing, illustration, map, plan, graph, and other formats.

graphic map. See graphic organizer.

graphic organizer. A pictorial or graphical chart, figure, or map that illustrates concepts, ideas, and relationships.

graphic symbol. Any area, line, or point that is raised from a base layer to be read by touch.

Graphic Symbols page. A preliminary page of a braille volume or tactile graphics supplement that lists the texture symbols commonly used in diagrams within the volume or supplement.

graphicacy. The ability to understand, interpret, and make use of graphical information.

grid. A network of evenly spaced vertical and/or horizontal lines.

haptic. Refers to the sense of touch.

heading. See title.

hidden line. A line, usually dashed, that is used to represent any line of an object that is ordinarily hidden from view.

hierarchy. An arrangement of items in which the items are classified according to importance.

histogram. A graph that shows frequency data and is similar to a bar graph.

horizontal grid line. A set of background lines that extend from left to right across a plane or graph.

information point. Two or more features of a travel environment that by themselves do not convey specific information about one's location in space, but when juxtaposed, permit travelers to locate themselves relative to their surroundings. For example, the fire hydrant next to the newspaper box specifies a particular location on a block that has several fire hydrants and newspaper boxes, but none next to each other.

illustration. See graphic.

import. To bring in digital information (e.g., clip art, braille or print text) to an electronic file.

interpoint braille. Braille that is embossed on both sides of the same braille page.

ISO. International Organization for Standardization, responsible for setting international quality standards.

key. The systematic listing of all symbols and their explanations for a particular graphic.

key page. The page preceding the graphic in which the keyed symbols and other information are listed.

key symbol. Textured samples, letters, or numbers that are assigned by the transcriber/tactile producer to represent an area, line, or point.

label. Identifier for an area, line, or point.

label line. See lead line.

landmark. 1. An environmental feature that is detectable to visually impaired travelers, that is always present, and that is not likely to be missed as one travels a route. Once a landmark is located, the traveler is certain of a specific location in a given neighborhood. An example of a landmark may be the only brick sidewalk in a particular shopping area. 2. A prominent feature of the landscape, such as an island or large body of water, serving to identify a particular locality and used as a point of reference by readers of tactile graphics.

landscape. The horizontal orientation of a page such that the shortest side runs from top to bottom (as opposed to portrait).

layer. A layer or several layers of material or textures can make up a tactile graphic.

layering method. A system of showing cube structures.

lead line. A fine line that connects a braille label or key symbol to the object or feature it identifies.

legend. A print listing of symbols and their explanations that is to be included in the tactile key listing. See key.

letter symbol. Two or three braille cells consisting of letters or contractions that are assigned by the transcriber/tactile producer to represent a longer print label.

light spectrum. The section of the electromagnetic radiation spectrum that is visible to the human eye. It is also known as the optical spectrum of light and consists of the colors red, orange, yellow, green, blue, indigo, and violet.

line 25 identifier. The transcription of the figure number on line 25 of each page where a figure is shown. A line 25 identifier is not required when producing tactile graphics.

line graph. A graph comprised of one or more lines imposed on a plane with vertical and horizontal values.

line plot. A plot formed by a series of stacked symbols (usually x's) above a number line, used to show the frequency of data values.

line style. A line style that is assigned to represent a specific linear feature.

linear. Having the form and feel of a line.

linear perspective. Actual or suggested lines converging to give the illusion of depth and distance.

loonie. Common name for Canada's one-dollar coin.

manipulatives. Teaching aids, such as models, used in place of or in conjunction with tactile graphics to convey conceptual information.

master. An original tactile or electronic graphic from which duplicate copies can be made.

mat plan. A system of showing cube structures.

measurement tools. Tools that are used to measure quantity or magnitude (e.g., rulers, protractors, thermometers).

medium. The method or material in which a tactile graphic is produced.

microcapsule paper. A special type of paper with microcapsules of alcohol embedded in it. Any black area on the paper swells up when processed. Also known as Minolta, Micropearl, Zy-Tex, swell paper, Flexi-paper, or stereocopy paper.

micropearl paper. See microcapsule paper.

mind map. See graphic organizer.

Minolta paper. See microcapsule paper.

mobility map. A map that gives readers opportunity to plan a travel route and includes specific landmarks to navigate.

multiple key pages. When it is not possible to get all the information in a key on one braille page, it is acceptable to have several key pages. These multiple key pages should be prepared and reproduced as subsequent pages to the graphic.

Nemeth Braille Code. A braille code used to transcribe mathematics and science notation.

net. In geometry, an arrangement of edge-joined polygons in a plane that can be folded to become the faces of a polyhedron.

number line. A straight line on which every point corresponds to a real number.

numeric key. Two or three braille cells consisting of the numeric indicator and a digit that are assigned to represent a longer print label.

O&M. Orientation and Mobility. Training that enables individuals who are blind and visually impaired to travel safely within their community.

operation sign. The four operation signs of arithmetic are addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division.

organizational chart. See graphic organizer.

orientation map. An overview map that represents an area or location to familiarize or orient the reader.

orthographic drawing. An orthographic drawing shows six different views of an object: top, bottom, front, back, left side, and right side.

overview diagram. A simple version of a graphic that is to be presented in greater detail, usually in sections or layers.

pictograph. A representation of numeric data through use of pictures or partial pictures.

pie chart (pie graph). See circle graph.

planning sheet. A method for developing the design of the tactile graphic and assigning a texture or symbol to each feature in an organized manner.

plastic sheet. A plastic sheet is used with a vacuum-form machine for duplicating copies from original tactile masters.

point of reference. A particular characteristic or symbol that can serve as an identifier for a certain locality.

point symbol. A dot, circle, square, rectangle, or other small symbolic item assigned to represent the specific location of an object or feature.

polymer clay. A type of PVC plastic that remains soft until cured and is used by tactile graphics designers to create masters for vacuum-form plastic copies.

portrait. Vertical orientation of a page such that the shortest side runs from left to right (as opposed to landscape).

preliminary page. The page(s) that precede the actual text of the braille volume or tactile graphics supplement (e.g., Title page, Special Symbols page, Transcriber's Notes page, Graphic Symbols page, and Table of Contents).

producer's note. Any wording not shown in the print text that is inserted in the e-text by the producer.

proofreader. A person, certified by the Library of Congress or CNIB, who reads braille by touch or sight.

protractor. A circular or semicircular tool used for measuring angles. The units of measurement utilized are usually degrees.

reasoning tools. See graphic organizer.

running head. A page header or text that appears at the top of every page on braille line 1—usually the title of the book.

scale. The ratio between the area or dimensions and those of the actual object or area that it represents.

scale mark. See tick mark.

scan. To use a scanner to copy print images into digital images.

scatter plot. A graph containing a collection of points that shows the relationship and distribution of two different sets of data.

schematic drawing. A diagram that represents the elements of a system using abstract graphic symbols to show details of how a system works.

sector. A part of a circle bounded by any two radii and the arc included between them.

sequence map. See graphic organizer.

sign of comparison. See comparison sign.

sign of operation. See operation sign.

SimBraille. A simulated braille font that uses solid black circles to represent raised (embossed) braille dots. Other dot positions are indicated by tiny "shadow" or "placement" dots.

simplification. The elimination of lines, details, decorations, etc. that are not relevant.

single-sided braille. Braille that is embossed only on one side of a braille page.

slate and stylus. Tools for writing braille dots on a page by hand. A slate holds the paper in place and brings consistency to the position and depth of dots. The tip of the stylus, an awl-shaped utensil, is pressed down through the rectangular openings in the slate to emboss the braille dots on the back of the page. Braille is written from right to left on a slate and stylus.

spatial information. The relationship between objects or parts of objects to the whole.

Special Symbols page. A preliminary page prepared by the transcriber (for a braille volume) or a tactile graphics designer (for a tactile graphics supplement) that lists uncommon (special) symbols used by the transcriber or tactile graphics designer for that volume or supplement.

spinner. A circle divided into portions and used to determine the probability of an event or the moves on a game board.

spur wheel. A hand tool that has a metal wheel with teeth that can be used to make a raised textured line.

standardized test. A test designed in such a way that the questions, conditions for administering, scoring procedures, and interpretations are consistent.

standards. Rules or principles that are expected to be followed to ensure consistency in the presentation of tactile graphic material. See guidelines.

stem-and-leaf plot. A specialized table showing the distribution of data.

stereocopier. See fuser.

stereocopy paper. See microcapsule paper.

story web. See graphic organizer.

stylus. A pointed tool for writing, drawing, or engraving. See slate and stylus.

supplement. A collection of tactile graphics, bound separately, to be used in conjunction with associated material.

Swell Braille. A braille font with slightly smaller dots suitable for use with microcapsule paper, where the dots swell when developed by a fuser.

swell paper. See microcapsule paper.

symbol. Something that stands for or represents another thing.

table of contents (TOC). A preliminary page of a braille volume or tactile graphics supplement that contains a list of the contents.

tactile graphic. The raised version of a print graphic that is adapted for the sense of touch.

tactile graphics designer. A person who creates and prepares tactile diagrams according to specific guidelines and standards.

tactual. That which can be perceived by touch.

template. A document or file having preset formats and elements. The template can be used as a starting point so that the formats or elements do not have to be recreated each time it is needed.

tessellation. An arrangement of shapes that form a repeating pattern. The shapes fit together with no gaps or overlaps.

texture symbol. A raised pattern that is assigned to represent an object or feature.

thermal form. See vacuum form.

thermoform machine. See vacuum-form machine.

thermoform sheet. See vacuum-form paper.

thumbnail. A small picture of a file that is generally of good enough quality to determine the graphic content of the file. In the case of tactile graphics, braille appears too tiny to read onscreen, but readable, if necessary, when printed.

tick mark. A short line used to indicate specific values along a scale (e.g., graph, clock, thermometer). Major tick marks are the labeled values; minor tick marks are those that appear between the major tick marks.

time line. See graphic organizer.

title. A line of text that serves to indicate what the passage following is about.

tooling. Shaping, forming, or finishing with a tool; impressing designs with special tools.

toonie. The common name for the Canada's two-dollar coin.

top box line. A line of braille symbols (dots 2356) used to indicate the start to a section in a print text.

transcriber. See braille transcriber.

transcriber's note. Any wording not shown in the print text that is inserted in the braille edition by the transcriber. A key is part of a transcriber's note.

Transcriber's Notes page. A preliminary page prepared by the transcriber (for a braille volume) or a tactile graphics specialist (for a tactile graphics supplement) that explains the special braille format or usage that appears throughout a volume or throughout an entire transcription.

transformation. The operation of changing the orientation of a figure through translation (slide), reflection (flip), rotation (turn), and/or dilation (shrinking or enlarging), usually found in mathematical textbooks.

TrueType. A font standard that has .ttf as the file extension.

UEB. Unified English Braille.

uncontracted braille. Braille in which every word is spelled out letter for letter.

vacuum-formed. The process of using a machine that produces heat and vacuum pressure to create a plastic copy of a tactile master, commonly referred to as a "thermoform machine."

vacuum-form plastic. See plastic sheet.

Venn diagram. A diagram made up of two or more overlapping circles, used to show relationships between groups of items sharing common properties.

vertical grid line. One line of a set of background lines that extend from top to bottom on a plane or graph.

Wikki Stix. Wax-coated yarn strands easily bent for making letters and other shapes that adhere to smooth surfaces and can be re-used.

Xyron machine. A machine that applies adhesive to a wide variety of flat items that can be fed through the rollers. This enables textured material to become self-adhesive and be applied to tactile graphic masters.

Zy-Tex paper. See microcapsule paper.

Index

C

D

H

I

K

L

V

W